



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

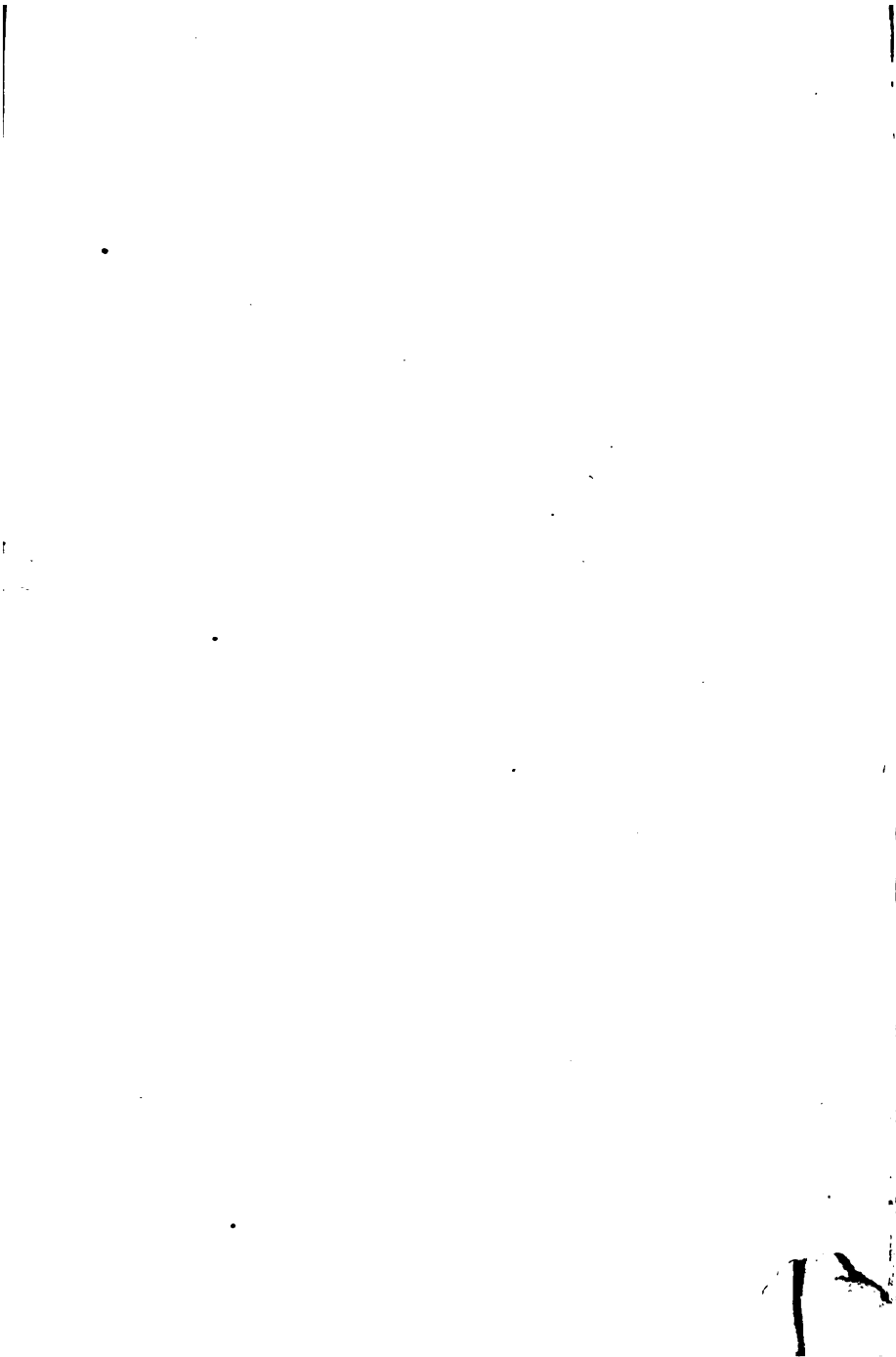
CONVEYANCE  
OF  
MINES.  
—  
OF HOPTON.

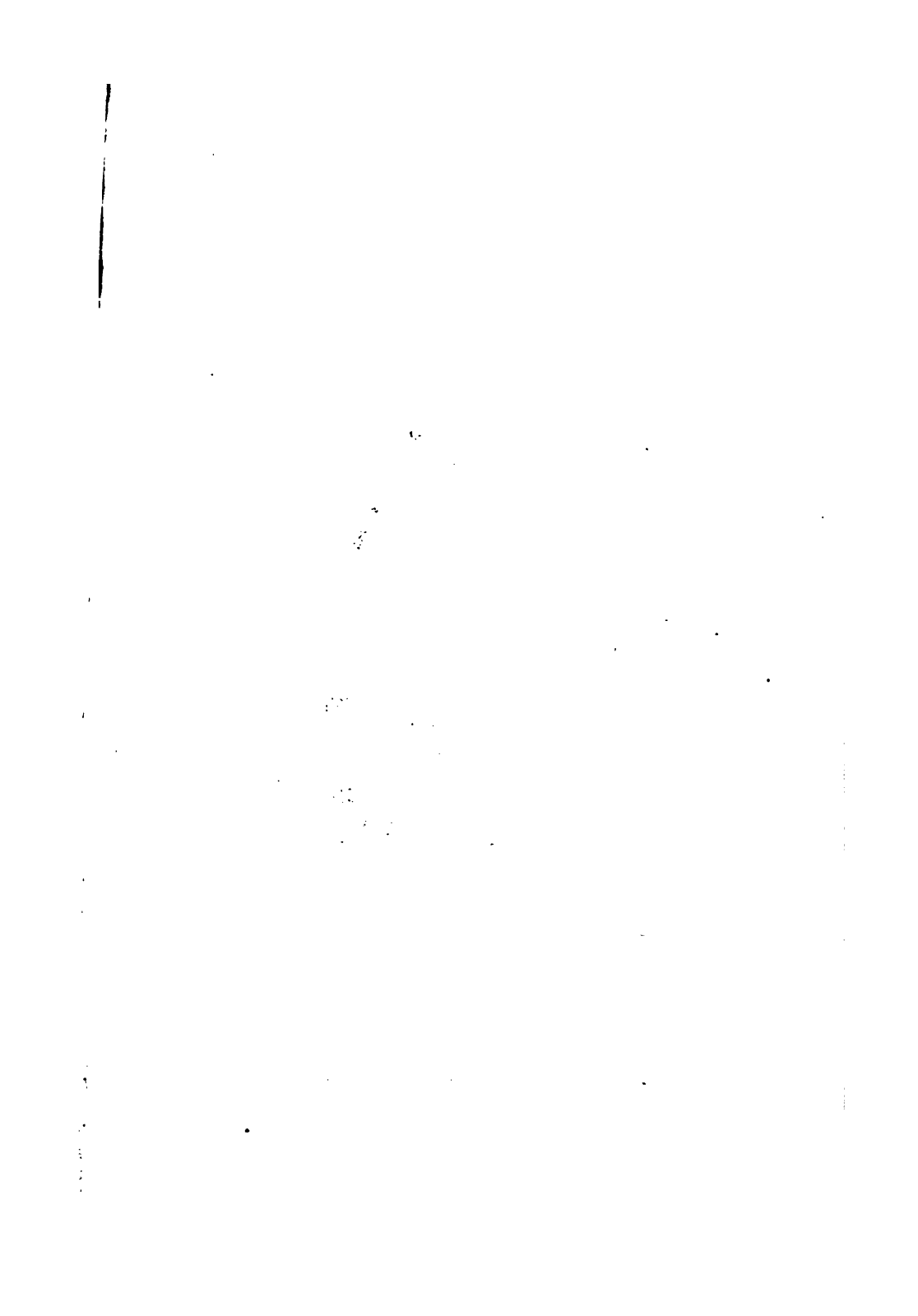
Library  
of the  
University of Wisconsin

PRESENTED BY

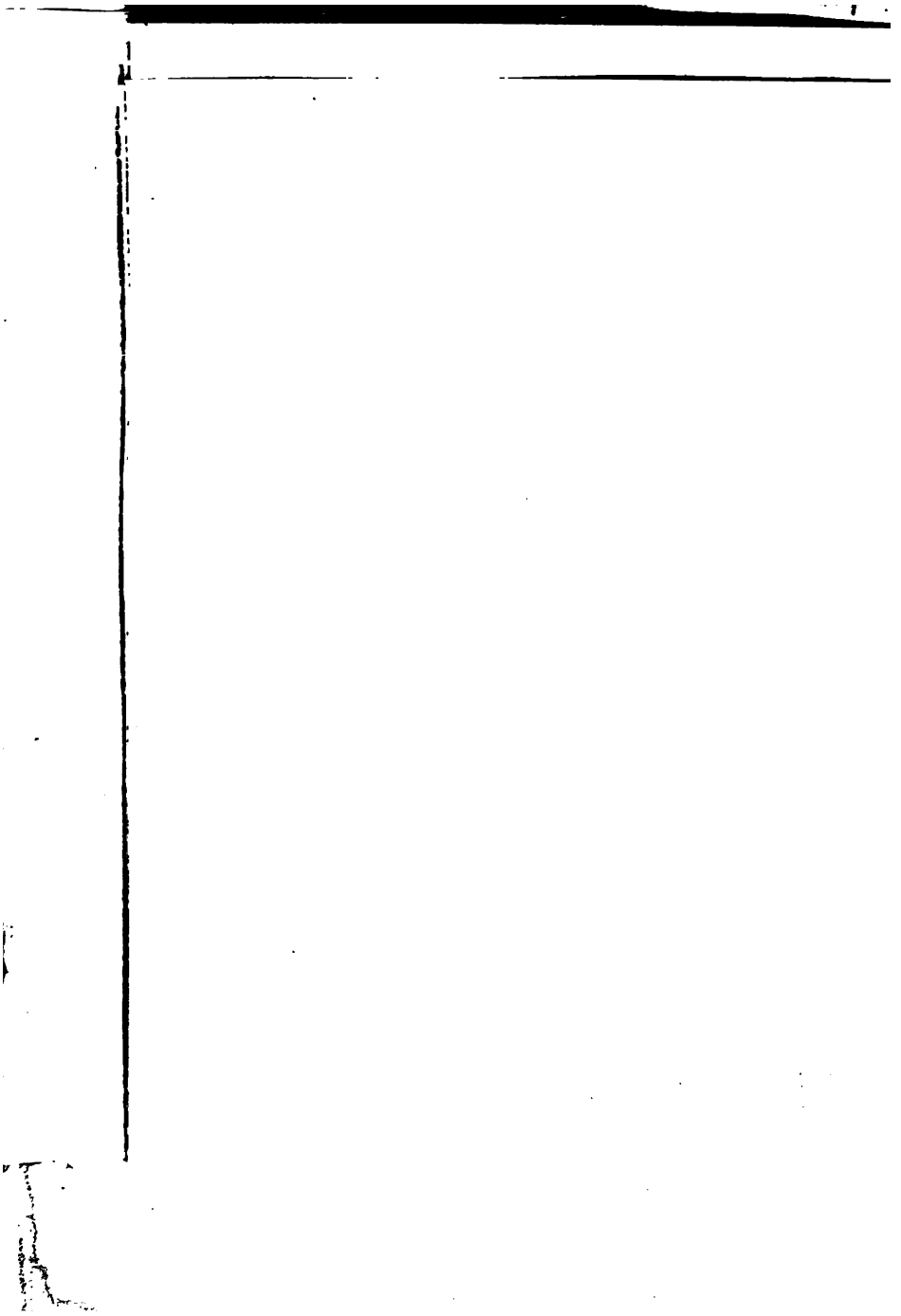
Otto Boberg  
Eau Claire













# CONVERSATION ON MINES, ETC.

BETWEEN

A FATHER AND SON;

TO WHICH ARE ADDED

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS TO ASSIST CANDIDATES TO  
OBTAIN CERTIFICATES FOR THE MANAGEMENT OF  
COLLIERIES, A LECTURE ON THE ATMOSPHERE  
AND EXPLOSIVE GASES, TABLES OF CALCULATIONS,  
RULES OF MEASUREMENTS,  
Etc., Etc.

BY

WILLIAM HOPTON,

CERTIFICATED COLLIERY MANAGER.

---

*REPRINTED FROM THE EIGHTH ENGLISH EDITION.*

---

PHILADELPHIA:

J. B. LIPPINCOTT COMPANY.

1890.



315543

6031008

MAR 11 1927

ML  
H77  
.2

## PUBLISHERS' ADVERTISEMENT.

---

THIS plain and unpretentious little book has had a remarkable history. Its author—a hard-working coal-miner of Lancashire, who had risen by sheer natural ability and force of character to a position of trust in a mine—determined in 1864 to issue this little work chiefly as a hand-book for the use of operatives and laborers in coal-mines. From the very outset the work has had a marked success. It filled exactly a want of the times. Its language is so clear and plain that no man of ordinary native intelligence can fail to understand it.

The work long since attained an unparalleled popularity for a treatise of this kind. Its simple and exact methods of statement, its quaint and at times picturesque language, its high moral and humanitarian purpose, and the transparent honesty and unquestionable manliness and straightforwardness of its author have all helped to give the book a character of its own.

The book is reprinted without alteration or emendment. Even the curious digressions and the strange personal experiences of the writer are faithfully reproduced; for they help to give the work its characteristic quality, and they do not detract from its usefulness among readers of the class for which it was intended.



# CONVERSATION ON MINES.

---

## The Nature and Properties of Gases.

*Son* : As you have been in mines, father, from early life, and your ancestors have had, during generations past, a practical knowledge of them, I shall be glad, when convenient, to have a little conversation with you on mines.—*Father* : If I can give information by which you and the public may profit, I shall have great pleasure in so doing; and as we have a little leisure just now I shall be glad to answer, to the best of my abilities, any question you require information on respecting mines and mining.

*Son* : Very good: then I wish to know, father, if carbonic acid gas, which miners call black-damp, and the gas left in mines after an explosion, be one and the same?—*Father* : No. Gas left after an explosion is called after-damp or choke-damp, and is much lighter than black-damp, or even common air. This gas will make its way up to the roof, while black-damp will lie near the floor. Carbonic acid gas is a combination of carbon and oxygen. It was formerly called fixed air, on account of its being found in chalk, limestone, magnesia, etc.

*Son* : What are the properties, father, of carbonic acid gas?—

*Father* : Carbonic acid gas (black-damp) is invisible; it is incom-

bustible and inexplusive, and unfit for respiration. It is a positive poison; it lays violent hands upon its victim, and at once kills him. It is one of the ingredients of after-damp.

*Son*: What is its composition?—*Father*: It is found to consist of six parts, by weight, of carbon, united with sixteen parts of oxygen.

*Son*: Do you know the composition, father, of after-damp, or choke-damp, as you say it is lighter than black-damp?—*Father*: It is formed of two parts, by volume, of watery vapor, one of carbonic acid, and eight parts of nitrogen, nitrogen being lighter than atmospheric air, and therefore much lighter than black-damp. The nitrogen, you know, is one of the ingredients of the air.

*Son*: Is there any other kind of gas discharged in mines that you know of?—*Father*: There is the stone, or white gas.

*Son*: White gas! What kind is that?—*Father*: This gas is not explosive, nor a gas that will put out the candle-blaze; the candle burns well in it, but will not explode it. It is poisonous and would soon kill a person. This gas is produced at the time of blasting rock, when gunpowder has too much work. Much of it is discharged also when spontaneous combustion takes place in mines, or when the coal is ignited in the pit. Its proper name is sulphuretted hydrogen.

*Son*: Have you ever seen such gas?—*Father*: I have several times been affected by it, and have heard of it by those who have seen it; also, a deputy under me had the sinking of a shaft in which this gas was given off, and two of the men sinking with him were lost, and he himself was nearly lost—after a shot.

*Son*: Have you ever experienced the effects of these gases? some people say they have a choking nature.—*Father*: I have often been affected by the gases, and have had to be brought

home, having been rendered insensible by them, but I never felt the choking sensation that one would expect.

*Son* : Brought home insensible ! Had you much pain, then, before you became insensible ? or do you remember anything of what took place ?—*Father* : I remember well that I had no pain, and was very sick for a moment or two just before I lost all sensation. My limbs also felt very heavy, so that I was not able to use them.

*Son* : Would you then be like a person insensible with sleep ? Just as a person is not conscious of the moment he passes away into sleep, I presume you would have no knowledge of the moment you passed into insensibility ? But how long were you in that state of unconsciousness ?—*Father* : I cannot say how long I had been insensible, as I had been brought up out of the pit, and was at home when I returned to consciousness. I had been at home a long time before my knowledge of things returned properly, and at the moment of my recovery every person I saw appeared as in a dream.

*Son* : By this I presume, father, that in explosions all persons lost through the effects of after-damp suffer very little at death, as they pass away like a person in sleep ?—*Father* : I believe they know very little until death passes them into eternity. I know that had I remained in the pit a little longer I should have passed away without a knowledge of it.

*Son* : Is carburetted hydrogen gas called by miners explosive gas ?—*Father* : Yes, some call it explosive gas, others fire-damp, and others fire.

*Son* : What is the composition of the gas burnt in the streets ?—*Father* : It consists of four parts of hydrogen and two of carbon by volume.

*Son* : What is the composition of carburetted hydrogen gas, or explosive gas?—*Father* : It consists of four parts of hydrogen and one of carbon.

*Son* : Will this gas ignite if not mixed with atmospheric air?—*Father* : No. It is combustible only in oxygen or air. One foot of carburetted hydrogen gas requires to be mixed with from five to twelve feet of air before it will ignite.

*Son* : Do not miners' candles burn with enlarged flames when working where explosive gas accumulates?—*Father* : The flame of the candle is enlarged when air and gas are in such quantities as to be nearly an explosive mixture. When one foot of gas is mixed with thirteen, fourteen, fifteen, or sixteen feet of air, the candle burns with enlarged flame ; but by mixing more air to the one foot of gas, the flame of the candle diminishes to its proper size.

*Son* : Gas, then, is rendered harmless by *adding* more pure air to the one foot of gas?—*Father* : Just so. It becomes further from the explosive mixture by adding more pure air to it. An expert person may see a cap on the candle so small that twenty times as much gas might be added before the mixture of gas and air would be at an explosive point.

*Son* : What quantity of air does gas require to make it, *when ignited*, at the greatest explosive mixture or power?—*Father* : One foot of gas mixed with seven to ten feet of air is near the greatest explosive mixture, or one foot mixed with two of oxygen.

*Son* : If a miner's working place is full of gas, will the air destroy it if mixed with it?—*Father* : No ; air will not destroy gas, but only render it harmless, if the volume of air be much greater than that of the gas. That is, if twenty feet of air, or

more, be mixed with one foot of gas, then, in such mixture, the gas is rendered harmless.

*Son* : It requires, then, a larger volume of air than of gas to cause an explosion, and a larger volume, also, of air to *prevent* an explosion? which looks like a contradiction.—*Father* : Such is the case. As before stated, a mixture of from five to twelve feet of air to one foot of gas will cause an explosion; but a larger mixture of air to the same quantity of gas will prevent one.

*Son* : Is explosive gas elastic?—*Father* : Yes. Three feet of gas may be pressed into the space of one foot; or if the pressure be reduced sufficiently, the three feet will expand into six feet or more. Air can be pressed into 40,000 times less space than it naturally occupies, and expanded to 14,000 times larger than it usually occupies.

*Son* : Then, when the weight of air is reduced, the gas expands and issues out of the strata, out of every hole in the roof, and out of the old goaf (all of which may be called magazines of gas), and overflows into the workings and tram-roads from every place wherein it is compressed?—*Father* : Yes; that is the reason that mines produce more gas at one time than at another, and also more when a change in the weather takes place.

*Son* : Why does explosive gas make its way up to the roof in mines, and fill holes and stock-working places which lie highest?—

*Father* : Because explosive gas is much lighter than air. Two feet of the gas will weigh only a little more than one foot of air, because the specific gravity of atmospheric air is 1.000, and that of explosive gas 0.555.

*Son* : Why does carbonic acid gas, which miners call black-damp, lie nearest the floor in mines?—*Father* : Because it is heavier than air. One foot of it is nearly as heavy as two feet

of air; its greater weight being the cause of its lying nearest the floor. Its specific gravity is 1.524.

*Son*: If black-damp be heavier than air, how can the air-current drive or propel it along, through the workings and up the up-cast? Will not the air pass through and the gas settle downward to the bottom, like mud in water?—*Father*: Unless

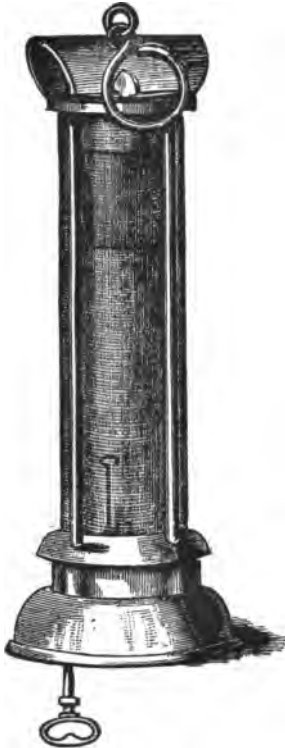
the current of air pass through the workings and along the air-passages with a propelling force sufficient to overcome the greater weight of the black-damp, it cannot clear the mine, and the black-damp will settle down, as you say.

*Son*: Safety-lamps are often used, are they not, in those mines discharging explosive gas?—*Father*: Yes, and great loss of life has often been *prevented* by the use of safety-lamps; and yet many lives have been lost, I fear, by too much reliance on the safety-lamp, when the purity of the current ought to have been attended to by rendering the gases therein harmless.

*Son*: No doubt, then, you have seen safety-lamps used in mines?—

*Father*: Seen them! yes, thousands of times. This is a representation of Stephenson's lamp.

*Son*: Have you seen gas explode inside the wire gauze and not



explode the gas outside?—*Father* : Yes, very often. I remember well on one occasion gas came suddenly upon a person and me, and our lamps filled with flame; we lowered the cotton wick to put out the blaze, but the flame remained within the gauze.

*Son* : And what did you do then?—*Father* : We got into pure air and a safe place as soon as possible, but not before the lamps were red hot, for we had to take them one hundred yards or more.

*Son* : I think the safety-lamp a very good invention. Do you know, father, why flame will not penetrate through the wire-work and explode the gas outside?—*Father* : Because the inflamed gas within is so much cooled in its passage through, or by its contact with, the gauze, as to cease to burn before it reaches the gas outside.

*Son* : I do not see, yet, why an explosion taking place within the gauze should not communicate to and explode the gas around it?—*Father* : This is a subject of wonder to even philosophers, and the only mode they have of explaining it is, that flame cannot pass through fine wire-work, because the wire cools the flame sufficiently to extinguish it in passing through.

*Son* : But does not the wire often become red hot by the burning of the gas inside?—*Father* : Yes; but, fortunately, gas cannot be exploded by red-hot wire, the intervention of actual flame being required for that purpose, so that the wire cannot set fire to the explosive gas around it.

*Son* : But if the wire be red hot, how can it cool the flame within and prevent it passing through the gauze?—*Father* : The gauze, though red hot, is not so hot as the flame by which it has been heated.

*Son* : Is it not possible, then, to propel the flame through the gauze?—*Father* : A strong current of air will propel it through. (See *Table A*, page 12.)

A.—The following is an extract from the Register of Experiments on Safety-Lamps at Hetton Colliery, conducted by the Lamp Committee of the North of England Institute of Mining Engineers, 14th October, 1867.

No.	No. per Register Book.	Lamp.	Velocity of Current. <i>Feet per Second.</i>	Time of Duration of Experiment. <i>Seconds.</i>	Position of Lamp.	Remarks.
1	1	Common Davy	11½	2	Perpendicular.	Fired.
2	15	Morrison's No. 1	15	90	"	Still burning, gas turned off.
3	16	" 2	14	5	"	Out.
4	17	" 2	14	2	"	Out.
5	18	" 2	18	4	"	Out.
6	19	" 2	21	24	"	Out.
7	20	" 2	25	23	"	Out.
8	21	" 1	25	35	"	Still burning, gas turned off.
9	22	" 1	35	2	"	Out.
10	23	" 2	35	3	"	Out.
11	24	" 1	35	1	Slanted top from current.	Out.
12	25	" 2	35	1	"	Out.
13	33	" 1	35	5	"	Out.
14	41	" 2	25	5	Perpendicular.	Out.
15	42	" 1	25	11	"	Out.
16	43	" 1	25	2	"	Out.
17	46	" 1	25	3	Slanted top from current.	Out.
18	50	" 2	20	Not ntd.	Perpendicular.	Gas turned off by mistake.
19	51	" 1	20	10	"	Out.
20	52	" 2	20	2	"	Out.
21	55	" 1	27	50	Slanted top to current.	Still burning, gas done.
22	56	" 2	27	6	Slanted top from current.	Out.
23	57	Call & Glover	27	2	Perpendicular.	Fired.
24	62	Geordie, with protg. shield	27	5	"	Fired.

*Son* : You say the engraving is a representation of Stephenson's lamp. Is not this lamp like all others?—*Father* : Stephenson's lamp is so constructed as to extinguish the flame the moment gas explodes within it, so that the gauze can never become red hot.\*

### How Gases are Discharged, Accumulated, and Produced in Mines.

*Son* : What is meant by discharging, producing, and accumulating; that is, what am I to understand, father, by the same, as people often say mines discharge, produce, and accumulate gases?—*Father* : You must understand by the word "discharge," to produce from, to form, or to cause. The word "accumulate" means to increase, to collect, or bring together, or to make more.

*Son* : But how are gases produced, or accumulated, in mines?—*Father* : There are two ways by which gases may be said to accumulate in mines. All gases are produced, you know, from every stratum, from one end of the whole route of the air-passages to the other. When the air first enters the air-gate, at the down-cast, there is in the first yard of its route a supply of

---

\* On the 20th of February, 1872, an improved safety-lamp, invented by Henry D. Plimsoll, Esq., of London, was subjected to some severe experimental tests, performed by Mr. William Utley, underviewer at the Wombwell Main Collieries, Barnsley, the inventor [Mr. Plimsoll], myself, and other friends; and the issue of the experiments was so successful that I have no hesitation in giving an opinion to the effect of its being the best safety-lamp yet invented, as the following qualifications, which were fully borne out by the result of the tests, will amply show: I. It is very sensitive to gas. II. The moment an explosion takes place within the lamp, its light is thereby extinguished. III. By unscrewing the lamp top the light is extinguished, therefore there is no inducement for miners to tamper with it. IV. It gives a very much clearer and purer light. V. The force of the current cannot extinguish its light, be the velocity ever so great. VI. Should an explosion take place within the lamp, there is no possibility of the current propelling the flame outside.

gas. More gases are added as the air passes onward. Let it pass still onward, and the quantity multiplies; yet, as the air goes still onward, the flow of gas from every stratum increases the quantity in the air, until the mixture of air and gas is discharged at the top of the up-cast. This is one way by which gases accumulate; and the other is, when air cannot get at and pass through any stocked or undisturbed part of the mine to bring gas away from it. If the air in a mine should at any time become stagnant, the mine would very soon fill with gases.

*Son*: In those mines, then, where much gas is produced, and there is not a proper quantity of air to dilute it and bring it away, the accumulation will be very great?—*Father*: Yes: there is always an accumulation of gas going on in mines, if the quantity of air be not sufficient to dilute and render it harmless.

*Son*: Is there any weight on the strata of coal and stone from where gas is produced to compress the said gas therein?—

*Father*: There is the atmospheric weight or pressure always pressing against the strata from whence it is discharged.

*Son*: What is the pressure of the atmosphere against the strata?—*Father*: The pressure is nearly 15 lbs. upon every square inch of the surface of the strata; 2160 lbs. upon one square foot; 5000 billions of tons pressing upon the whole earth's surface.

*Son*: Is the amount of gas discharged in mines, then, in proportion to its overbalancing pressure?—*Father*: Yes. The escape of gas in mines is like steam blowing off from a boiler. When steam is much compressed in a boiler, the compressed steam, you know, will lift up the weight of the valve, which presses it there, and will continue to blow off therefrom until its compression is reduced to the weight of the valve; in like

manner, then, gas blows out and escapes from the strata, because its compression therein is greater than the weight of the atmosphere.

**Why one Mine discharges more Gases than another.**

*Son* : Why do not all mines give off explosive gases alike in quantity, when the atmospheric weight is equally reduced from the strata in all mines?—*Father* : The atmospheric weight is equally reduced from the strata, but the “compression” of gas is not alike in all mines ; therefore the discharge of gas is not alike.

*Son* : I cannot see why all mines do not discharge the same quantity, when the weight which presses in the gas is reduced alike in all.—*Father* : Well, for your better information, I will illustrate the case. Suppose three boilers are full of steam, the weight of each valve 15 lbs., the steam in one boiler so compressed that a great quantity of steam blows off ; another, not so compressed, blows off less steam ; and a third blows off very little, because little compressed. Now, by taking 1 lb. weight from each valve, the greatest quantity of steam will blow off from the one most compressed ; so, in like manner, most gas will escape in those mines where it is most compressed.

*Son* : Very good ; that I understand. But why, father, is not the pressure of gas in mines alike?—*Father* : Because the gas has been blowing off longer in some than others.

*Son* : Will not the great pressure of gas in the strata all blow off in time (as steam blows off from a boiler) until the pressure of gas be the same as the pressure of the atmosphere?—

*Father* : Yes, in time the two will become equal in pressure.

*Son* : By this I understand the pressure of gas in the strata

will become so reduced that it will press out with only a 15-lb. pressure, like the 15-lb. pressure of the atmosphere which presses it there, the two then being equal?—*Father*: Yes; after the pressure of gas has been reduced in the strata, the two will become equal.

*Son*: If the pressure of steam in a boiler was reduced to the same weight on the valve, say if the two were each equal to 15 lbs., no steam then, I presume, father, would blow off, as it could not remove that which was equal in pressure to itself?—

*Father*: No; in that case there would be no blowing away of steam, for it could not (as you say) lift off a pressure equal to itself.

*Son*: Then I presume no gas will escape in a mine after the pressure has become equal to the atmospheric weight?—*Father*: I do not wish you to understand that *no* discharge will take place; yet very little will be discharged after the pressure has been so reduced.

*Son*: I cannot see how any gas can make its way out when its pressure is reduced to the atmospheric weight. It cannot lift away the atmospheric weight to make its escape.—*Father*: To look at it that way it would appear no discharge could take place. But you know the atmosphere, as before stated, is always changing. To-day its weight may be 15 lbs.; to-morrow, little more than 14 lbs. Therefore, when its weight is reduced from 15 lbs. to 14 lbs., the discharge of gas then takes place. The weight of the boiler valve is stationary, and cannot be pressed into the boiler; but air can be pressed into the strata, and works in and out at every change of the barometer.

*Son*: I see a little would be discharged, but only until its pressure was reduced to the lowest atmospheric weight.—*Father*:

When gas is reduced in the strata to the lowest atmospheric weight, say to nearly 14 lbs., and the atmosphere returns to its former weight of 15 lbs., the atmosphere itself is then pressed into the strata to fill up the space or vacuum of that gas which escaped when the atmosphere was at its lowest pressure.

**Why some Mines discharge a Mixture of Carbonic Acid Gas (Black-Damp) and Explosive Gas.**

*Son* : Do all mines give off the same sort of gas?—*Father* : No. One discharges carbonic acid gas, which miners often call black-damp; another explosive gas, which miners call fire-damp. But other mines discharge a mixture of the two gases.

*Son* : I wish to know if all mines make the same quantity of explosive gas,—that is, those which give off explosive gas?—

*Father* : No; one gives off a great quantity, another not so much, and a third very little.

*Son* : You said just now, father, that the weight of the valve is not like air. When the pressure of gas is reduced below the atmospheric weight, is air pressed into the strata to fill up the space or vacuum which is thus caused, and also to balance the pressure of the atmosphere?—*Father* : Yes. The air works in and out of the strata, and mixes with the gas therein, because the same reduced weight which caused gas to expand and work out will also press air in. The atmospheric weight is never long at a stand-still, but works backward and forward against and into the strata, like a man breathing, taking in and letting out air.

*Son* : Do you wish me to understand by this that the strata afterwards gives off a mixture of air and explosive gas?—

*Father* : I wish you to understand that when gas is so reduced

the strata gives off a mixture of explosive gas and black-damp.

*Son* : Is the confined air, then, which was pressed into the strata, converted into black-damp?—*Father* : I believe such is the case. You know a man by breathing lets air into his body, and that air, when let out, is converted into nitrogen and carbonic acid; so in like manner the confined air is, no doubt, converted into carbonic acid gas, or black-damp.

*Son* : Then mines like this discharge a mixture of explosive gas and black-damp?—*Father* : Just so. They discharge the two gases until the explosive gas is exhausted, after which the mine discharges black-damp only.

*Son* : Is it not surprising? I see very clearly now how one mine produces explosive gas, another a mixture of gases, and a third black-damp, or carbonic acid gas. But have you seen air pressed into the strata the way you show?—*Father* : I have several times seen air enter into open spaces in coal, stone, and rock, which drew in a candle-flame, and the next day the same open space which drew in the air gave off a mixture of gases, and, by observing them, I found the open spaces alternately gave off gases and let in air as the weather changed.

*Son* : Have you seen any other thing to convince you that the air passed in and out of the strata?—*Father* : Yes; a number of men under my charge were working one day near to the workings of an old colliery. They holed into them, and when they got through, air passed in as if it were rushing to an up-cast near at hand. This enabled me and others to travel a great distance on the tram-roads belonging to the old workings. The men with me were at a loss to know why air entered through the hole; but as I knew it was only a return of the weight or pressure

of the atmosphere, I told them not to be surprised if to-morrow black-damp rushed out of the hole from the old working.

*Son* : And was such the case ?—*Father* : Yes. One day we were able to travel into the old tram-roads a great distance ; another day we were not able to get to the hole from whence damp came out. It was like a weather-glass, or barometer, for the men.

### **How a Change in the Weather Affects the Workings of a Mine with Gases.**

*Son* : Why are mines affected by a change in the weather ?—

*Father* : Because when the barometer falls the weight of the atmosphere which presses gas in the strata is diminished. When a change in the weather takes place, the weight of the atmosphere is diminished from 15 lbs. to, say nearly 14 lbs. This diminishing in weight of the atmosphere causes an extra discharge of gas, just as an extra discharge of steam would blow out of a boiler if a little weight were taken off the valve. The moment the pressure of the atmosphere is reduced, gas expands and forces its way out from every place wherein it is compressed.

*Son* : Do not miners often say, on seeing a cloudy, wet morning, they will not be able to work that day ? and also say so when the wind blows in a certain direction ?—*Father* : Yes ; the miner knows that the weather affects his working place ; but he has not the knowledge to enable him to understand how it does so.

*Son* : Are all working places so affected as not to allow the men to work when a change of weather takes place ?—*Father* : All are more or less affected, but all are not so much affected as to prevent men from working in them.

*Son* : Why are not all affected alike ?—*Father* : Because some

have very little air for ventilating purposes,—only just sufficient to take the gases away on those days when little is discharged. Therefore, when a change of weather takes place, the air is not sufficient to dilute the extra quantity of gas that is discharged.

*Son* : I see that much caution and care are required to prevent explosions. Is there any forerunner to give notice to the men when a change in the weather takes place, so as to give a knowledge of the extra discharge of gases?—*Father* : The barometer will show when a change in the weather takes place, but will not show before the extra discharge of gas commences. The change in the two is at one and the same time. Therefore, there is nothing to give notice beforehand.\* I have known an extra discharge of gas take place even before any change has been seen in the barometer. This shows that the gas is “more sensitive” than mercury.

*Son* : Will you give me a little explanation of the barometer, so that I may understand by it the changes in weight, or pressure, of the atmosphere? Such information will give me a knowledge when the weight is reduced which gives place to an outburst of gas, and as a larger quantity is discharged from the strata, at such a time, the knowledge is important.—*Father* : The diagram you see is a representation of the barometer: when a change in the weight of the atmosphere takes place, the fluid or mercury within the tube is set in motion; it moves up or down at every change of the atmospheric weight.

*Son* : How is the mercury within the tube set in motion by the atmosphere?—*Father* : It has been discovered that water cannot be raised more than about 34 feet in the suction-pump, the

---

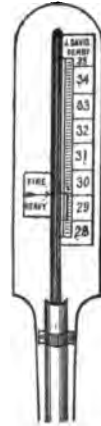
\* Our American brothers are very good; they send a telegraph message across the Atlantic when a storm is coming.

weight of the atmosphere on the surface of the water being the cause of the ascent of water in the vacuum made in the pump, and that a column of water 34 feet high is, therefore, an exact counterpoise to a column of air which extends to the top of the atmosphere. The column of mercury in the barometer is much shorter than 34 feet, because mercury is fourteen times as heavy as water; for if the weight of the atmosphere will balance 34 feet of water, it can balance only (on the same principle) 29 to 30 inches of mercury.

*Son*: You say "balance." Am I to understand by this that the atmosphere and the mercury are balanced similar to two weights in a pair of scales, the mercury being in one scale and the atmosphere in the other?—*Father*: Just so; 29 or 30 inches of mercury within the tube of a barometer, or 34 feet of water in the pump-barrel, balances the whole weight of a column of the atmosphere, said to extend 45 miles high.

*Son*: Then when the mercury moves upward there is an increased weight of the atmosphere, and a diminished weight when it moves downward?—*Father*: Such is the case. You know if the weight in one scale be increased or diminished, the other scale will ascend or descend.

*Son*: If the mercury within the tube of the barometer moves downward, I may know that an extra quantity of gas is escaping from the strata, because the weight of the atmosphere which pressed gas therein is reduced?—*Father*: That is the way. I see you understand, now, the barometer. "Fire" on the barometer denotes a large quantity of gas escaping from every stratum in the mine, because the atmospheric weight is reduced.



The condition of the air in a colliery depends very much on the weight of the air at the surface. As the weight of the atmosphere is shown by the height of the barometer, we can readily see that when the barometer sinks the air becomes lighter; and the pressure, which before assisted to keep in the gas, being diminished, allows it to escape. For every inch which the barometer falls, the pressure per square foot is lessened more than 70 lbs. The following valuable table of Mr. Fairley's will show the matter more clearly:

TABLE OF THE PRESSURE OF AIR AT DIFFERENT HEIGHTS OF THE BAROMETER.

RULE.—Height of barometer in inches  $\times$  .4908 = weight of a cubic inch of mercury = pressure per square inch in pounds.

Height of Barometer in Inches.	Pressure per Square Inch in Pounds.	Pressure per Square Foot in Pounds.
27. . . . .	13.25 . . . . .	1908.23
27.25 . . . . .	13.37 . . . . .	1925.89
27.5 . . . . .	13.49 . . . . .	1943.56
27.75 . . . . .	13.61 . . . . .	1961.23
28. . . . .	13.74 . . . . .	1978.90
28.25 . . . . .	13.86 . . . . .	1996.56
28.5 . . . . .	13.98 . . . . .	2014.24
28.75 . . . . .	14.11 . . . . .	2031.91
29. . . . .	14.23 . . . . .	2049.58
29.25 . . . . .	14.35 . . . . .	2067.25
29.5 . . . . .	14.47 . . . . .	2084.01
29.75 . . . . .	14.60 . . . . .	2102.58
30. . . . .	14.72 . . . . .	2120.24
30.25 . . . . .	14.84 . . . . .	2137.92
30.5 . . . . .	14.96 . . . . .	2155.59
30.75 . . . . .	15.09 . . . . .	2173.26
31. . . . .	15.21 . . . . .	2190.93

*Son*: I would be glad to see how these are worked out. Will you please show me an example?—*Father*: Yes. Suppose the height of the barometer to be 27 inches, and we wish to know the pressure per square foot in pounds; then by the rule  $27 \times .4908 =$

13.2516, which is the pressure per square inch, and multiplying this by 144 we get 1908.2304, the pressure per square foot.

*Son* : When are mines in the greatest danger?—*Father* : Some are always in danger, if there is not sufficient pure air to dilute and render harmless the gases.

*Son* : Yes. But from changes in the weather?—*Father* : The greatest danger is when there is a sudden fall in the barometer and a sudden rise in the thermometer at one and the same time.

*Son* : How is that?—*Father* : Because a fall in the barometer, as I before stated, gives place to a larger outlet of gas, as the atmospheric weight is then diminished, and a rise in the thermometer lessens the air in the mine, which should dilute and take away the gas. The two taking place at one time are the cause of much danger.

*Son* : I understand; a rise in the thermometer shows an increase of temperature, or more heat?—*Father* : Just so. By this rise the ventilating power is reduced; not only so, but the density of the air is also diminished by both; so that there is not the same quantity of air passing in the current through the *same area* in the *same space* of time. The temperature rises much, you know, from winter to summer.

### The Natural Ventilation in Mines.

*Son* : What am I to understand by a fall and rise of the temperature?—*Father* : When the mercury in the thermometer stands at 32°, the temperature is at freezing point, below that is extreme cold; 55° is temperate heat; 76° summer heat; 98° blood heat; 112° fever heat; at 176° spirits boil; and at 212° water boils.

*Son* : I see now, if the temperature should suddenly rise from,

say 32 to 60 degrees, the change would be very great, and might cause people to sweat much ; but to fall from 60 to 32 degrees would cause an extra coat to be required?—*Father* : Just so. I find you understand the rise and fall of the temperature ; it often rises and falls suddenly in England.

*Son* : I understand it because I have had a practical knowledge of such changes. Can you give me the lowest and also the highest degree of temperature in each month for one year ? Any year will do.—*Father* : Yes ; I will try to give them to you. But I wish you to understand that the temperature is not equal, on the same day, in every part of England ; the temperature of one place may vary several degrees from that of another. Therefore, I will give the temperature at Manchester for each month in the year 1852.

Dates.	Lowest Degrees.	Dates.	Highest Degrees.
January 12,	21	January 15 and 21,	50
February 11 and 21,	29	February 24,	54
March 8, 9, and 11,	30	March 23,	61
April 4,	33	April 15,	64
May 4,	34	May 8, 17, 20, and 24,	64
June 1,	42	June 6 and 20,	69
July 23,	51	July 4,	83
August 11,	50	August 1 and 17,	71
September 17,	38	September 5 and 8,	70
October 8,	35	October 22,	60
November 29 and 30,	32	November 8,	61
December 8,	31	December 5,	56

*Son* : Many thanks for the information. The temperature changes much from summer to winter. The lowest in that year, I see, was 21, and the highest 83 degrees,—one very cold, the other very hot. I think the temperature in the underground workings of mines does not so change. I have seen miners, in going down the pit in winter, all anxious to go below at once, if possible, to get out of the cold, the mine being warm, but in

summer the mine is cooler than on the surface. Why is it so?—

*Father* : The underground workings may appear on first entering cooler in summer than in winter, but it is not so ; the temperature of the mine is nearly the same all the year round, unless more men are employed, and the works more extended. It is you only who feel the change in passing from a high temperature, on hot days in summer, to a lower one, but in winter from a low temperature to a higher one.

*Son* : Is the temperature equal in all mines?—*Father* : No ; the temperature is much higher in some mines than in others.

*Son* : Why is it much higher in some than in others?—

*Father* : Because more men and horses are employed in some than in others. The pits are deeper, and the works more extensive, etc., etc.

*Son* : How is heat produced by men, horses, deep mines, etc?—

*Father* : The temperature of mines is due to several causes. At a certain depth from the surface the temperature in England is invariable throughout the year, and does not sensibly differ from the mean annual temperature, which may be taken at 50° F. Below this “line of no variation,” the temperature continues to increase as we descend. The general result obtained by a comparison of many observations shows that the increase of temperature is—

In the first 200 yards about 1° F. for every 50 feet.

In the second 200 yards “ “ 70 “

In the third 200 yards “ “ 85 “

Also miners, by respiration, produce heat, and their lamps produce nearly the same amount ; again, there are various chemical actions going on, each of which is a source of heat ; there is also slack or rubbish left in heaps for a considerable time, from which heat is thrown off.

*Son* : I shall be glad to be informed of the height to which the temperature in mines is raised. I should then know nearly the lowest and the highest temperature on the surface, and also the highest temperature raised by natural heat in mines.—*Father* : I can give the highest natural heat of several large collieries ; and, I think, the highest known to have been produced. Some mines, as you know, produce more natural heat than others.

*Son* : Is the natural draught or the natural ventilation produced by natural heat ?—*Father* : Yes. The natural heat of mines is the power or cause, and the natural draught the effect produced by that cause. Remove the cause and the effect will cease.

*Son* : I remember a good deal has been said in reference to this natural ventilation in mines. Some say there is a constant natural current all the year round, and others say there is not ; therefore, I should like to ask a few questions on the subject. Do you know the highest degree of the natural heat in mines ?—*Father* : The temperature of the down-cast at the cannel pit, Ince Hall, Wigan, on the 13th of January, 1853, was 42 degrees, and the temperature of the workings was 62 degrees. This will show the natural heat of the mine to be 20 degrees higher than the air at the down-cast. On the 16th of December, 1852, the temperature at the down-cast pit at Seaton Delaval Colliery was 42 degrees, and the average temperature of the mine 50 degrees, or 8 degrees above the air at the down-cast. At the Tyne Maine Colliery, when an experiment was made, the natural heat of the mine showed a difference of 20 degrees between the down- and up-cast shafts. At the Hetton Colliery the natural heat of the mine was found at one experiment to produce between the down- and up-cast shafts a difference of 28 degrees ; but this experiment

was made at a time when the temperature on the surface was very low. I am only sorry that the temperature on the surface at the time was not given. To fix the temperature, then, on the surface at 34 degrees, when the experiment took place at Hetton Colliery, it would show the natural heat of the mine to be 62 degrees, the same as at the cannel pit, Ince Hall, Wigan. Thus we arrive at nearly the highest temperature produced by the natural heat in mines.

*Son* : Is not the natural heat, then, constant in mines?—

*Father* : Yes, always the same, summer and winter.

*Son* : Then if always the same, will it not always produce the natural draught?—*Father* : No, the natural draught is diminished or increased, according to circumstances.

*Son* : Pray let me know what those circumstances are ; for I cannot see why there is not always the natural draught in mines when the natural heat by which it is produced is always the same?—*Father* : Let me first show when the natural draught is there, after which I will show when it is not.

*Son* : That is just what I wish you to do.—*Father* : Well, you remember, I have just stated that the temperature of the mine is sometimes 20 or even 28 degrees higher than the temperature of the air coming from the down-cast.

*Son* : I remember.—*Father* : When that is the case—that is, when the temperature of the underground workings is higher than the air on the surface—there is always the natural draught. In winter, when the air is extremely cold, it produces a large current. You know if the temperature on the surface be down at 30 degrees, and the air in the mine 62, the heat will be 32 degrees above that on the surface. This would give a large natural current.

*Son* : How does the natural heat produce the current?—

*Father* : Heat, you know, as I have often stated, expands the air so that one cubic foot of warm air is not the same weight as one cubic foot of cold air ; therefore, warm air being much lighter than cold, it rushes up the up-cast as cork-wood in water, or as a balloon through the air.

*Son* : I see now how the heat of the mine produces the natural draught, but what has the heat of the mine to do with the cold air on the surface?—*Father* : Well, it has this to do with it : when the cold air on the surface descends into the mine, it is increased in temperature, and thus the natural current is produced. You know, if the temperature of the air on the surface was, say 83 degrees, there could not be an increase in temperature by passing it to a mine where the natural heat was 62 degrees.

*Son* : In that case the natural heat of the mine would not be above, but below the temperature of the air on the surface.—

*Father* : Just so. I will illustrate the case. Suppose it were winter, and you had a pair of scales so large and so constructed that you could put in one scale all the hot air that filled the up-cast shaft and in the other all the cold air which filled the down-cast shaft.

*Son* : By this illustration I can see your object. You said that one foot of warm air weighs much less than one foot of cold air.—*Father* : I did. Therefore, if you balance the hot and the cold air, you will find the cold air in the down-cast scale will outweigh the hot air in the up-cast scale ; but suppose it is summer, when the temperature of the air on the surface is, say 83 degrees, and you fill your down-cast scale with this hot air, will this light expanded air, at 83 degrees, overbalance the air

in the up-cast scale, at 62 degrees? No, impossible, unless there is another power or weight in the scale to assist in weighing it down. I can no more believe it than I can believe 1 lb. will weigh down 2 lbs.

*Son*: I think it is clear enough to be seen by every person. As you say, the natural heat of the mine being much higher in temperature than the air on the surface, the cold air, in passing through the workings to the up-cast, is much expanded by the heat of the mine, and therefore a cubic foot of hot expanded air (in the up-cast) is much less in weight than a cubic foot of the heavy cold air (in the down-cast); and, as there is not the same weight in one as in the other, one falls down and the other ascends, just as a 2-lb. weight would weigh down a 1-lb.—

*Father*: I see now you understand a little when and how the natural current is produced in mines.

*Son*: Yes; and I understand also when it is not.—*Father*: Do you? Be not so confident, my lad. Remember, I have been informed there is a pit near Dudley Hill, Yorkshire, in which it was said the natural current continued without ceasing for 18 months.

*Son*: They may say it was the natural current; but I see the subject now so clearly that it is impossible to make me believe it, unless I knew there had been no hot days during the summer months on which it had taken place, because the hot air on the surface is in summer many degrees higher than the hot air in the up-cast shaft when no furnace is at work; consequently it becomes much lighter in weight, and cannot weigh down the other when it enters in the down-cast scale; and it being balanced, there is a stand-still, or no natural ventilating current.—*Father*: I am glad your views on the subject are the same as mine; yet I have

several more statements to make on the natural ventilation of coal-mines.

*Son* : You say when the air is made hot it expands, and thus each cubic foot of air becomes lighter as the temperature increases. Do you know the weight of a cubic foot of air at temperatures varying from 32 degrees to 222 degrees?—*Father* : See, I have a table here. By it you may find the difference in the weight of a cubic foot of air from a temperature of 32 degrees to 222 degrees.

SHOWING THE EXPANSION OF THE HEATED AIR AND ITS WEIGHT.

Degrees of Heat.	Weight of a Cubic Foot in Grains.	Volume.
32 . . . . .	550 . . . . .	100
42 . . . . .	539 . . . . .	102
52 . . . . .	529 . . . . .	104
62 . . . . .	518 . . . . .	106
72 . . . . .	506 . . . . .	109
82 . . . . .	495 . . . . .	111
92 . . . . .	487 . . . . .	113
102 . . . . .	479 . . . . .	115
112 . . . . .	470 . . . . .	117
122 . . . . .	461 . . . . .	119
132 . . . . .	453 . . . . .	121
142 . . . . .	446 . . . . .	123
152 . . . . .	439 . . . . .	125
162 . . . . .	432 . . . . .	127
172 . . . . .	426 . . . . .	129
182 . . . . .	420 . . . . .	131
192 . . . . .	413 . . . . .	133
202 . . . . .	407 . . . . .	135
212 . . . . .	401 . . . . .	137
222 . . . . .	394 . . . . .	139

Therefore, suppose you have a pitful of air, at a temperature of, say 32 degrees, and one at 62 degrees, you may find by the table the difference in weight of the two.

*Son*: Suppose two shafts are equal in depth and area, each, say 300 yards deep and 153 square feet in area, one shaft the down-cast and the other the up-cast, the temperature of the air in the down-cast is 42 degrees and in the up-cast is 62 degrees. Do you know what weight of air there will be in one shaft more than in the other?—*Father*: You may soon find the difference in the weight of the two. All you have to do is to get a knowledge of the table, and make your calculations accordingly.

*Son*: If, then, the temperature on the surface raised the air in the down-cast to the same temperature as that in the up-cast (produced by the natural heat of the mine),—that is, to 62 degrees,—would there not be the same weight of air in the one shaft as in the other? And if so, by the same natural laws, if the heat on the surface in summer raised the temperature of the air in the down-cast 20 degrees above the natural heat in the up-cast, one being at 82 degrees and the other only at 62 degrees, would not the air which filled the down-cast scale weigh less than the air in the up-cast scale?—*Father*: Just so, but it could not propel air down into a mine and through the workings with the temperature of the air so much higher in the down-cast than in the up-cast. No ventilation could take place unless the air was propelled by another power. For your better information I will give you another table, to enable you to find the difference in the weight of air in proportion to the difference in temperature. Here it is:

TABLE OF THE HIGH PRESSURE OF THE AIR

In pounds avoirdupois per square foot of area of shafts of different depths and subjected to different degrees of temperature. DEPTH OF SHAFTS, IN FEET.

Temp.	120	180	240	300	360	420	480	540	600	660	720	780	840	900	960	1020	1080	1140	1200
Deg.	82	82	82	82	82	82	82	82	82	82	82	82	82	82	82	82	82	82	82
40	9.555	14.332	19.109	23.887	28.664	33.442	38.219	42.996	47.774	52.551	57.328	62.106	66.883	71.661	76.438	81.215	85.993	90.770	95.548
50	9.967	14.061	18.734	23.417	28.101	32.784	37.468	42.152	46.835	51.519	56.202	60.886	65.569	70.252	74.936	79.620	84.303	88.987	93.670
60	9.187	13.780	18.373	22.966	27.560	32.153	36.746	41.339	45.933	50.526	55.119	59.712	64.306	68.899	73.492	78.085	82.679	87.272	91.865
70	8.646	13.268	17.691	22.114	26.537	30.960	35.383	39.806	44.228	48.651	53.074	57.497	61.920	66.343	70.765	75.188	79.611	84.034	88.457
80	8.684	13.027	17.369	21.711	26.054	30.396	34.738	39.080	43.423	47.765	52.107	56.449	60.792	65.134	69.476	73.818	78.161	82.503	86.845
90	8.529	12.794	17.058	21.323	25.587	29.852	34.117	38.381	42.646	46.911	51.175	55.440	59.704	63.969	68.233	72.498	76.763	81.027	85.292
100	8.379	12.569	16.758	20.948	25.188	29.427	33.517	37.707	41.896	46.086	50.276	54.465	58.655	62.845	67.034	71.224	75.414	79.603	83.793
120	8.235	12.582	16.469	20.526	24.704	28.821	32.938	37.055	41.173	45.290	49.407	53.525	57.642	61.759	65.877	69.994	74.111	78.228	82.346
130	8.095	12.142	16.139	20.237	24.284	28.332	32.379	36.426	40.474	44.521	48.569	52.616	56.663	60.711	64.758	68.805	72.853	76.900	80.948
140	7.959	11.939	15.919	19.899	23.879	27.859	31.838	35.818	39.798	43.778	47.758	51.738	55.717	59.697	63.677	67.546	71.637	75.616	79.596
150	7.829	11.743	15.638	19.572	23.467	27.401	31.316	35.230	39.145	43.069	46.973	50.888	54.802	58.717	62.631	66.546	70.480	74.375	78.289
160	7.702	11.534	15.405	19.256	23.107	27.035	30.910	34.661	38.512	42.363	46.215	50.066	53.917	57.768	61.619	65.471	69.322	73.173	77.024
170	7.580	11.370	15.160	18.960	22.740	26.530	30.320	34.110	37.900	41.690	45.480	49.270	53.060	56.850	60.640	64.430	68.220	72.010	75.800
180	7.461	11.192	14.923	18.633	22.384	26.115	29.845	33.576	37.307	41.037	44.768	48.499	52.229	55.960	59.690	63.421	67.152	70.882	74.614
190	7.346	11.020	14.653	18.366	22.059	25.712	29.386	33.059	36.732	40.405	44.078	47.752	51.425	55.098	58.771	62.444	66.117	69.791	73.464
200	7.236	10.862	14.470	18.087	21.705	25.322	28.940	32.557	36.175	39.792	43.410	47.027	50.645	54.262	57.879	61.497	65.114	68.732	72.349
210	7.127	10.690	14.233	17.817	21.380	24.944	30.577	34.194	37.811	41.428	45.045	48.662	52.279	55.896	59.513	63.130	66.747	70.364	73.981
212	7.106	10.658	14.211	17.764	21.317	24.869	30.422	31.976	35.527	39.080	42.633	46.186	49.739	53.291	56.844	60.397	63.949	67.502	71.055

This valuable table is by Mr. Fairley's colliery manager. If you wish to know the weight of air in a shaft of a certain depth and temperature, all you have to do is to multiply the area of the shaft by the number of lbs., and strike off the three decimal figures on the right hand of the result, and the remainder will be the total weight of air in lbs.

*Son* : Are there several powers to propel air down into a mine ; and, if so, what are the other powers ?—*Father* : The powers are numerous. There is the mechanical power ; water-falls in the down-cast ; and there are also hoppers constructed at the top of the down-cast, into which the force of the air on the surface blows, and this also may be called a power to propel air.

*Son* : Do you know what quantity of air has been produced by the natural heat of the mine ?—*Father* : I can give you a little information on that. Some years ago, in Yorkshire, I had two collieries under my charge. We had only two pits at one colliery, a down-cast and an up-cast. We had no ventilating furnace, neither had we any explosive gas, but only carbonic acid gas. In winter, when the temperature on the surface was low and extremely cold, the force of the ventilating currents was so strong as to blow out naked lights. As summer advanced, and the temperature on the surface rose, the force of the ventilating current diminished accordingly, until it ceased to exist ; then a fire had to be fixed in the up-cast. The above method was in use not only for eighteen months, but for six years.

*Son* : Can you show any more collieries where a large natural current was produced ?—*Father* : Yes. At the Tyne Main Colliery the natural heat of the mine produced a natural current of 34,955 cubic feet of air per minute. The temperature in the up-cast, caused by the heat of the mine, was 20 degrees above

that in the down-cast. After this the furnace was put to work ; then the temperature in the up-cast rose to 94 degrees above that in the down-cast. And so, accordingly, the extra heat from the furnace increased the ventilating current to 101,876 cubic feet per minute. The depth of the up-cast was 280 yards, and the area 59 square feet.

*Son* : Can you name any more collieries where the natural draught was known?—*Father* : Yes ; you have often, no doubt, heard of the Hetton Colliery ?

*Son* : Hetton Colliery ! Yes, very often. Some say there never was produced at Hetton the quantity of air as stated by them.—*Father* : But it would be well to know the capabilities of the colliery to produce the quantity. The up-cast pit is 300 yards deep, 153 square feet in area, and is provided with 3 powerful ventilating furnaces ; and, to my knowledge, they once had 16 separate divisions of air. Gentlemen disinterested in the colliery have often made experiments, and they say that more than 190,000 cubic feet of air were produced per minute. It would not profit them to say so if it were otherwise.

*Son* : When experiments were made by them, did they name the quantity of air produced by the natural current, and also the amount of air added to it by furnace power?—*Father* : I stated, before, that at this colliery an increase of temperature of 28 degrees had been produced by the heat of the mine,—that is, the temperature of the up-cast was 28 degrees above the temperature of the down-cast. Well, this natural heat of the mine produced 127,145 cubic feet of air per minute. Then the furnace was put to work, and the difference of temperature between the two shafts rose to 86 degrees. This raised the ventilating current to 208,466 cubic feet per minute. This will show that, in this case,

furnace power only added to the natural current 81,321 cubic feet per minute.

*Son*: I think that the quantity of air produced by the natural heat of the mine was very large.—*Father*: I think so, too. Yet natural ventilation cannot be depended on. Others are of the same opinion.

*Son*: Have you any more remarks to make on the Hetton Colliery, or on any others?—*Father*: I might name several more; yet what I have said is, I think, sufficient on that subject. But, that you may have another opinion besides mine, I will quote what was stated at Manchester by the late J. J. Atkinson, Esq., Inspector of Mines.

*Son*: What did he say?—*Father*: He said, "In order to find the ventilating pressure, and the power arising from the use of a ventilating furnace, we require to know the weight of a cubic foot of air at different temperatures and under different pressures. Careful experiments show that 459 cubic feet of air at 0 degree, or zero of Fahrenheit, the common thermometer, weigh 39.76 lbs., when the pressure is 30 inches of mercury of the density due to 32 degrees,—a pressure equal to nearly 14½ lbs. per square inch, which is the ordinary pressure of the atmosphere; but it only weighs  $\frac{1}{80}$ th of this, or 1.3253 lbs., when the pressure is only one inch of mercury; and since 459 feet of air at 0 degree expand exactly a cubic foot for each degree of heat added, we get the following *rule* to find the weight of a cubic foot of air at any temperature and under any pressure:

$$W = \frac{1.3253 \times I}{459 + t}$$

Where  $I$  = the height in inches indicated by the barometer, and

$t$  = the temperature by Fahrenheit's thermometer. At 38 degrees, under a pressure of 30 inches of mercury, 100 cubic feet of air weigh just 8 lbs.; a box five feet square and five feet deep would just contain 10 lbs of such air." On one occasion, at Hetton Colliery, when 225,176 cubic feet of air per minute were circulating, the average temperature of the air in the down-cast shaft was  $43\frac{1}{2}$  degrees, and that of the air in the up-cast shaft was 211 degrees. Now, by the rule given (if we take the barometer half-way down the shaft to have shown a pressure of  $30\frac{1}{2}$  inches of mercury), the weight of a cubic foot of air, taking the average in the down-cast shaft, would be .08044 lb.; and the pit being 900 feet deep, this air would produce a pressure of  $.08044 \times 900 = 72.396$  lbs. on each square foot by its mere weight. The air in the up-cast shaft, owing to its being hotter, would be lighter, and only produce a pressure on each foot = 54.297 lbs.; and hence the difference of pressure on each square foot of area, between the two columns of air, would be 18.099 lbs. Now, to find the horse-power producing ventilation, we require to multiply this difference of pressure of 18.099 lbs. on the square foot by the number of cubic feet of air circulating per minute, and then to divide the result by 33,000, the number of pounds raised one foot high per minute by a horse-power. In this case, then, we find the ventilating power at Hetton Colliery must have been—

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{lbs.} \quad \text{c. ft.} \quad \text{pr. min.} \\ 18.099 \times 225,176 \\ \hline 33,000 \end{array} = 123\frac{1}{2} \text{ horse-power,}$$

225,176 cubic feet of air per minute being in circulation at the time. Some part of the extra heat of the air in the up-cast

over that in the down-cast shaft would have arisen from the heat of the mine, and would cause what is called a natural ventilation, even if furnaces had not been used. But natural ventilation, said Mr. Atkinson, is generally very small in amount, and cannot be depended upon, as in hot weather the down-cast column of air is little or no cooler or denser than the air in the up-cast, and, by making the weight or pressure of the two air columns equal, is liable to stop all ventilation. There is, my son, much valuable information to be had from mine inspectors, if miners would read their lectures and reports; but many choose to remain in ignorance.

*Son* : I see Mr. Atkinson is also of opinion that there is little or no natural current in hot weather, and that the difference of pressure on each square foot of area between the down-cast and the up-cast at Hetton Colliery, with the large temperature in the up-cast of 211 degrees, was nearly 18.099 lbs. I wish to know how to find in this case the total weight of air in the down-cast over that in the up-cast?—*Father* : All you have to do is to multiply 18.099 by the area of the pit, which is 153 feet, and strike off the three decimal figures on the right hand of the result, and the remainder shows how much more in pounds the weight of the air in the down-cast is than that in the up-cast.

*Son* : How wonderful are nature's laws! and do not such laws show how wise He is who made them? I should like to have a little information on the propelling force of air in mines?—*Father* : What do you wish to know of the force of the air?

*Son* : Can you tell what force the air would have on one square foot, at a velocity of from one mile per hour to, say 40

miles per hour, and also the number of cubic feet of air passing per minute, through one foot area at the said velocity?—*Father* : I had better give you the table. Here it is.

Velocity in Miles per Hour.	Number of Cubic Feet of Air passing through One Foot area per Minute.	The Propelling Force of the Air on One Square Foot in Lbs.
		Lbs. Ozs. Drs.
1 . . . . .	88 . . . . .	0 0 1 $\frac{1}{4}$
2 . . . . .	176 . . . . .	0 0 5
3 . . . . .	264 . . . . .	0 0 11
4 . . . . .	352 . . . . .	0 1 4 $\frac{1}{4}$
5 . . . . .	440 . . . . .	0 1 15 $\frac{1}{4}$
6 . . . . .	528 . . . . .	0 2 14
7 . . . . .	616 . . . . .	0 3 15
8 . . . . .	704 . . . . .	0 5 1
9 . . . . .	792 . . . . .	0 6 7 $\frac{1}{4}$
10 . . . . .	880 . . . . .	0 7 14
11 . . . . .	968 . . . . .	0 9 9
12 . . . . .	1056 . . . . .	0 11 8
13 . . . . .	1144 . . . . .	0 13 8
14 . . . . .	1232 . . . . .	0 15 12
15 . . . . .	1320 . . . . .	1 1 13
16 . . . . .	1408 . . . . .	1 4 4
17 . . . . .	1496 . . . . .	1 7 4
18 . . . . .	1584 . . . . .	1 9 14
19 . . . . .	1672 . . . . .	1 12 11
20 . . . . .	1760 . . . . .	1 15 8
21 . . . . .	1848 . . . . .	2 2 14
22 . . . . .	1936 . . . . .	2 6 4
23 . . . . .	2024 . . . . .	2 9 10
24 . . . . .	2112 . . . . .	2 14 0
25 . . . . .	2200 . . . . .	3 2 0
26 . . . . .	2288 . . . . .	3 6 0
27 . . . . .	2376 . . . . .	3 10 1

Velocity in Miles per Hour.	Number of Cubic Feet of Air passing through One Foot Area per Minute.	The Propelling Force of the Air on One Square Foot in Lbs.
		<i>Lbs. Ozs. Drs.</i>
28 . . . . .	2464 . . . . .	8 14 0
29 . . . . .	2552 . . . . .	4 2 5
30 . . . . .	2640 . . . . .	4 6 10
31 . . . . .	2728 . . . . .	4 11 13
32 . . . . .	2816 . . . . .	5 1 0
33 . . . . .	2904 . . . . .	5 7 1
34 . . . . .	2992 . . . . .	5 13 3
35 . . . . .	3080 . . . . .	6 3 5
36 . . . . .	3168 . . . . .	6 8 8
37 . . . . .	3256 . . . . .	6 13 14
38 . . . . .	3344 . . . . .	7 2 12
39 . . . . .	3432 . . . . .	7 8 5½
40 . . . . .	3520 . . . . .	7 14 0

At a velocity of 24 miles per hour, 2112 cubic feet of air, you see, pass per minute through one foot area at a pressure or force of 2 lbs. 14 oz. on one square foot.

*Son*: Do you know at what velocity air travelled at some of the collieries?—*Father*: Yes; at the Cannel Pit, Ince Hall, Wigan, its velocity by furnace-power up the shaft was 1303 feet per minute, or nearly 15 miles per hour. The velocity of the air at Hetton Colliery, when 225,176 cubic feet of air were produced, was nearly 1472 feet per minute, or nearly 17 miles per hour.

*Son*: The reason I want to know is this: If a ventilating engine should propel air at a velocity of 17 miles per hour, will the current suddenly stop or come to a stand-still the moment the engine stops?—*Father*: No; the current would continue after the stoppage, until brought to a stand-still by friction in its

route. There is a force in the air (similar to the force in a fly-wheel) when in motion. If the fly-wheel could be detached from the engine it would continue to revolve until the force in it was reduced by friction, and it was brought to a stand-still. When I say that the current of air would continue after the stoppage, I wish you to understand that the fan would have to be constructed so that it could be disconnected in the event of an accident, so as not to obstruct the passage of the air, or otherwise the current would stop at the moment the engine stopped.

*Son* : I wish to know how long the current would continue after the engine stopped working?—*Father* : As you do not know the density of air, its propelling force, nor the amount of friction to be overcome, you cannot know how long it would continue.

*Son* : If the engine or fan could be so constructed as not to stop the force of the ventilating current, would there not then be sufficient time to get out the men before an explosion of the gases accumulating in the workings would be likely to take place?—*Father* : It is my opinion there would be time, if so constructed.

*Son* : I think, father, I have a good knowledge now how mines discharge gases. I shall be glad to know how mines are ventilated, and also the best way to prevent loss of life; as there is often great loss of life caused by explosions, with not ventilating properly.—*Father* : I will give you a knowledge of the best way, and what I say I know no one can contradict. Explosions there are, and I fear always will be, and also loss of life, but such great loss of life can be prevented by a proper mode of ventilation.

---

**How Air is propelled down, through, and around the  
Workings of a Mine.**

*Son* : Are not mines ventilated by a large furnace at the bottom of the up-cast shaft?—*Father* : Yes; but there are also other ventilating powers, such as the steam-jet, the bellows, and the fan, employed for ventilating mines.

*Son* : Well, but they do not, I presume, draw or pull air through the workings of a mine like a furnace does?—*Father* : Air is not drawn nor pulled through the workings by the furnace, or by any ventilating power.

*Son* : Miners often say, the larger the furnace the more air will it *pull* through holes and places nearest the up-cast.—

*Father* : I know miners often say and think so; they know no better.

*Son* : If air is neither drawn nor pulled, how is it caused to pass through the workings?—*Father* : Heat, you know, makes almost everything expand; cold air expands very much by heat; therefore, the furnace produces ventilation by making air hot at the bottom of the up-cast.

*Son* : Then, when air expands, does it become lighter in proportion to its bulk than cold air?—*Father* : Yes. If one foot of cold air expands by heat into two feet, the two feet, you know, will only weigh the same as one foot did.

*Son* : Then heat makes air so light that it rushes like a balloon up the up-cast and out of a mine?—*Father* : Yes; and with the air rushing up one shaft, the great weight of air in the other is too heavy to remain in its place; therefore it falls down or rushes forward to occupy the place of the hot air.

*Son* : I see ; a furnace is like a pump emptying two shafts filled with water : as the water is pumped out of one shaft it receives a fresh supply, which rushes in from the other, owing to its great weight, to occupy the place of that pumped out.—

*Father* : Yes ; if the workings and the two shafts were full to the surface with water, the water nearest the bottom would be pressed upon by the whole weight of that above it, and the water in the workings between the shafts would be pressed upon by the water from each shaft with equal force. And it would remain stagnant or motionless unless an outlet was made for it, because the pressure in one shaft would be equal to that in the other. So in like manner will *air* press towards the up-cast as the weight of air in the up-cast diminishes.

*Son* : Air is not pulled, then, as miners often say, like something pulled or drawn with a rope, but is pressed into the up-cast by the great weight of cold air in the down-cast. But how does a steam-jet, bellows, or a fan ventilate mines, as air is not made hot by them ?

*Father* : You have asked me several questions, all of which I have answered to the best of my ability ; I will now ask you a few.—*Son* : I fear I shall not be able to answer your questions.

*Father* : The questions I require you to answer will be very simple.—*Son* : If so, I will try to answer them.

*Father* : By way of illustration, then, suppose you have a pair of scales, with a 15-lb. weight in one scale and a 15-lb. weight in the other : will the weight of one overbalance or weigh down the other ?—*Son* : No. The scales would be at a stand-still, because the weight would be equal in the two.

*Father* : You are right, my boy ; but if you add 1 lb. to one of them, making 16 lbs. in one and 15 lbs. in the other ?—*Son* :

That being the case, the 16-lb. weight would be sure to weigh down the other.

*Father* : I see you are able to answer my questions; but again, suppose you take off 1 lb., making 15 lbs. in one and 14 lbs. in the other?—*Son* : The 15-lb. weight would weigh down the 14 lbs. the same as the 16 lbs. weighed down the 15 lbs.

*Father* : Very well. Now by this I wish you to understand that the atmosphere presses with a weight of 15 lbs. into and upon the top of, the up-cast as well as into and upon the top of the down-cast, and as one 15 lbs. will not overbalance another, but remain at a stand-still, so, in like manner, air in mines will not move with an atmospheric weight of 15 lbs. pressing at the top of each shaft, unless the weight is diminished or increased at either one or the other. That is to say, all that is required to cause air to pass down one shaft and up another is either to increase or diminish the weight of the atmosphere at either the one or the other shaft.

*Son* : Will the steam-jet, bellows, and fan diminish or increase the atmospheric weight at the top of either shaft?—*Father* : They will increase the pressure by forcing air in at the down-cast or diminish it by forcing air out at the up-cast.

*Son* : How wonderful, father, is ventilation, and yet so clear that if a man cannot see it he is as dark as midnight! But may a steam-jet or fan, etc., be fixed at the top of either shaft?—

*Father* : Yes; the amount of air produced for the workings will be just the same if fixed at one shaft as at the other. You know a pound of pressure, added or diminished, is like the scales,—one and the same. Yet the steam, no doubt, would affect the workings if the jet were fixed at the top of the down-cast. In the

steam-jet there are two powers of ventilation: one is its propelling force, the other is the high temperature; therefore it would do more work by fixing it in the up-cast shaft.

*Son*: I think many persons believe that the same quantity of air cannot be produced by a ventilating engine being fixed at one shaft as at the other?—*Father*: Some believe the quantities of air produced by both ways would be precisely the same; others say, not so.

*Son*: Much discussion has arisen from time to time, I believe, on this subject?—*Father*: Yes. The subject of propulsion has been the cause of much discussion with men of talent. I and an eminent viewer (as I was informed he was) near Durham, who signed himself "Miner," spent nineteen weeks' controversy on the same subject.

*Son*: Indeed; I shall be glad, then, to have your views on the subject of propulsion?—*Father*: My object, you know, is to give information; therefore you may ask anything on the subject of ventilation.

*Son*: I wish to ask, would there be any current in mines without motion?—*Father*: No.

*Son*: With the air being elastic, as you call it, would there be any motion of the current without the density at one end being greater than at the other?—*Father*: No; it would be impossible.

*Son*: Would there be any increase in the density without additional weight?—*Father*: No; it could not be.

*Son*: Then additional weight to the current must produce an increased density?—*Father*: Yes.

*Son*: And that increased density, where there is an open exit, produces motion?—*Father*: Just so.

*Son* : And that motion of the air, then, is the current produced?—*Father* : So it is.

*Son* : Then additional weight to the air at the down-cast produces both motion and density at the same time?—*Father* : Such is the case.

*Son* : Why is it so?—*Father* : Because it is a law in nature that one cannot act without the other.

*Son* : Is it correct, father, that we live at the bottom of a very deep sea?—*Father* : So it is. The sea is forty-five miles deep. It is not, you know, a sea of water, but a very deep sea of air.

*Son* : A deep sea of air! Our coal-mines and pits, then, are filled with air just in like manner as they would be with water if at the bottom of the ocean?—*Father* : Just so. All pits and workings are filled and pressed down with air to overflowing.

*Son* : Pressed down, do you say? Then the air at the bottom of this deep sea presses upon bodies and substances which lie on its floor, or on the earth's surface?—*Father* : The weight and density of the air on the surface of the earth is very great.

*Son* : What am I to understand, father, by the density of the air, for I have often heard of density?—*Father* : You will understand if two feet of air are pressed into one foot, the one foot is much increased in density, but diminished if one foot of air expands into two feet.

*Son* : I well understand now when an increased and a diminished density of the air takes place.—*Father* : And you will also understand, no doubt, if two feet of air are pressed into one foot, the one foot will weigh just the same as the two feet did before, and also if one foot expands into two feet, the one foot of expanded air will weigh one-half only of what it did before.

*Son* : It is clear enough, father, for any person to understand,

and they should never forget it. Do you know the weight of air pressing on the surface of the earth?—*Father*: The average weight of the air pressing on the earth's surface is nearly 15 lbs. per square inch.

*Son*: This atmospheric weight of 15 lbs. presses, then, upon the top of the up-cast, and also upon the top of the down-cast shaft?—*Father*: It is so, and with a weight such as that is, the density of the air is very great in the workings of a mine.

*Son*: There is a natural heat in mines?—*Father*: Yes; and in some this natural heat is a great ventilating power.

*Son*: How does the natural heat, father, produce a natural current?—*Father*: In the following manner: the heat of the mine expands the air, by which it becomes much diminished in density, and therefore much less in weight, so that it rushes up the up-cast.

*Son*: Is the air obtained, then, from the down-cast by propulsion?—*Father*: It is, always, and by this natural heat a great propelling power is produced at the down-cast over that at the up-cast.

*Son*: How is this power applied in propelling the current through the air-ways from the down-cast to the up-cast?—*Father*: In the following manner: the least density or weight of the air is always at the up-cast, so that from the first yard the air becomes more and more dense and the propelling force increases step by step; every yard in the air-way along its whole route from stage to stage this propelling force increases, until the greatest density and propelling force is obtained at the top of the down-cast; or, in other words, suppose we had two shafts near each other, one the down-cast, the other the up-cast,—the length of air-ways from down-cast to up-cast, say 7000 yards.

At the top of the up-cast shaft a mechanical ventilator is at work, and by its power the pressure of the air is diminished, say one pound. I have no doubt that were it possible to detect the propelling force in every yard of route in the air-way, we should find it to increase uniformly from the first yard of air at the up-cast to the end of the 7000 yards at the top of the down-cast shaft. The route from up-cast to down-cast being (as we suppose) 7000 yards, and one imperial pound consisting of 7000 grains, we should find this propelling force increasing one grain every yard, step by step, until it attained its greatest propelling pressure at the top of the down-cast shaft. In every yard of route this air requires the additional grain of propelling force to overcome the friction of the rubbing surface in its passage and to move it along. The air, then, is obtained from the down-cast, you see, by a *propelling* force; not by drawing or pulling from a mechanical power at the up-cast.

*Son* : I understand now how the natural heat of the mine produces a natural current; but, father, how does the furnace produce currents in mines?—*Father* : Precisely in the same manner as that produced by the natural heat.

*Son* : How does a ventilating fan employed at the up-cast produce currents in mines?—*Father* : It reduces the weight of the air at the up-cast, and thereby causes the air in the mine to expand, and consequently its weight is diminished in the space occupied.

*Son* : The air, then, being elastic, a reduction in the weight pressing upon it causes it to expand in the same manner as by heat?—*Father* : They both act in the same manner.

*Son* : The propelling power increases every yard, then, step by step, along the whole length of the air-way, from up-cast

to down-cast, as shown by the natural heat?—*Father* : The one is precisely the same as the other. I will now suppose that the mechanical ventilator has been removed and set to work at the top of the down-cast shaft. It there exerts a pressure over the atmospheric weight of, say one pound, which is the true propelling force.

*Son* : But will it then produce the same quantity of air?—

*Father* : Just the same as if employed at the up-cast.

*Son* : Will the fan have the natural heat of the mine to assist it whether it is fixed at the up-cast or down-cast?—*Father* : Yes, if the air-passages rise towards the *up-cast*, but not otherwise.

*Son* : But how does the fan at the down-cast produce the current?—*Father* : It increases the density or weight of the air in the down-cast shaft, and thus the air in the down-cast becomes heavier than that in the up-cast, and overbalances it, similar to what happens when the fan is at the up-cast, only in this case the difference in weight between the two shafts is caused by an increase of pressure, while in the other it is caused by a decrease. Thus, as I said before, it does not matter whether we add 1 lb. to one scale or take 1 lb. from the other, for we have a difference of 1 lb. either way.

*Son* : By pressure the air, then, is increased in density and weight, and also by a fall in the temperature?—*Father* : It is so. If air is produced for the workings of a mine, the density of the air must be much greater at the down-cast to overbalance the pressure at the up-cast.

*Son* : Then you would increase the density there as much as possible above that at the up-cast?—*Father* : It is the only way to produce a large current of air. When you have obtained the greatest possible density there with the least possible density

at the up-cast, you have then obtained the greatest propelling power of ventilation.

*Son* : A mechanical ventilator may be put to work, then, either at the one or at the other shaft ?—*Father* : It is immaterial where employed ; only obtain, I say, the greatest possible density there over the up-cast ; for this, and this only, is the greatest propelling power of ventilation.

*Son* : Will density change in nature if a mechanical ventilator should be employed at the down-cast to propel air down, because some people say a ventilator will not produce the same quantity of air there as if at work at the up-cast ?—*Father* : Density is density, my lad, all the world over, and it has the same nature too, by whatever power and from whatever point or place it may be produced.

*Son* : If density change not in nature, will a mechanical ventilator produce, then, the same quantity of air by one pound of pressure added at the down-cast as by a reduction of one pound at the up-cast ?—*Father* : The quantity of air produced by each is precisely the same.

*Son* : You say, father, that the atmospheric weight is 15 lbs. per square inch, and this weight presses alike on the top of each shaft ?—*Father* : I do.

*Son* : Then if you add one pound at the down-cast, will it not make 16 lbs. there to overbalance 15 lbs. at the up-cast ?—

*Father* : It will, and by taking off one pound at the up-cast it will make 14 lbs. to be overbalanced by 15 lbs.

*Son* : Will not the air be heavier with a density of 16 lbs.' pressure than with a density of 15 lbs.' pressure ?—*Father* : Yes. Its density and weight will be one-fifteenth more.

*Son* : Yet the propelling force is the same in each case ?—

*Father* : Just so ; the propelling power which moves the current

along is precisely the same in each, but not the weight or density of the current, nor its velocity.

*Son* : If the density be one-fifteenth more in one than in the other, and you say the propelling power which moves it along is the same for each, how will the same propelling power move two currents of unequal weights, and yet produce precisely the same quantity of air in one as in the other?—*Father* : Because there is one-fifteenth more air in the same area or space in one than in the other; so that, if the velocity were the same in the two, the largest quantity of air would be produced, you know, by that of the greatest density. So that if 15 horse-power will produce a velocity to the current of 16 yards, at a pressure of 15 lbs., 16 horse-power will produce the same velocity to a current of 16 lbs.' pressure in the same space of time; the 16 lbs.' density requiring one additional horse-power, because the air in it is one-fifteenth more than in the 15 lbs.' density. Also, if the workings and air-ways remain in the same unaltered state, the "work" in the current's motion must be in proportion to the increased and the diminished velocity; its work, then, must be one-fifteenth more if propelled 16 yards than if propelled only 15 yards. If 16 horse-power will propel the current 16 yards, 15 horse-power must propel the same current 15 yards in the same space of time; therefore, 15 horse-power will propel a current of 16 lbs.' density 15 yards, and it will also propel a current of 15 lbs.' density 16 yards, both in the same space of time, and produce in both the same quantity of air. Consequently, a mechanical ventilating power may be employed either at the down- or the up-cast shaft, as the quantity of air produced will be the same in each.

*Son* : Do you think, then, that the extra quantity of air ob-

tained by the extra density will be lost by a diminished velocity of the current?—*Father* : The propelling power in this particular case is governed by what may be called the mechanical law of motion. The extra quantity of air obtained by the extra density is lost by a diminished velocity ; yet the propelling power being the same in each, the quantity of air obtained in each is precisely the same.

*Son* : Governed by the mechanical law of motion ! I never heard before of currents of air in mines being governed by that law.—*Father* : By this I wish you to understand, if the density be increased to one-fifteenth more, the amount of air in the same area of the air-way will be increased one-fifteenth.

*Son* : But if increased one-fifteenth, that increased density must, with the same velocity, increase the friction one-fifteenth.—*Father* : Just so. But remember, if its density be increased one-fifteenth, 15 yards of the air-way will contain the same quantity of air in it as 16 yards of the less dense air, so that one current travelling 15 yards and the other 16 yards, in the same space of time, both will produce precisely the same quantity of air and friction.

*Son* : The quantity of air in each is just the same.—*Father* : And so is the friction alike in each, because if there is a certain amount of friction in travelling 16 yards in a certain space of time, that friction must be diminished one-sixteenth by travelling only 15 yards in the same space of time.

*Son* : Just so : I see it more clearly now.—*Father* : The extra friction, caused by an increased density, is compensated for by the friction being diminished with a diminished velocity of the current, so that the quantity of air produced is just the same in each for the same resistance.

*Son* : It must be so.—*Father* : The “same” quantity of air, mark you (whether increased or diminished in density), will produce in motion precisely the same friction.

*Son* : I am a little surprised at that information.—*Father* : A given ventilating power will produce the same quantity of air, whether that air be increased or diminished in density, because if an engine is able to produce 16,000 feet of air per minute at a certain density, it will, if the density be increased one-sixteenth, produce a less velocity, because the friction is increased, yet the quantity of air produced is still the same,—that is, 16,000 feet per minute,—as there is one-sixteenth more air in the same space. The same is true if the density be decreased, as the friction is proportionally decreased, but the engine is then able to go at a greater speed and consequently increases the velocity until the friction is equal to what it was before.

*Son* : You remember, father, that “Miner” said that any increase of pressure or density at the down-cast is equivalent to a fourfold resistance or friction, while a decrease of pressure at the up-cast is tantamount to a proportionate reduction of such resistance or friction.—*Father* : If “Miner” had informed the public that a reduction of the pressure or density at the up-cast meant not only a reduction of friction, but it meant also a reduction of the “quantity” of air obtained, and, *vice versa*, an increased density or pressure at the down-cast meant not an increased friction or resistance only, but it meant also an “increased quantity” of air, and not an increased friction for the same quantity of air produced,—had he said so, he would then have hit the nail on the head.

*Son* : How does “Miner” make the resistance or friction fourfold with an increased pressure or density at the down-cast?—

*Father* : You have asked me, my lad, more than I can answer, unless "Miner" explained himself thus : If the air travel, not 15 yards, but 30 yards in the same space of time, then friction or resistance will be increased fourfold, and a fourfold expenditure of power will be required to overcome such ; then we should have understood what he meant by a fourfold resistance.

*Son* : But if the current travelled 80 yards in the same space of time as it took to travel 15 yards before, would not a double quantity of air be produced by it ?—*Father* : Just so.

*Son* : Then an increased density at the down-cast will not increase friction for the same quantity of air produced ?—*Father* : No, not one iota.

*Son* : And a decrease of density at the up-cast will not diminish friction for the same quantity of air produced ?—*Father* : It will not diminish it one iota. Therefore, one pound of propelling power added to the down-cast will produce precisely the same quantity of air as a reduction of one pound at the up-cast. Why not ? Density changes not in nature, but is the same in the two. Friction is the same in each for the same quantity of air produced, and the propelling power is the same, therefore the amount of air obtained must be the same whether fixed at one shaft or at the other. You know, as before stated, that a pound of pressure added or diminished is like the scales in its result,—one and the same.

*Son* : I am of your opinion ; one will produce precisely the same quantity of air as the other.—*Father* : No person is able to prove otherwise except they have had a ventilating engine at work at the up-cast and removed it to the down-cast, and find that the quantity of air produced by each varies ; and then the

dip of the mine would have to be considered, as it might also vary the quantity of air produced.

*Son* : Suppose you had a ventilating fan, at which shaft would you fix it?—*Father* : If possible, I would fix it at the top of the down-cast.

*Son* : But why, when the same quantity of air is produced at one shaft as at the other?—*Father* : I know the quantity of air would be the same, but there would be less danger of filling the workings with explosive gas.

*Son* : Filling the workings with explosive gas! Why, how can a ventilating fan fill the workings with gas?—*Father* : You know I have stated before that gas is pressed or pent up in the strata by the great weight of the atmosphere ; therefore, to take away the weight which presses the gas in would let it out, like letting out steam from a boiler by taking the weight off the valve. Now in case a ventilating fan were fixed at the top of the up-cast to propel air out of a mine, if the passage in the workings near the down-cast suddenly closed up, every stroke of the fan would empty out that air which pressed in the gas, and thus the mine would suddenly fill with gas, and cause, no doubt, great loss of life.

*Son* : Do you think it would not fill the workings with gas if fixed at the top of the down-cast?—*Father* : No ; because every stroke of the fan would press more weight upon the pent-up gas, and give a longer time for the men to escape the danger.

*Son* : You say that ventilating furnaces are fixed in mines that the heat from them may expand the air and produce a current through the underground workings?—*Father* : Yes. As a current of air is produced by heat, the more heat you can cause the furnace to produce in the up-cast shaft the larger will

be the quantity of air obtained. A furnace should be fixed in the up-cast where the largest volume of air can be heated by it, as it will produce more air than if fixed in another place ; therefore, to fix it at the bottom of the shaft is much better than at the top.

*Son* : Some people think that the top of the shaft is the best place to fix the furnace.—*Father* : If fixed at the top of the shaft much heat would be lost, and you know to have a loss of heat would be to have a loss of air. When a furnace is fixed at the top of the shaft, all the air in the shaft below the furnace is left unheated ; therefore, the larger the volume of the up-cast air you can heat the greater will be the pressure of the air from the down-cast. As before stated, heat expands air, and when expanded it is less in weight ; therefore, what is required of the furnace is to heat as large a volume of the up-cast air as possible, because in proportion to the area of the volume of air heated and expanded the difference in weight between the up-cast and down-cast shafts will be great or small.

*Son* : I can see now very clearly. To produce the largest quantity of air for the workings you must fix the furnace in the up-cast, where it can heat the largest volume of air, for the larger the volume of light air obtained the greater will be the rush or pressure of air from the down-cast to occupy its place.

*Father* : Just so. Therefore, it is better to fix the furnace at the bottom of the shaft than at the top, however deep the shaft may be, as there is a much larger volume of air made light by fixing it there.

*Son* : Some people say that if you fix a furnace at the bottom of a very deep shaft the heated air will become more and more cool as it ascends near the top, and thus becoming more and

more dense, until at last it reaches its original condition of coolness, by which its ventilating power becomes diminished or destroyed.—*Father* : The expanding air may contract a little in passing away up the shaft from the furnace to the surface, but there cannot be a larger volume of contracted air above than there would be below the furnace, if it was fixed at the top of the shaft.

*Son* : I see now. The air, below the furnace to the bottom of the shaft, may be said, then, to be all contracted ; therefore, there would be more cool air by that way than the other. But if the furnace were fixed at the top of the shaft, would not the hot air rush out of the shaft to the surface with a greater speed than it would if fixed at the bottom ? and as the air at the top of the shaft would be much higher in temperature, would it not propel away therefrom the cold air in winter, and by so doing produce a larger current of air for the underground workings ?

*Father* : I will ask you a question or two, which I hope you will try to answer, and which will set you right on this matter. Will not the air heated at the furnace rush away from it to a certain height with the same velocity, if the furnace be fixed at the bottom of the shaft, as it would if fixed near the top ? And if so, will not the air from the workings follow or rush into the up-cast with the same velocity, to occupy the place of the hot air ?—*Son* : I cannot see that the velocity of the air from the furnace, and the velocity from the workings into the shaft, would not be as great if fixed at the bottom of the shaft as at the top.

*Father* : Then, if the velocity was as great, it would be much better to fix the furnace at the bottom of the shaft, because there would then be no loss of heat.

*Son* : Loss of heat ! How do you show there would be loss

of heat?—*Father* : Fix a furnace near the top of a shaft, and place your hand in the air as it ascends, and you will find the heat will burn you. That heat you feel is lost, but if properly made use of, by the furnace being at the bottom of the shaft, it would change the cold and dense air in the shaft into warm expanded air, and by so doing increase very much the ventilating volume, just as a balloon, if enlarged by the gas being expanded by heat, would ascend more rapidly, and also overcome a greater weight.

*Son* : I thank you for the information. I think, with you, that the furnace will do more work if fixed at the bottom of the shaft; and the deeper the shaft the better, as in a deep shaft the heat is not lost at the top before it has been made use of; a larger volume of light air is produced, and consequently a much larger ventilating current is obtained.—*Father* : You will now remember that the bottom of the shaft, and not the top of it, is the proper place for a furnace to be fixed to produce the most air.

*Son* : I shall; and it requires, I see, caution and care, and also a person with a good foresight, to prevent loss of life in mines. But I fully expected to have had before this a little conversation as to how gases are conducted by air through and around the workings of mines.—*Father* : It is my wish to impress on you, and also on every miner in the kingdom, things that will do good for years to come; therefore, as you have a knowledge how air is made to pass down into a mine, we will have a little conversation now as to how air is made to pass several ways in and through the workings of a mine.

*Son* : Will you show how air passed around Lund-hill workings, where one hundred and eighty-nine lives were lost, and at Risca, and at all those places where great numbers have been

lost; and also show a better way to prevent loss of life?—

*Father* : Yes, I shall be able to show the mode of ventilation of those places, and also a better way.

*Son* : Did you show the mode of ventilation at Lund-hill which caused the four months' discussion in the public papers—and also a meeting to take place for discussion—between you and the late John Wales, Esq., viewer in the north of England?

—*Father* : Yes. Poor Mr. Wales, I was sorry to hear of his death. The north people lost a valuable man when he died; he was a man with a good knowledge of mine ventilation. He did not charge me with not showing properly the mode of ventilation at Lund-hill, or the improved mode, but he had a notion I had made an error in the non-fixing of a regulator; and at the end of the discussion it was stated, at the meeting, that Mr. Wales fixed the regulator in the plan *for* the manager, while I *showed* him *where* to fix it.

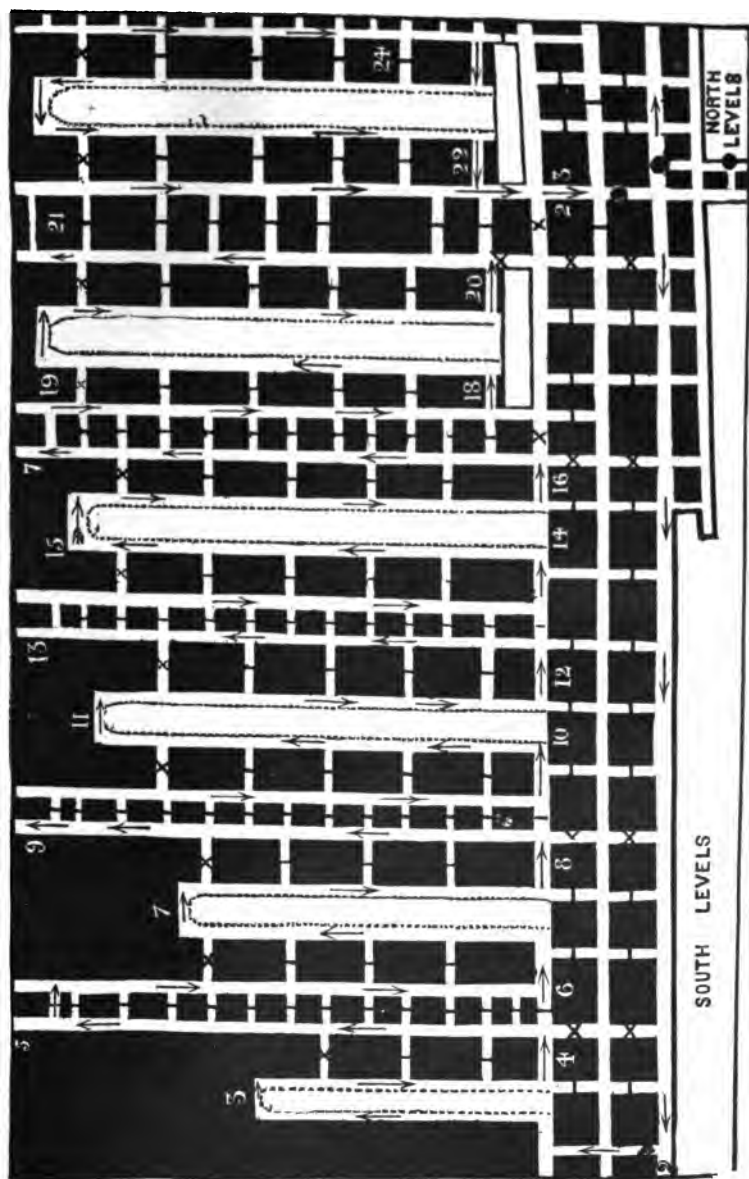
### Several Ways of Ventilating Mines.

*Son* : You have a plan, I see, showing the ventilation and workings of mines. Where is this mode of ventilation adopted?

—*Father* : In all mines where great loss of life has been caused by explosions.

*Son* : Was this way of ventilation in use, then, at Lund-hill, where one hundred and eighty-nine persons were killed by that dreadful explosion, and also at Risca, where more than one hundred and forty were lost?—*Father* : The plan you see shows the way of ventilation they had on the south levels at Lund-hill; and the supposed place of the explosion was at or near No. 24 (see *Plan*); some supposed the place of the explosion to have been at the furnace, where the whole quantity of gas from all

PLAN No. 1.—VENTILATION AT LUND-HILL BEFORE THE EXPLOSION.



the workings passed through, as the power or shock of the explosion spread, and affected north and south equally alike at one and the same time.

*Son* : Were there not many doors at Lund-hill ? I understand there is always great danger in mines where many doors are in use ?—*Father* : There were fifty-two, just as many as there are weeks in one year. There are always a great number where this mode of ventilation is adopted.

*Son* : Do the arrows on the plan show the route of the air from the down-cast into and around the workings to the up-cast ?

—*Father* : Yes. You see the arrows show the passages of the air-current : it commences its route at No. 1, from there it travels on the south level to No. 2, from there to No. 3, from there back to No. 4, then onward to No. 5, back again to No. 6, from there onward to one of the working faces at No. 7, then it is conducted back to No. 8, from there to the face of one of the narrow workings at No. 9, it then returns to No. 10, from there to the face of another working place at No. 11, then it returns to No. 12, it then enters the narrow working face at No. 13, and comes back again to No. 14.

*Son* : Well, father, what a great route air travels by this mode of ventilation !—*Father* : Yes, and if the route extended as far from the down-cast through the workings to the up-cast as one end of the river Nile is far away from the other, go it must, if only it can travel. There is no alternative with some managers but one continuous route, conducting explosive gases into every part of a mine.

*Son* : By passing air backward and forward into and out of one working place and another, there must be a large quantity of gas collected in the air long before it discharges itself at the

top of the up-cast. The air has yet to travel in and out from No. 14 to Nos. 22 and 23.—*Father* : At No. 22 (see *Plan*) the gases accumulated in the air from all the workings in the north part of the mine meet the adulterated air from the south ; at that junction the two currents join. Afterwards this large adulterated current passes through a blazing fire or furnace at No. 23.

*Son* : Is this way of ventilation of very ancient origin?—

*Father* : It was adopted first by our great-grandfathers in the early days of coal-mining, and, I am sorry to say, handed down from one generation to another as it exists at the present day.

*Son* : Is there no improvement to be made for the better and safer working of mines, and, if so, why continue this great life-destroyer so long?—*Father* : There are improvements in mine ventilating as well as in all other things, yet I cannot tell why the improvements are not adopted, unless some managers wish not to give up that which was left them by their ancestors ; or their knowledge of mine ventilating may only consist in what was well known in the early days of mining.

*Son* : If that mode of ventilating is adopted, we may well have great loss of life and property. I fear many lives have been lost by it.—*Father* : Many lost ! The number is too great to be told. Your father was left fatherless in the world by it, and from early life I have had to make my way through the world without the blessing of a parent's care.

*Son* : I think, father, there was not so great a number of lives lost by explosions in the early days of coal-mining as at the present time by the same mode. Can you tell why there was not?—*Father* : Because they had only limited means of getting out coal to the surface, they had only a limited number of works, they had only a limited number of persons employed in the

works, and only limited means of ventilating them. Therefore, if they had only a limited number of persons, of means, of works, and of air, they had not so much gas in the air at the time of an explosion; that is to say, they had less air, and they had less works for the air to pass around; therefore, they had less explosive gas in the air when it ignited; and if less gas, the power of the explosion would be less when it did take place; and if the explosive power were less, and there was a less number of works, there would be a less number of persons lost at the time of an explosion. Therefore, by the same mode of ventilation, there was not so great a number of persons lost as now.

**The Danger of one Way of Ventilation, and the Safety of another.**

*Son*: Air is conducted, you say, from one working place to another, clearing away the gas in its passage from all places in its route?—*Father*: Some managers adopt that mode for the ventilation of mines (this is clearly shown by the Lund-hill plan), but it is neither safe nor profitable for miner or master.

*Son*: Why not safe and profitable?—*Father*: Because the mode requires many doors fixing in the tram-gates to send air forward from one working place to another and to allow wagons to pass and repass with coal from the workings. It is unsafe, because if one door be left open all lives would be jeopardized; unsafe, because if one place be affected all the miners are in danger; unsafe, because the explosive gas, conducted from all parts of the mine, will make a large quantity when collected, and therefore the power of the explosion will be very great when it does take place; unsafe, because an explosion in any one part would affect the whole mine. There is expense, also, in making

and keeping air-gates large enough to make the passage of sufficient area to take the gases away from all the separate working places; expense in making a great number of doors; expense in fixing them; expense in opening and closing them to allow wagons to pass and repass; expense in the furnace expenditure of coal, as more friction of the air is caused by propelling a large quantity into and around so many working places; expense in destroying the whole workings if so large a quantity of gas becomes ignited; expense in day-wage work, etc., to make all good after.

*Son*: If air be conducted, then, from one place to another, it is not safe?—*Father*: No; this may be seen by the mode of ventilation adopted at Lund-hill; all the gases discharged from the strata in the whole mine are collected in the air, as it passes onward from place to place, until the accumulation of gas becomes so great that an awful explosion takes place.

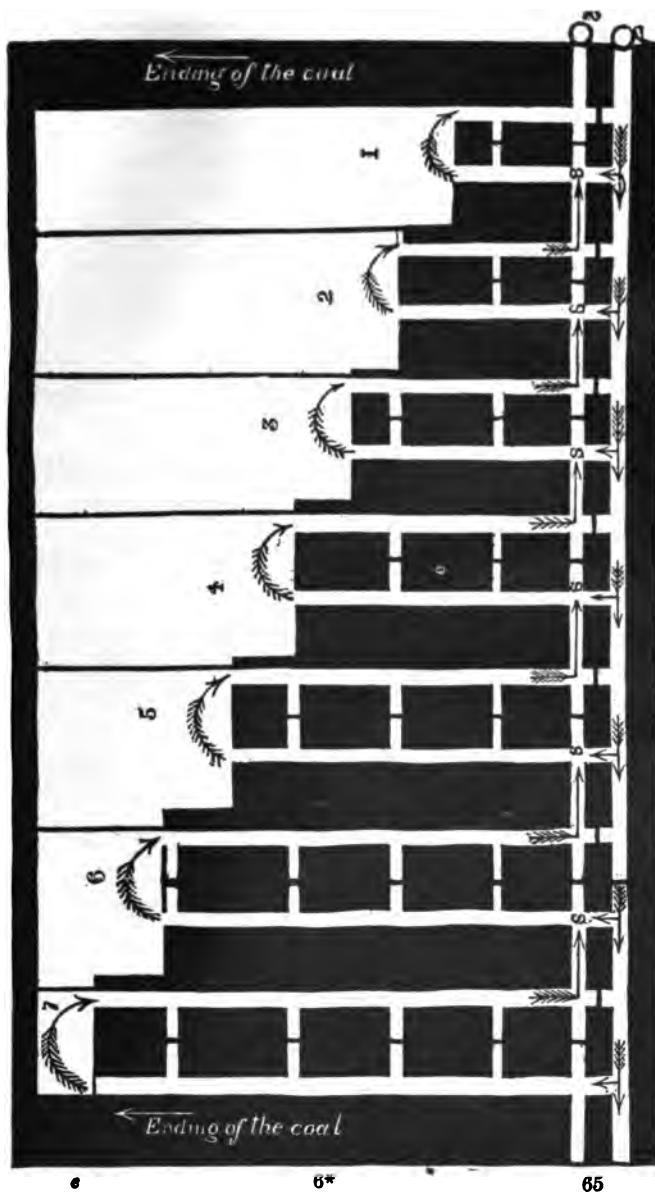
*Son*: I wish to see, father, a little clearer, as I do not understand it properly.—*Father*: Well, I will try again to make it more clear. Suppose five separate groups of miners are working where much explosive gas is discharged, and each place requires 6000 feet of air per minute for ventilating purposes. Now, if all the five currents of air make one, and the 30,000 feet pass through all the workings in one continuous route, all the five parts will be affected by an explosion, because all the separate working parts give off gas in the one current in which the explosion takes place, and, as all are ventilated by it, all are affected by the same. Among the first group of miners all the air enters, after which it leaves that group or place and passes on to the second group, from them to the third, from them it proceeds to the fourth, and lastly to the fifth group. In the first group the

men are well ventilated, and may be considered safe, providing that air and gas be not allowed to pass over a burning fire or furnace. In the second group they are less safe, from the fact that all the fire-damp discharged in the first group goes directly in a current upon the second group; then it proceeds to the third; from them it passes on, with the gases accumulated in its passage, to the fourth group; and then onward the adulterated current goes to the fifth group. Who, indeed, does not see that the miners in the fourth and fifth positions are liable at any moment to be destroyed by an explosion of fire-damp, unless the greatest caution be exercised? One part of the mine would be filled with raging flames, and the men scorched to death by the burning gases; in another they would be killed instantaneously by the expansion of the hot air and gas, or suffocated by the noxious gases which fill all parts of a mine after an explosion.

*Son* : There are other ways of ventilating mines, you say, than that adopted at Lund-hill? The mode of ventilation adopted there was to conduct the *whole* current of air around in one continuous passage.—*Father* : Yes, there are other ways of ventilation. The air is conducted by another mode in the following manner: A portion or part of the air is conducted pure into one working place; after ventilating this place, and after the current has become impure because of the gases collected in it, a fresh supply of pure air is mixed with it to ventilate another place; and in like manner this mixture of pure and impure air takes place alternately when each working place is ventilated; so that the one air-current passes on, with all the gases in the mine accumulated in it from every working place, until it discharges itself at the top of the up-cast.

*Son* : Does Plan No. 2 show this mode of ventilation, by which

PLAN No. 2.—THE IMPURE AIR SUPPLIED WITH FRESH AIR.



working places are supplied with a mixture of pure and impure air?—*Father* : Yes. The points of the arrow on the plan show the passage of the air through the workings. When the air first enters at the down-cast it goes direct to No. 7 working place ; after ventilating this place it is supplied with a portion of fresh air for the ventilating of No. 6 working place, the mixture taking place at the letter S (see *Plan*), and, in like manner, all the other working parts are ventilated with a mixture of pure and impure air ; the mixture takes place for all parts at the letters S S.

*Son* : Is this mode adopted for the safety of miners?—*Father* : Those persons who adopt such a mode believe it to be for the good and safety of miners, and economy for the employer.

*Son* : By this mode, air-gates, I see, do not require to be so large as those where the whole quantity of wind passes in one continuous current through the workings, like that at Lund-hill ; therefore the expenditure, no doubt, will be much less.—*Father* : This way would be more economical than if the whole of the air passed around the workings in one continuous current ; but the danger of loss of life by an explosion is the same as that of ventilating by one current.

*Son* : It is clear that an air-gate will not require to be so large for, say 6000 or 12,000 feet of air to pass as for 50,000 or 60,000 feet, and therefore the expenditure will be much less. But why is the danger of loss of life the same?—*Father* : Because this mode of ventilation neither divides the air nor the gas ; the gas is conducted in the same way as before described from one working place to another, in one continuous route, so that all the gases in the mine are accumulated into one large quantity ; therefore an explosion in any part of the mine would ignite the whole quantity of gas, and thus the power of such an

explosion would affect all parts where the air passed, and cause great loss of life.

*Son* : You say that to cause the air to pass in one continuous current through the workings a large number of doors are fixed. I wish to know, then, how this mode of supplying the workings with a mixture of pure and impure air is accomplished ?—*Father* : By fixing *regulating* doors in the air-passages. Air, you know, will always rush by the nearest route from the down-cast to the up-cast, and consequently regulating doors are fixed in the air-passages to prevent the great rush of air going in that direction ; a portion of it only is allowed to pass that way ; the remainder is sent round the longest routes, which would otherwise be left without air. The doors are fixed in the openings *between* the in-take and return air-passages, at or near the letters S S. (See *Plan*.)

*Son* : I shall be glad to know, at a future day, why air rushes round the nearest working places, and those workings at a great distance are left destitute of air. But how, father, are regulating doors fixed in mines ?—*Father* : They are fixed in those air-passages through which the air rushes with great velocity, in order to take off such quantities of air as are required for other working parts of the mine, and they are so fixed as not to fill the whole space of the air-passage, but open spaces are left to allow some of the air to pass ; thus dividing the air, but not into separate, distinct currents.

*Son* : I see now ; but what other ways of ventilation are adopted ?—*Father* : Another is that of conducting the air into the workings similar to the plan of ventilation adopted by the late John Buddle, Esq., viewer in the north of England.

*Son* : Was Mr. Buddle's plan considered a safe way of venti-

lation?—*Father* : I believe it was much thought of in his day ; yet it is not a safe mode of ventilation.

*Son* : What way did he adopt?—*Father* : It was one similar to several I have seen used in mines at this day, which many managers call dividing the air ; yet it is not what may be called splitting it into distinct currents. This mode is to divide the air into separate parts for separate groups of miners ; after which all those separate parts of air return into the same current again from which they separated. Then, again, this one current of a mixture of winds is divided the second time for more groups of miners ; after this all the separate winds form one again, and this one mixture of wind passes on farther into the extremity of the mine, until the said one current requires dividing for other workings of the mine, and so the same is allowed to divide or separate into as many parts as there are workings, returning and forming one current again after being divided. This mode cannot be properly called splitting the air, because it is allowed to return again into the current from which it separated itself, and no working part has a wind separate and distinct from the others, as each division is a mixture of winds from the others, with the gases collected from the same in each wind. Therefore, as the air is allowed to spread in and through the workings, every part would be affected by an explosion, because the gases collected from all parts are mixed in the said wind in which the explosion might occur. This being the case, the flame of the ignited gas would fly and spread in and through the workings of each part like the electric fluid, carrying death and destruction in its passage. By this it will be seen that this plan of ventilation does not divide or diminish the explosive power (gas), as the explosive gas would be like a combustible train, and if ignited in any part,

---

would fly through and around all the parts wherein it circulated. Plan No. 3 is, I believe, a representation of Mr. Buddle's mode of ventilation: by an inspection of it, you will see that the air separates ten times in its passage through and around the workings, and the current of air which ventilates the whole mine is formed into one wind as often as it is divided, by which all the gas discharged through the whole mine is collected into one vast quantity. As to the number of times the air is separated in its passage through from the down-cast to the up-cast, see Plan at Nos. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, and 10. This mode, if called splitting the air, is not a separate, distinct dividing of the gas.

*Son*: Was this the mode of ventilation you alluded to in your reply to a person in the *Miner's Advocate*, who requested you to inform him of the meaning of split winds in mines?—*Father*: This plan does not show the mode of splitting air, yet it is the one I alluded to in my letter.

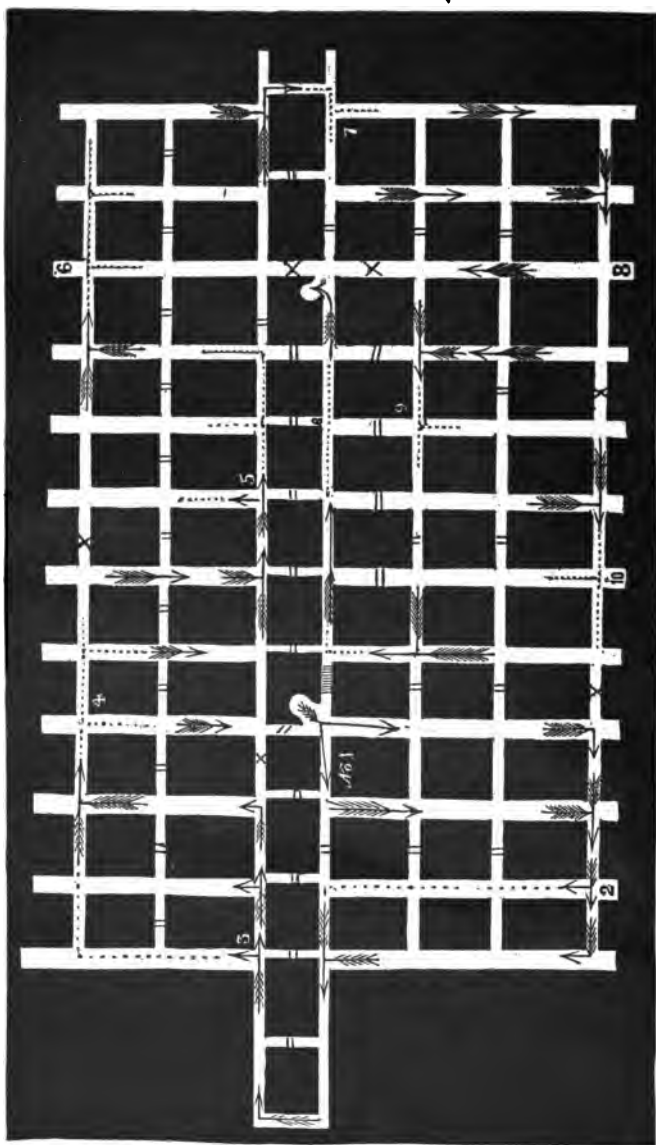
*Son*: Let me see the letter.—*Father*: Here is the substance of it; it will give you a knowledge between this mode and that of ventilating by separate, distinct currents.

#### THE LETTER.

"SIR,—In your 'Notices to Correspondents' of last week's impression (January 2), I am requested to inform a 'Constant Reader' the meaning of 'splitting' the air.

"My object through life has always been (and I hope will, until my work on earth is finished) to try to better, if possible, the miner. When I speak of mine ventilation, it is from a practical knowledge of seeing and doing the work, and not from a knowledge only of theory, reading and hearing. When I speak of air splitting, I mean separate, distinct currents, and not that kind of splitting which is similar to that which

PLAN No. 3.



takes place when the wind blows on the surface against a building, the wind being separated by it, and afterwards mixed again; and so the wind is divided and mixed in passing and repassing every building. The above is similar, I say, to the splitting adopted by some managers. They allow the whole of the air to pass in one large current until one portion of the air is caused by the friction to pass around one part of the mine and another portion around another part; and so the same air is allowed to split or divide as it rushes through the mine into as many parts as are working, returning and forming one wind after it has been divided; therefore, it is not a separate, distinct current or wind, but a mixture of winds, with gases collected in them from all parts. This mode, as before stated, divides neither air nor gas properly, as gases from all parts are mixed in the one current; therefore an explosion in one part would affect all. But I am asked, 'What is meant by splitting the air?' I would also ask, 'What amount of air can be produced for the whole workings of a mine? Can 20,000 feet, 40,000 feet, 60,000 feet, 80,000 feet, or 100,000 feet be produced per minute?' Be that amount less or more, do not propel, in one current, the whole of it around the workings of a mine. Divide, split, or separate the whole into 'distinct currents,' or parts, of, say from 5000 to 7000 feet of air for each current, after which, if five, ten, fifteen, or twenty miners are getting coal in one district of the mine, supply the said number of miners with one current, say 6000 feet, of pure air direct from the down-cast; after which conduct this current direct from the said miners to the up-cast, and not ventilate other workings with it afterwards. Supply another current, say 6000 feet, of pure air to miners working in another part of the mine, conducting this current as before direct from the down-cast to the working parts, and therefrom to the up-cast, and so on in a similar manner supply each party of miners with distinct currents.

"If the discharge of explosive gas be too great in the workings for, say 6000 cubic feet of air, to dilute and render it harmless reduce the number of workings for the amount of air, or make two divisions of the number of works, so that the gas may be divided and rendered harmless by each separate current or division of air,—that is, regulate or reduce

the number of works to be ventilated in proportion to the quantity of gas discharged in such works. But it may be asked, 'How or by what way is 5000 or 7000 feet of air to be sent or propelled into the workings in separate quantities, as the distances for the air to travel are not equal in length, the distance being much greater around one number of miners than around another; and such being the case, more than 6000 feet of air may pass into and around one working part, and much less than this amount around another part; by this, one part will have a superabundance and another a deficiency of air?' In reply to the above, 'Such, doubtless, will be the case if the air-gates be large enough to allow a larger portion of the air to pass into one part than into another.' All that is needful in this case is simply to enter the return air-gates of those parts from which a little air is required to be taken, and by fixing a regulator therein, each division of air may be so regulated as to allow only a sufficient quantity for each working part. Again, the impure air, in its return, may come in contact with the in-take pure air of another division; if so, an overthrow similar to a bridge over a canal will be required at such place, the overthrow so constructed as not to allow a mixture of the two currents. Ventilate the workings of a mine as above stated, and you will have separate or split winds therein, and no explosions like Risca, Lund-hill, and many more such like.

"Yours faithfully,

"ST. HELENS, January 11."

"WM. HOPTON.

Plan No. 4 is a representation of this mode of splitting the air into separate, distinct currents, and on some of the other plans which I give you this way of ventilation is shown.

*Son*: Then an explosion, as shown in Buddle's plan of ventilation, and also that of Lund-hill, would cause great loss of life, because all the gases accumulated in the air pass from one working place to another in one large quantity?—*Father*: Such is certainly the case. The object of ventilation—namely, the preservation of life and property—is altogether lost sight of. The

PLAN No. 4.



method has always been to send around the workings a large current of air to take a large quantity of gas away; but the object should be to divide this large quantity of gas by ventilating separately for each group of miners the workings where it is discharged. Divide the power (gas), and the effect produced by an explosion would be very little. If you had to work in a room where a ton or barrel of gunpowder was exposed to a great number of people, and at any moment an explosion might take place, you would say, remove that large quantity of gunpowder or divide it into pounds, so that the whole of it may not be exploded if one part of it should become ignited.

*Son* : I see the reason, now, why people often say, after an explosion of fire-damp, that such and such a mine, where great loss of life has been caused, was well ventilated; it is because there was a large current of impure air.—*Father* : No mine ventilated with impure air can be called a well-ventilated one, if the air passing through be ever so great. I do not doubt for a moment that, where great loss of life and property was caused, they have had much air, but it was impure. No one will doubt that, because the explosion which caused the loss of life is a witness, as an explosion cannot take place in air where gas is rendered harmless.

#### **How the Power of an Explosion may be diminished.**

*Son* : The best mode of ventilating mines, then, for the safety of miners, is to split the air into parts, by which each group of miners are supplied separately with their own pure air direct from the down-cast?—*Father* : Yes, pure air is split to allow each working part its own proportionate quantity in proportion to the accumulation of gas discharged in each part.

*Son* : I see, father, on Plan No. 4, several letters, R and H : what am I to understand by them?—*Father* : An overthrow is fixed in those places where you see an H, and a regulator at R. An overthrow is fixed so as to prevent a mixture of pure and impure air, and is so constructed that one current can cross over the other. Regulators are also fixed to supply each separate working place with its own quantity of air, in proportion to the accumulation of gas ; if no regulators were fixed, one part would receive (in proportion to the distance) more air than another.

*Son* : Then explosive gas by this mode is prevented from accumulating in large quantities?—*Father* : Just so ; that is the object of splitting the air. If one wind pass around, say four working parts, explosive gas will accumulate in the air from all the four parts, so that four times as much gas will be in the current as there would be if only one-fourth of the air ventilated one place only. In proportion to the quantity of gas ignited, so is the power of an explosion.

*Son* : Then what you wish me and others to understand is this : if one hundred feet of gas per minute accumulated in each working part or group of miners, you would not ventilate four parts with one great current of air, as by so doing you would have four hundred feet of gas in it ; but you would ventilate each group of miners separately, because then you have only one hundred feet of gas to explode, and not four hundred feet ; and by reducing the gas to one-fourth, the explosive power is reduced fourfold.—*Father* : Such is certainly the case. If loss of life and property is to be prevented, splitting the air for the ventilation of mines must be adopted, because great loss of life is caused by igniting too large a quantity of gas. Split the air for the workings into parts, and you divide the great explosive

---

power (gas) with the air. Take the gas away, and you take that power away which causes such loss of life.

*Son* : Then if the workings of four groups of miners are ventilated separately, and gas ignites in one, you prevent the explosion spreading to the gas in the other three groups, and therefore prevent loss of life ; and you also reduce the explosive power in that part where gas explodes by three-fourths.—*Father* : By splitting the air, several objects are accomplished by which loss of life and property is prevented. 1. The explosive power is reduced to one-fourth of what it would be if one large current of air ventilated all the four parts ; and by the power being so reduced, the men may escape even from the exploded part without loss of life. 2. As the explosion is confined to the one particular part where the gas ignites, you prevent loss of life in all the other three parts, because no explosion takes place in them, as in no part of the route of the explosive power can it communicate with the other three. 3. The quantity of choke-damp produced by an explosion is reduced by this mode of ventilation to one-fourth. You know in proportion to the quantity of explosive gas ignited, so is the quantity of choke-damp after an explosion ; therefore, when the quantity of choke-damp (which destroys the life of the miner) is diminished, the loss of life is diminished accordingly. 4. The danger to a person's life is reduced fourfold, because the lives of those employed in other parts are not jeopardized by working in the air which has passed around other places. 5. This mode prevents doors being blown away, because few are required, and the power which blows them away is reduced ; therefore the danger of loss of life in consequence is reduced. 6. This mode supplies every working part direct from the down-cast with pure air ; therefore, when an

explosion takes place, the fresh air enters the exploded part shortly after, and thus loss of life is often prevented. But such is not the case by the other mode of ventilation; for lives are lost for the want of fresh air after an explosion.

*Son* : Is there anything said against splitting the air?—

*Father* : Yes, much is said against it, and that, too, by men professing to have an extensive knowledge of mining.

*Son* : What is said?—*Father* : They say if one wind does not ventilate all the four working parts, you diminish the quantity of air in all the parts by ventilating each separately, and, by so doing, you may not have a sufficiency of air for each part.

*Son* : Well, but they should remember also that if the three divisions of air do not pass around the fourth working place, the gases discharged in the three divisions do not pass into it, and therefore if you take air from this part, you also prevent gas from going to it. And there is more danger in not having a sufficiency of air to take a large quantity of gas from a number of works, than not having a sufficiency of air for a less quantity of gas. There was sent through the workings at Lund-hill a large current of air to take a great quantity of gas from many parts, but the large current was not sufficient for the quantity of gas, and awful was the result. At Burradon, Risca, Cymmer, the Oaks Collieries, etc., a large current was also sent through the mine to take a large quantity of gas from many parts; but the current of air was not sufficient, and the result was accordingly. If gases discharged in the workings of one group of miners cannot be rendered harmless by a certain quantity of air, gases discharged in the workings of four groups of miners will not be rendered harmless by four times that amount of air. Therefore, as no one can show great loss of

life by splitting, it is better to adopt that mode for the safety of miners.—*Father* : I think you will be able to show the public shortly the best mode of ventilation. Yet some men recommend for the safety of miners, stoppings, doors, and overthrows to be strong enough to withstand the shock or power of an explosion, because stoppings several feet thick are blown away by the power.

*Son* : I think it is very strange, father, for those professing to have much knowledge of mining to talk in such a way. Divide, reduce, or diminish that power which blows the stoppings away, and you prevent miners' heads from being blown away. It is of little use making stoppings, etc., to withstand a greater shock, if a miner's body is not able to withstand it. If such people were in a mine when an explosion takes place (if spared to get out), they would say, "Unless this power is reduced, I will not go down here again." But, father, how is this mode of splitting the air and gas accomplished, by which every working part of a mine may be supplied direct from the down-cast with pure air?

—*Father* : By fixing regulators and overthrows in a mine. Overthrows are similar to a bridge over a canal, which passengers go over and vessels pass under. As the air passes pure from the down-cast into the workings of one division of miners, it may come in contact with the return impure air of another division ; and, as the impure air is required to cross or go over the pure, an overthrow is required at such a place to cause one division of air to cross over the other. Such crossings are so constructed as to prevent a mixture of the two currents. Regulators are also fixed in the nearest return air-gates to the up-cast shaft, to regulate the proper quantity of pure air in proportion to the gases discharged in each part, and thus one group of

miners, with a deficiency of air, will be supplied with a sufficient quantity, or a little will be taken from those parts which have a superabundance.

*Son* : You say the mode of ventilating mines by splitting the air into separate, distinct currents is much better both for the safety of miners and economy of employers. I shall be glad to know, father, why it is not adopted. Is it because people think mines will give off more gas by this mode of ventilation?—

*Father* : No; a change in the mode of ventilation will not cause an extra quantity of gas to be discharged in mines, as the discharge is the same for one mode as for another.

*Son* : Yet people who have not a proper knowledge of mine ventilation may think there is less room in the air-passages, by the mode of splitting into separate, distinct currents, than there would be if all the divisions of wind formed one, and passed in one current the whole quantity of air through one air-gate, and this may be their objection.—*Father* : If many divisions of air form one large current, and pass in one continuous route through one air-gate, room will be required in the passages accordingly, or the same quantity of air cannot be produced by one mode of ventilation as by the other; therefore, as there is more room for the air (in the passage) for separate divisions than for one large current, it cannot be the cause why such is not adopted.

*Son* : Is the quantity of pure air for the workings much less by this mode of ventilation, and is that the cause why it is not adopted?—*Father* : No, because by this mode you produce a much *larger* quantity of air; yet all the air will not be sent through the workings in one large current, but will be distributed in quantities in proportion to the discharge of gas in each working part, and there will not be, as I have shown, a large

mixture of impure air. This extra quantity of pure air is obtained by diminishing the friction and by allowing more space in the air-passages.

*Son* : Some may have a notion, father, that if one large current of air ventilates, say six divisions of miners, one-sixth part of that current cannot ventilate or do one-sixth part of the work as well as all the air does all the work.—*Father* : That cannot be the objection, because one-sixth part of the air will do one-sixth part of the work much better ; for the impure air by this mode is conducted away to the up-cast, and not mixed with the pure air to occupy its room in the air-passage and impede its progress through the workings by taking up the space it ought to have.

*Son* : If one large current of air ventilates, say six divisions of miners, and is, after ventilating the workings, very impure with gases, do you think that is the cause why splitting of air is not adopted?—*Father* : No, that cannot be the cause, as the quantity of gases conducted in and around the workings is much less by this mode of splitting than by others. Nearly one-half of the gas discharged in the mine does not enter the workings, but is conducted away to the up-cast. By the old mode of ventilation, the gases discharged in the return air-passages of one part pass into the workings of another part, but not so by the new mode. If a mine cannot be worked with safety by the mode of splitting, it cannot be worked with safety by ventilating many divisions of miners by one large current ; because if there is only one-sixth part of the air in a division, you have only one-sixth part of the workings to ventilate with that air, and the gas discharged in the return air-passages, as before stated, is conducted away from, and not into, the workings.

*Son* : Is this mode not adopted because the distance is not the same for air to travel as in the other?—*Father* : No, that cannot be the cause, as air will travel a short distance much better than a long one. To split the air into parts and ventilate each working part separately, one division of air will only have to travel around one part, and not around six; and air will travel around one much better than around six, as a person will travel one mile with a load much better than six.

*Son* : Is it not adopted because there is not the same work for the furnace to produce ventilation by it as by the other?—

*Father* : I cannot see that the work of the furnace will be any inducement for not adopting the mode, but a very strong one why it should be adopted; because if air only travels around one part instead of six, and also one division of air occupies the same space in the air-passage as six would, the friction of that air will be very much diminished; and if the friction is much diminished, the furnace will produce for the workings a larger quantity of air, because the quantity of air produced by a furnace is always in proportion to the friction required to be overcome by it. Diminish the friction, and the furnace will produce a larger quantity of air in proportion.

*Son* : Is this mode not adopted because falls of the roof may affect the air-passage, and not so by the other mode?—*Father* : There is more danger of falls affecting the air-passages by ventilating many workings with one large current through one air-passage than by ventilating each separately; because if there is not room for one division to pass because of a fall of roof, there cannot be room for six; and if not room for one division, what would become of the men if all the six divisions of air, forming one wind, had to pass through the obstructed part?

*Son* : Is it because this mode of ventilating mines cannot be adopted where all ways of working out coal are used?—*Father* : No, that cannot be the objection, because in the working of mines there are always two or more gate-ways for every group of miners, as they cannot pass air both in and out with one gate-way. One gate-way is for air to enter and the other for it to return. In its return, you conduct the air direct to the up-cast, and not pass it around other workings. Ventilate all other parts separately in the same way.

*Son* : Do you think this mode is not adopted because the number of workings are too many for the air to ventilate if split into parts?—*Father* : If one wind in one continued route will ventilate any number of works, the same wind will ventilate them if split into divisions, because nearly one-half of the gas is conducted from, and not into, the workings. By it the explosive power (gas) is reduced, the extent to which the explosion will spread is reduced, and the quantity of choke-damp is also reduced.

*Son* : Do you think they object to splitting the air because it is too expensive?—*Father* : It is not so expensive as the other modes, because there are fewer doors to make, to fix, to open and close when fixed ; there is less expense in trappers (door boys), less expense to make an air-gate for one division than for six, and less expense in coal for the furnace, as the friction of the air is reduced.

*Son* : Well, father, I am not able to ask any more questions why the mode of ventilating mines by separate, distinct currents of air is not adopted. You clearly show there is no cause for such great loss of life to take place in mines, as the mode is better both for the safety of the miner and for the economy of

the employer. Where many workings discharge a large quantity of gas, and are ventilated with a large quantity of air, I cannot see how a great loss of life can be called accidental, when it is well known that such will be the case if there is an explosion. They know if the mode is adopted it will cause great loss of life. —*Father* : There is no reason for great loss of life, and I fear no contradiction in so stating ; it is time to stop all such life-destroying modes. We have too many of those so-called well-ventilated mines exploding.

*Son* : I presume, father, if an explosion took place, you would not spend two or three days inquiring at what part of the mine the gas ignited, the extent to which the explosion had spread, the powerful effect produced by it ; whether it was ignited by a candle-blaze, a safety-lamp, a match, a tobacco-pipe, or a spark from a flint stone ; who ignited it, or by what means it became ignited ; but you would ask why was such a quantity of gas allowed to accumulate, and what means of ventilation had been adopted to prevent its accumulation ?—*Father* : I think it would be much better to inquire how it was that such a quantity of gas was there, for had it not been there, no one could have ignited it, even with a candle-blaze. Remove the cause and the effect will cease.

*Son* : You say, father, the mode of ventilating by separate, distinct currents may be adopted where *any* plan of working out coal is used. As you have been a manager of mines for some forty years, I wish to know if, in those mines under your charge, you have always adopted the mode of separate, distinct currents of air,—that is, changed from the old to the new mode of ventilation ?—*Father* : I have had charge of several mines in Yorkshire and Lancashire, and in those mines which gave off much explo-

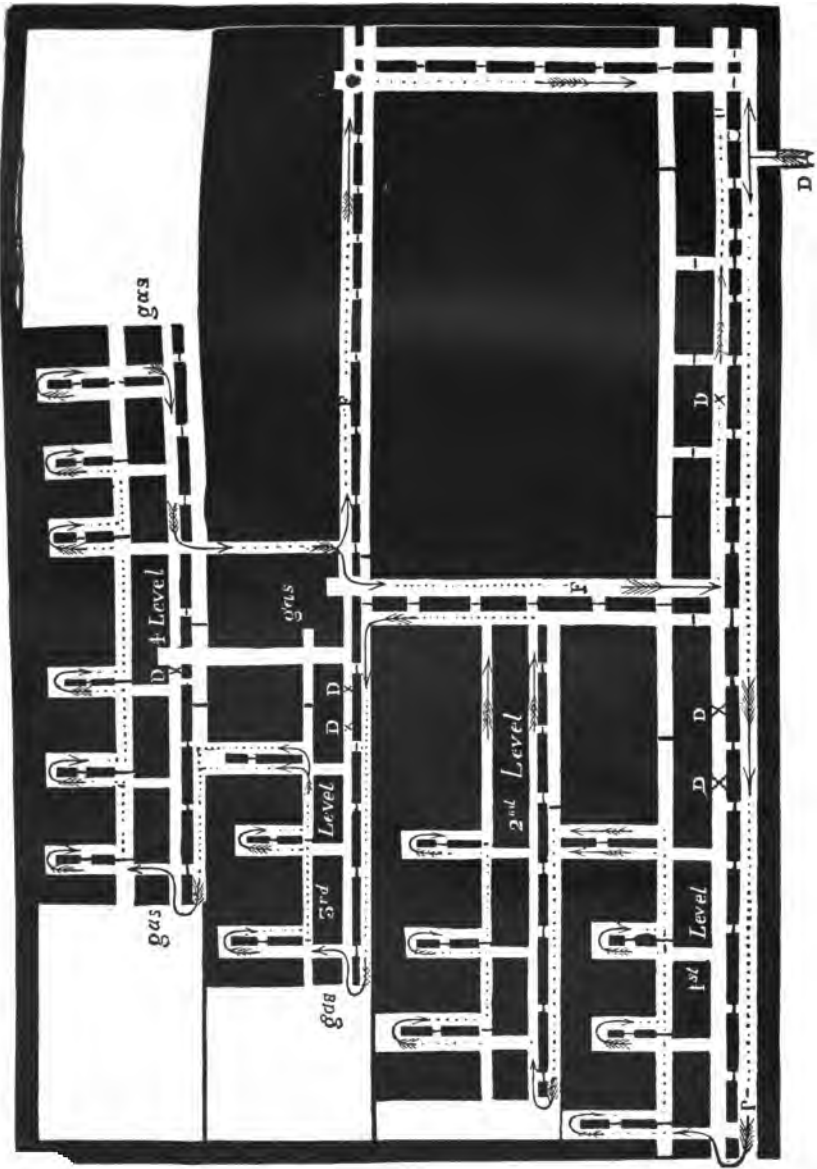
sive gas I always changed from the old mode to that of separate, distinct currents, and by so doing prevented, I believe, much loss of life and property.

*Son* : You have had no great loss of life by explosions, you say, in mines under your charge ; but you may have had little or no explosive gas in such mines, and that may be the reason you have had little loss of life.—*Father* : Like others, I have had mines varying in the quantity and quality of the gases discharged, yet few have had, I think, more explosive gas to contend with. I have seen men affected and struck down by it in a moment's time, and have seen it ignite and explode in the safety-lamp. But my method of ventilation to prevent loss of life and property has always been : 1. To obtain all the air possible for the workings. 2. Not to have more works to ventilate than pure air can reach. 3. To ventilate those workings which discharge much explosive gas separately. 4. To conduct explosive gas away from the miner, and not to him, for there is a right and a wrong way of conducting air and gases from the workings of a mine. To illustrate my meaning, suppose a number of chemical works are near a large population, who are affected by breathing impure air when the wind blows from the works towards them. But in case a change in the wind takes place, by which the noxious gases are blown in an opposite direction, they would breathe a purer atmosphere even if the force of the wind be not one-twelfth of that which blew the gases to them, as no gas can come against the wind, be its velocity ever so small. And so in like manner is the ventilating of mines, if air be properly conducted around them. Miners' lives are often jeopardized by managers conducting the whole of the gases into and upon the tram-roads and wagoners.

*Son* : When you were first engaged at a colliery in St. Hérens, you adopted, did you not, separate, distinct currents of air? *Father* : Yes, I did, because I found in one mine much explosive gas discharged. The men had to work with red-hot safety-lamps. The discharge of gas was so great that coals were lost, as a safety-lamp could not burn, nor the place be approached with one; and in the wagon roads gas often ignited in the safety-lamps hundreds of yards from the working faces. As this state of things was so bad, I drew a plan to show my employer it was possible to make a change in the mode of ventilation, and adopt separate, distinct currents of air for the workings, and he, having a good knowledge of mines and mining, was at once convinced it would be much better for the safety of the men. He ordered its adoption, fearless of expense, but I assured him it would not cost three pounds.

*Son* : I shall be glad, father, to see the way by which coal was worked out, and how the mine was ventilated, and also the improved mode you adopted.—*Father* : If you change the mode of ventilation, it will not do at all times to change the mode of working out coal, because another mode of working may not answer well for the seam of coal; therefore, in making a change in ventilation, you have often to contend with difficulties, because you cannot make air-gates in places you wish. I may also add, if a person has not got the ability to make a change in the mode of ventilation without changing the mode of working out coal, he is not a proper person to take charge of the underground workings of a mine. In the mine in question I had to make a change in the mode of ventilation, and not in the way of working out the coal, which may be seen in the two plans, Nos. 5 and 6, before you. Plan No. 5 is a representation of how the

PLAN No. 5.



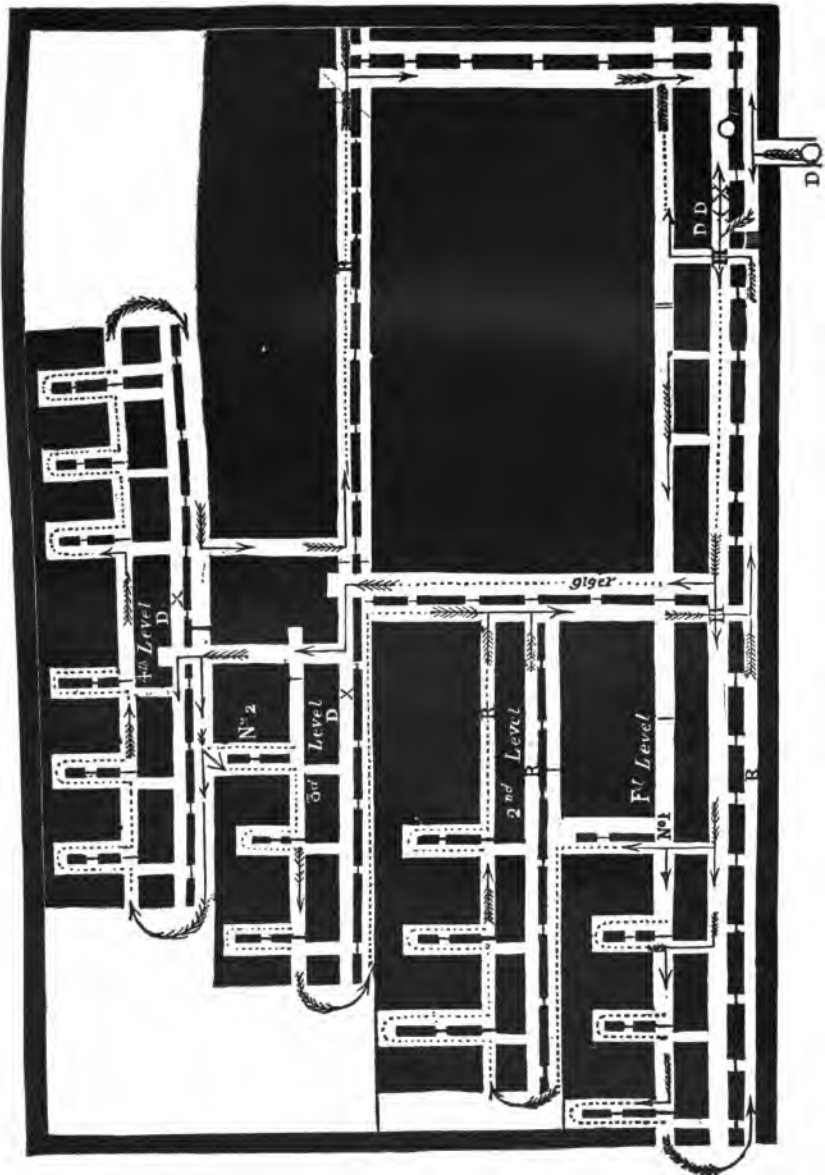
mine was worked and ventilated when I first took charge. Plan No. 6 shows the same mode of working the coal and the change I adopted in the mode of ventilation. You will see in Plan No. 5 that the air enters the down-cast, and onward it goes in the lower level to the letter P, a distance of nearly eight hundred yards, after which the air passes forward through and around all the workings in one continued route, in one current.

*Son* : Very good. But what am I to understand, father, by the other letters on the plan?—*Father* : The letters D D are for doors. F F show where gas often exploded in the safety-lamp. You see the third and fourth levels. Well, in those levels the discharge of gas was so great that safety-lamps could not burn, or be used, and the coal had to be left until the change in the mode of ventilation was adopted.

*Son* : In looking over Plan No. 6, I see that the pure air passes out of the lower level into the wagon road, and onward to the jig brow, where the air divides itself to pass to the third and fourth levels. One division takes place at No. 1, and at No. 2 another division of the air takes place, so that each level, I see, is ventilated separately, as fresh air enters from the down-cast for each level. Therefore, each level will only have its own gas, and not gas conducted from the first, second, and third levels to the fourth.—*Father* : Such is the case. By this mode of ventilation the gases discharged in one working place do not pass into the workings of another level; you send pure air into the workings on the wagon-roads, and not, as before, impure air; the impure air is conducted from the workings on roads not in use for wagoners.

*Son* : I presume, father, an air-crossing is fixed at the letter H, and also a regulator at the letter R, and doors at the letters

PLAN No. 6.



D D?—*Father* : You are right, my lad ; such is the case. I only show these plans to give you a knowledge of the two ways of ventilation, and also which is the best. By one way coal was left, but not so by the other.

*Son* : Did you clear the gases away after your plan was adopted?—*Father* : Yes, the men were able to work with naked lights after, in nearly all the places ; and we also got out the coal which had been left where a lamp could not burn, or be used, before the change.

*Son* : No doubt the men were very glad when the change took place.—*Father* : It may be well to relate what took place at the time. You know that miners have a notion that employers seldom change their managers for the better. I was one of those who they thought made things no better ; so when the change took place, up came the men out of the pit, and stated to the master that fire (explosive gas) was in their places. The fireman being there at the time, and hearing what they had got to say, and having himself just come up out of the pit from the workings, he said to one, " Well, Jack, what's thou come up for?" Jack : " I reckon we've come up for fire." Fireman : " Is there any fire in thy place?" Jack : " No, but there is in others, I suppose." So he (the fireman) said to another, " Well, Bill, what's thou come up for?" Bill : " I have come up for fire, like others." Fireman : " Is there any fire in thy place?" Bill : " No, there is no fire in my place, but there is in others, I suppose." So the fireman questioned Ned, Tom, Bob, Sam, and Charley, all in a similar manner, and each was able to work in his own place with safety, but had come up because " others could not work for fire."

*Son* : Did you say anything to them, father, all the time?—

*Father* : I allowed them to say all they had to say, as I knew that the truth will always come out and make its way. Their object having been seen by the master and by every person there, I said, "You know, men, before the change took place, you had to work with red-hot safety-lamps, and some of you had to give up working coal in your places, because the discharge of gas was so great that a safety-lamp could not burn, and coal was lost in consequence, and gas often exploded in the safety-lamps hundreds of yards from the working places along the wagon roads. Therefore, I wish to prevent loss of life, because I also may be lost if you are." If an explosion had taken place, a great number would have been lost.

*Son* : Did you say anything more ?—*Father* : The master said many heads had many minds ; therefore it would be well for them to find a better mode of ventilation, and he said no doubt I would be glad to adopt it. I assured them I would adopt it with great pleasure.

*Son* : Did they find, then, a better mode of ventilation ?—

*Father* : No. I offered to give two pounds to them or any person who would draw me a plan of ventilation as good for their safety and mine ; but home they went, and I cannot say whether or not a fight took place on the road, as one said, "I should not have come up had it not been for thee ;" and another, "I should have been working had it not been for thee ;" "I had no cause to come up," said another ; so they charged each other for not being at work.

*Son* : Did they try to show any more faults in your mode of ventilation ?—*Father* : Yes ; they said I caused the roof to fall in the tram-roads by changing the mode, and the wagoners said I had made the roads too cold, and they would be "starven" (starved).

*Son* : How was it, father, that they would be "starven," as they called it?—*Father* : Because before the change they had to work in warm, impure air, but afterwards in cold, pure air. Yet those miners were good workmen. They were under my charge a long time, and, I believe, sorry afterwards for the opposition they had given, as they knew it was much better for their safety. Many left when the pit was finished and engaged at a new colliery in the neighborhood, where much explosive gas was discharged; and as they had seen the great change for the better in the mode of ventilation I adopted, I was requested by them to engage with their new master, because they had great fears of an explosion, which they said would cause great loss of life if it took place, but would be prevented by adopting the improved mode of separate, distinct currents of air.

*Son* : You did not engage, did you, with their master?—

*Father* : No. I had a note from him, with a request to see him, and he assured me if I wanted a situation he would engage me; but as I had one, and had no wish to change, and as my employer was in the same mind, I remained where I was for six years longer. I afterwards engaged at the said new colliery.

*Son* : Then you did engage after a few years?—*Father* : Yes.

*Son* : Was the colliery extensive, and one that discharged much explosive gas?—*Father* : You may judge how great was the quantity of gas discharged when I inform you of the extent of the workings; also, there is a letter which appeared in the *Mining Journal*, April 15, 1870. Here it is:

"AN IMPROVEMENT IN COLLIERY VENTILATION.

"Give honor where honor is due.

"SIR,—As the subject of colliery ventilation is one of vast importance, the management of our mines ought to be in the hands of sober,

careful, and intelligent men. It is some time since the inspector of this district found it necessary to stop one part of a large mine, on account of it giving off a large quantity of explosive gas, and the workmen's lamps were, therefore, unsafe to work with. The ventilation was miserable in the extreme, as it was conducted on a wrong principle,—throwing the body of gas on to the men instead of taking it from them. This, then, was the real danger. Some few months ago, Mr. William Hopton, who wrote the 'Conversation on Mines between a Father and Son,' was engaged to conduct the underground workings. Mr. Hopton very soon gave instructions for some alteration in the ventilation. Having improved the main return air-way, he next proceeded to divide the current into so many separate divisions, thus giving each level or brow a current of pure air to itself, which had the natural effect of clearing the places of gas and keeping it from the men; and instead of the lamps being in danger, the men can now with perfect safety work with naked lights.\*

"Mr. Hopton, after years of anxious exertion, has won for himself in this district a name of honor, trust, and deep respect from all classes of society, by making the mines safe where our miners have to earn their bread. Now, sir, if the government should call for inspectors, I think Mr. William Hopton ought to be nominated for this district, believing in such a position he would not fail to take his place among the intelligent and honorable practical mining engineers of this country. His manly and careful exertions in making peace and creating good feeling between masters and men also give him a place among the nobles of our land; and the wonderful change for the better he has made will, perhaps, save thousands of pounds and many a poor miner's life.

"EDWARD A. RYMER,

"*Miners' Agent.*

"ST. HELENS, LANCASHIRE, April 15."

*Son*: According to this a large quantity of gas was discharged; but how extensive was the colliery?—*Father*: Well, the length of levels direct from the pit shafts was 2700 yards, and in breadth

---

\* In a mine so extensive and discharging such large quantities of gas, Mr. Hopton would not allow naked lights to be used, for miners often run with lights where they should not.

there were 11 levels, 60 yards apart. Depth of shafts, 440 yards. The winding engine was 300 horse-power, and it wound up six large boxes at once, which, with the cage, make a weight of six tons, and twenty persons were wound up and let down by the engine at once.

*Son* : You must have had a large quantity of gas in a mine so extensive?—*Father* : Yes, we had.

*Son* : I am very glad, father, you had no loss of life there, and that the men at the old colliery knew that your mode was the best for the preservation of their lives.

“ PRESENTATION TO MR. HOPTON.

“ On Saturday, October 29, 1870, a lecture was given in the Town Hall, St. Helens, by Mr. William Hopton, colliery manager, author of the ‘Conversation on Mines between a Father and Son.’ Edward Johnson, Esq., colliery proprietor, presided.

“ The lecturer spoke on the useful properties of the atmospheric air, its composition, and how mines are affected by its variations in weight ; the composition of explosive gas and after-damp, and when mines are in the greatest danger, etc. The lecturer showed gas in the safety-lamp as seen in a mine when it explodes, and also exploded a miniature mine. He gave experiments on oxygen, hydrogen, nitrogen, and carbonic acid gases. He remarked that there always had been, and he feared always would be, explosions under the best managers ; yet he believed that if a proper system of ventilation were adopted, and firemen and deputies understood better the laws of nature, the loss of life would not be so often or so great when it did take place. Many lives had been lost, he believed, and men often worked in jeopardy in explosive gas, when the danger might at once be removed if they only knew nature’s laws better. The lecturer was well received, and the chairman, in his closing remarks, said that all must have been highly gratified. He believed such persons as Mr. Hopton were much needed, and hoped it would not be the last lecture he would give them. At

the close of the lecture Mr. Hopton was presented with a gold watch, Albert chain, and pocket compass, and on the watch was engraved the following inscription :

*“ Presented by the miners of the St. Helens Colliery to Mr. Hopton, manager, as a mark of their esteem and appreciation of his services. October 29, 1870.”*

“ The watch was a gold centre-seconds lever, by Mr. James F. Hilton, St. Helens, jewelled in ten holes, with compensating balance.

“ Mr. Leivesley, a fireman of the firm, and one on the committee of seventeen persons chosen by the members of the St. Helens Collieries, numbering over five hundred hands, and in the employ of Pilkington Brothers, in presenting the testimonial, said, ‘ I rise with feelings of pleasure to present this gold watch and Albert, willingly subscribed by them as a mark of respect and the high esteem you are held in by them for the valuable services executed by you for their safety. Wishing prosperity may always attend and crown your labors in the management of other collieries, as it has in that of the St. Helens Collieries, the men believe that honor ought to be given where honor is due. They remember the great danger they had in working very much in explosive gas when first you took charge, and the great change for the better effected by your arduous study and labor for the safety of life and property, and for which this gold watch is presented as a mark of the esteem and approval of your services.’

“ Mr. Hopton said, ‘ Mr. Chairman and friends,—This useful and splendid gift is an honor I never expected,—the gratitude for which is too great for my tongue to express the emotions of my heart. This splendid gift will be valued by me as long as memory holds its seat, and by my children’s children when my bones are mouldering in the grave. I have not done more than my duty, and what every person should in similar situations,—endeavor always to protect life and property. I have now left the collieries, having given a proper written notice to William Pilkington, Esq., who engaged me, for reasons best known to myself. I have left on friendly terms, as you may tell,

having continued on their account one fortnight after the expiration of my notice. The St. Helens Collieries are very extensive, discharging much explosive gas, the workings of which were not, you know, very healthy when I came to them ; but in June, 1869, a great change in the ventilation of the mine took place. Twenty-two persons it required, separated in the workings one and a half miles from each other, every one having his duty to do in the same second of time ; and, after timing all the watches, I said, "Go, men, to your stations ; keep awake ; let each one do his duty, not before or after, but at the same second of time ; and, if so, be assured success will crown our labors." I know many prophesied that in its accomplishment we should all be blown to pieces ; but having studied well my plans, I knew that success depended only on every person doing his duty at the proper moment, and when it arrived no tongue can express the anguish of my heart when, opening a door, with my watch in hand, I exclaimed to myself, "Are all at their posts doing their duty ?" And when only half opened I felt the reversion of the current, and with that reversion a tremendous wind which blew my light out and the cap off my head, and I again shouted at the top of my voice, and my heart went also with it, "Yes, yes, every one has been in his place and doing his duty." Yet I must tell you the dangers are not all past ; now and again sudden outlets of gas take place which will require great caution and care ; but be assured nothing on the part of the employers will be wanting that they can do, if they know, for your safety. I advise you to work honestly ; do labor equivalent for your wages ; for the success of your employers is closely connected with your prosperity. I thank you again and again for this splendid gift.'

"A vote of thanks was passed to the chairman and lecturer, when the meeting terminated.

"Mr. Hopton was four years at the St. Helens Collieries ; after which he 're-engaged' as manager at the Sutton Heath Collieries, for James Radley, Esq., with whom he had served twelve years previously, and he continued after the death of Mr. Radley until January, 1886, Mr. Hopton having spent fifty-five years in mines and forty years as manager."

*Son* : Have you any more plans on ventilation?—*Father* : Yes. I will show you another, and then I have done. It is one on separate currents of air for the workings. (See Plan No. 6a.) This plan is very good. The up-cast, No. 2, is much larger than No. 1, the down-cast.

*Son* : Is the shaft larger because the air expands when made hot, and by the up-cast being much larger there is room for the expansion of the hot air?—*Father* : Yes. There are also four separate divisions of air direct from the down-cast shaft. Those four divisions all come into the up-cast by four separate ways.

*Son* : By what you have said you strongly recommend that mode of ventilation, and the up-cast being larger than the down-cast. But what am I to understand, father, by the letters H, X, and R, on plan?—*Father* : The letter H shows where the impure air from the workings crosses the pure air. The letter R shows where the air should be regulating. The letter X shows where doors are fixed to allow the tram-boy to pass in and return from the workings.

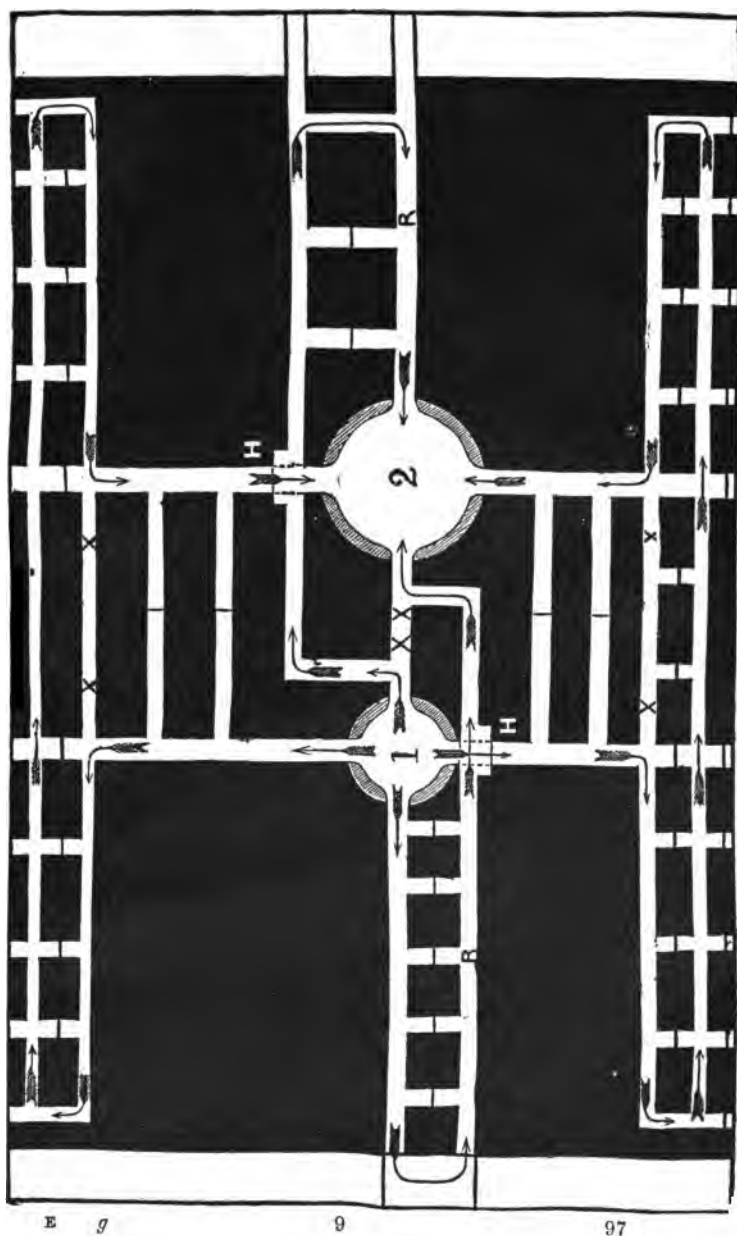
*Son* : Very well. I am glad for your explanation how mines are ventilated.

### Friction of Air in Mines.

*Son* : I wish to have a little conversation now in reference to the friction of air in mines.—*Father* : I shall be glad to give you all the information possible in reference to the "friction" of the air, as it is a very important subject.

*Son* : Friction is caused, I understand, by rubbing or dragging one body against another?—*Father* : Anything dragged along or rubbed against another substance produces friction. To illustrate this more clearly, I will show you that friction may be

PLAN No. 6a.



produced in several ways. First, a ball will not roll the same distance on gravel as on ice, because on the ice there are fewer obstacles than on the gravel, and the rubbing or friction of the ball against the gravel retards its progress. Secondly, a brake pressed against a fly-wheel when in motion produces friction, and more pressure added to the brake will increase the friction until the fly-wheel comes to a stand-still. Thirdly, in proportion to the area of the surface rubbed, so is friction produced,—that is, if only one square yard of surface is rubbed, the friction will be only one-fourth of that caused by rubbing four square yards of surface. Fourthly, friction is diminished or increased according to the velocity the air travels at; by doubling the velocity you increase the friction fourfold; that is to say, if a vessel at sea can only be propelled twenty miles in a certain space of time by an engine of 100 horse-power, it will require an engine of 400 horse-power to propel it the same distance in half the time, because friction increases as the square of the velocity.

*Son*: What do you wish me to understand, father, by the rolling of the ball on the rough gravel, the pressure of the brake on the fly-wheel, the friction produced by the large and less area of surface rubbed, and the increased power required to propel a vessel to travel at a double velocity? That is, am I to understand that friction of the air in mines is governed by the same rule?—*Father*: By the above I wish to show that friction of the air in mines is produced in four different ways. In passing air through and around the workings of a mine it presses against the roof, floor, and sides, and by such pressing friction is produced; and it is so great in some air-gates that the air may be heard to make a noise or sound as it rushes through them. Therefore, if air-gates be not smooth, even, level, and free from

obstructions, but are rough, rugged, unequal, and not regular, they will produce more friction than if smooth.

*Son* : I see now that if an air-passage be smooth the air will rush through it with less friction than if rough, just as a ball will roll better on the ice, and with less friction, than on gravel.—

*Father* : Yes, and the longer the air-passages the more friction is produced ; and if air is propelled around six groups of miners, the friction, drag, or the rubbing of that air against the roof, floor, and sides will be much greater than that produced by conducting the said air around one division of miners ; and as the fly-wheel comes to a stand-still by the great pressure or friction upon the brake, so also will the air come to a stand-still from being compelled to drag or rub through a large space of surface.

*Son* : I also see, father, that as there is more friction produced in rubbing four square yards of surface than one, so is there more friction produced by conducting air around six divisions of miners than one ; and as you say the fly-wheel comes to a stand by the great friction of the brake, so will air also in mines come to a stand if the distance be too great for it to travel. But, father, you say there is another way by which friction of the air is produced in mines,—that is, by its velocity.—*Father* : If you cause air to travel at a great velocity, you increase the friction very much. You have seen ships at sea or vessels in a canal propelled by the force or power of the wind at a great speed, because the force of the wind against the sails of the vessels was very great. Now to propel a vessel forward at the same velocity, if there was no wind, would require an engine of great power. Well, if the force of the wind which propelled the vessels forward at such velocity were increased fourfold, the vessels would only travel at double the velocity. So, in like

manner, is ventilation in mines. If 20,000 feet of air can be produced for the workings of a mine per minute, by the power of a furnace, it will require the furnace to be increased in power fourfold to produce double the quantity of air, because, as before stated, the friction of the air increases in the same ratio as the force, and the force increases as the square of the velocity. As that is the case, it requires four times the power to produce double the quantity of air, and sixteen times the power to produce four times the quantity of air, because the rubbing of the air against the roof, floor, and sides, which produces the friction, is very much increased by the velocity.

*Son* : Suppose, father, two divisions to be of unequal lengths, one 800 yards from the down-cast to the up-cast, the other only 400 yards, and the area of the air-passages each to be nine feet. I wish to know why air rushes with greater velocity along the shorter route than on the longer one?—*Father* : Because the area of surface rubbed in the shorter one is only one-half of that in the longer one, and therefore there is less friction in one than in the other; or, in other words, the balance of friction in the two is not equal; an increased velocity produces friction, and as there is less friction in the shorter route, the air rushes in at a greater velocity to equal the balance of friction between the longer and shorter route.

*Son* : Will you explain to me the method you use to find the quantity of air each takes?

*Father* : In order to do this, I will ask you a question or two on what I have told you with regard to the laws which relate to friction. If the length of an air-way is increased to four times what it was originally, what is the effect on the friction of the air-current?—*Son* : The friction is also four times as great as before.

*Father* : But if the velocity of the air-current be increased to four times its ordinary velocity, the air-way not being altered, what is then the effect on the friction ?—*Son* : It is sixteen times as great, because the friction varies as the square of the velocity.

*Father* : Very well ; but suppose the air-way to be reduced to one-quarter its length, what will be the friction ?—*Son* : It will be reduced to one-quarter also.

*Father* : Now I will ask you a more difficult question, but I have no doubt of your being able to answer it, provided you have thought well over what I have told you.—*Son* : I will do my best to answer it to your satisfaction.

*Father* : If the velocity of the air-current be reduced to one-quarter its previous rate, how will the friction be affected ?—*Son* : It will be reduced to one-sixteenth.

*Father* : Why so ?—*Son* : Because as the friction varies as the square of the velocity, it follows that the velocity being one-quarter, the friction will be  $\frac{1}{4} \times \frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{16}$ , or  $\frac{1}{4}$  squared.

*Father* : If the friction varies as the square of the velocity, does it not follow that the velocity varies as the square root of the friction (that is, the friction due to the velocity) ?—*Son* : Yes, of course ; for if we represent the velocity by 2, the friction will be represented by 4, and the square root of 4 (that is, the friction) is 2 ; again, if the friction due to the velocity be reduced to 1, the velocity will be reduced to 1 also, because the square root of 1 is 1.

*Father* : Now, if one air-way be four times as long as another, the friction due to the area of rubbing surface will be four times as great in the longer one as in the shorter one, and therefore a current of air would travel faster through the shorter one

than the longer one. Can you tell me how much faster?—*Son* : It will travel twice as fast, because it causes as much friction in each foot of the shorter one, *by travelling at twice the velocity*, as it does in four feet of the longer one.

*Father* : But suppose that both air-ways are being supplied from one large current, will the shorter one take twice as much air as the longer one?—*Son* : Yes ; because until the velocity in the shorter one is twice as great as in the longer one, the friction in it will be less, and it will therefore offer less resistance to the air, and consequently the air rushes that way in preference ; but as the velocity increases the friction so rapidly, it soon brings it up to what it is in the longer one.

*Father* : If two air-ways of the same area be 200 and 800 yards long respectively, and they are supplied with 12,000 feet of air per minute, what quantity would pass through each?—*Son* : The long one is four times as long as the short one, therefore air travelling along it at a certain velocity, which we call 1, has four times as much friction to overcome as if it travelled by the shorter one at the same velocity ; and as I said before, the friction in the shorter one will be made equal to that in the longer one by the increased velocity ; therefore it follows that if we represent the friction in the longer one by 4, the friction in the shorter one is brought up to 4 by the increased velocity. But the velocity varies as the square root of the friction, and as the friction is 4, therefore the square root of 4 (*that is, 2*) is the velocity at which it would pass. Thus the velocity in the shorter one is twice that in the longer one, and the quantity passing is consequently 8000 feet per minute in the short one and 4000 in the long one.

*Father* : As you now seem to understand the reason why it

differs, I will give you a method of arriving at your result which may be applied to any number of splits. Rule: (a) Assume the friction due to length in the shortest air-way to be 1; find the lengths of the others according to the standard; *thus 1½ times the length would be 1½ twice the length 2, and so on.* (b) Now make the units of length in the longest the standard of friction to which you assume all the others will be made equal by increased velocity. (c) Divide this by the figure which represents each air-way; and (d) find the square root of the result. This gives the relative velocity at which the air travels in each air-way. We will now take an example: Suppose you had five divisions,—the air to travel in the first division 200 yards; in the second, 400 yards; in the third, 600 yards; in the fourth, 800 yards; and in the fifth, 1000 yards; the sectional area of each air-way being alike, and the total quantity of air to pass 72,260 feet per minute: what quantity would pass along each air-way if there were no regulators fixed in any of them? Referring to the rule, by (a) we make the friction in the first (the shortest) 1, the second 2, the third 3, the fourth 4, and the fifth 5; then by (b) we have 5 for the standard of friction, to which all five will be made equal; then by (c) we have:

$$\begin{array}{rclcl}
 \text{First} & = \frac{5}{1} = 5; & \sqrt{\phantom{x}} & = 5 & = 2.236 \\
 \text{Second} & = \frac{5}{2} = 2.5; & \sqrt{\phantom{x}} & = 2.5 & = 1.581 \\
 \text{Third} & = \frac{5}{3} = 1.6; & \sqrt{\phantom{x}} & = 1.6 & = 1.291 \\
 \text{Fourth} & = \frac{5}{4} = 1.25; & \sqrt{\phantom{x}} & = 1.25 & = 1.118 \\
 \text{Fifth} & = \frac{5}{5} = 1.; & \sqrt{\phantom{x}} & = 1. & = 1.000 \\
 & & & & \hline
 & & & & 7.226
 \end{array}$$

We now have the relative velocities at which the air will travel

in each air-way, and in order to find the quantity which will pass in each we must divide the total quantity of air per minute (that is, 72,260) by the sum of the relative velocities,—namely, 7.226; we find this to give us 10,000, and it is evident that by multiplying each of the air-ways by 10,000 we shall have the quantity of air passing in each per minute, thus :

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 \text{First} & = 2.236 \times 10,000 & = 22,360 \\
 \text{Second} & = 1.581 \times 10,000 & = 15,810 \\
 \text{Third} & = 1.291 \times 10,000 & = 12,910 \\
 \text{Fourth} & = 1.118 \times 10,000 & = 11,180 \\
 \text{Fifth} & = 1 \times 10,000 & = 10,000 \\
 & & \hline
 & & 72,260
 \end{array}$$

I will now give you one or two easy examples, which you can work out for yourself, as I have merely put the answers to them without showing the working: I wish to make two divisions of an air-current of 24,142 feet per minute, but find that I cannot divide the length of the air-passage equally, one being twice as long as the other: what quantity per minute will pass along the shortest route if there is not a regulator fixed in it? *Answer:* 14,142 feet. If an air-current of 27,320 feet per minute is divided into two parts, so that one has to travel three times as far as the other, how much will the short one take more than the long one in half an hour? *Answer:* 219,600.

*Son:* Will not the total quantity passing be increased by dividing the air in these cases?—*Father:* Certainly, if the power which caused a current of 27,320 feet per minute in the last example was not decreased, it would produce a much greater quantity after the division; but I have assumed the quantity given to be as much as we require, and that the power would be

reduced so as to produce the same quantity, but at a less expenditure.

**The Great Friction of the Air by one mode of Ventilation, and how it may be reduced by another.**

*Son*: I see, father, by conducting air around a long route of working places, such workings will lose much air; also, to make one large current of air from many divisions, and propel the whole quantity through one air-gate of the same area as one of the divisions, the friction of that air must be very great.—*Father*: To show the increased friction by ventilating a great number of works with a large current of air, I will suppose 38,016 cubic feet of air to ventilate the workings of a mine in which there are, say six separate groups of miners, and the area of each gate-way is nine feet. To split the whole wind into parts, and ventilate each group of miners separately, each would have, per minute 6336 cubic feet of air. This being the case, the air would rush into each gate-way, and through the workings, at the rate of eight miles per hour, and its force on one square foot would be a little more than five ounces. Well, but if all the six divisions formed one large wind of 38,016 cubic feet, and the whole quantity had to pass, per minute, through the nine-feet area around all the six divisions, it would have to travel at a velocity of 48 miles per hour, and the force of the current on one square foot would be  $11\frac{1}{2}$  lbs., because the force is increased as the square of the velocity.

*Son*: There is a great difference, father, between the one and the other; the propelling force of separate currents is only 5 oz. and in the other case  $11\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. Yet the quantity of air produced is the same. The air rushes with a force 36 times as great as if

each part be ventilated separately; therefore what difference is there, father, between the friction of one and that of the other?—

*Father*: Well, by one mode, you see, the air travels around six parts, but by the other only around one, consequently, as one large current will have six times the velocity of six separate divisions, the friction will be  $6^2 = 36$  times as much; but this is not all: the distance that it has to travel is six times as great, therefore we have six times as much friction caused by the distance in the long one as in the short one, which makes the total amount of friction  $36 \times 6 = 216$  times as great by one large current as by six separate divisions; because the friction in this case is of two kinds,—one is in proportion to its force or velocity, the other in proportion to the distance it travels.

*Son*: To enlarge the air-gates would prevent this great friction of the air.—*Father*: Yes, but look at the expenditure; the air-gates would require enlarging from nine feet to fifty-four feet area. This enlarging of air-gates could not be maintained at every colliery.

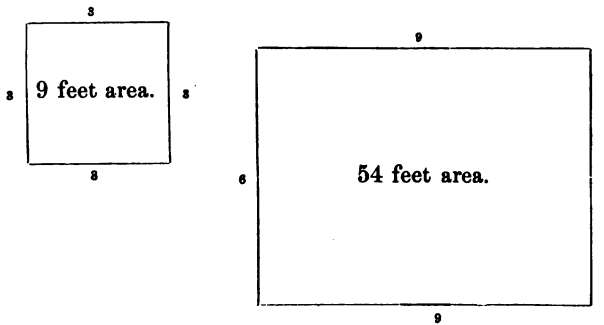
*Son*: But it would, as you say, diminish very much the friction by enlarging the air-gates.—*Father*: So it would.

*Son*: To have all the air passing, as you say, through a nine-feet area, the friction would be very great; and to pass the same quantity of air through six air-gates, each of nine feet area, would diminish the friction very much. But, father, would not the friction again be much diminished by enlarging from six air-gates, each nine feet area, to one of fifty-four feet area?—*Father*: Yes, the rubbing surface would be much less in one fifty-four feet area than in six air-ways, each nine feet area; therefore the friction would be less.

*Son*: How much would the rubbing surface be less in one of

that area than in the others?—*Father*: The rubbing surface of the six small ones would be  $12 \times 6 = 72$  feet; in the large one  $(9 \times 2) + (6 \times 2) = 30$  feet only. (See below.)

*Son*: I see, father, the rubbing surface is diminished by more than one-half.—*Father*: So it is; therefore, you see, it is well, if possible, to enlarge the air-gates to diminish the friction.



*Son*: I think the main returns and in-takes, father, should be made large.—*Father*: Yes; but air-gates in the interior of the workings cannot always be kept large, as it would be very expensive to keep them so.

*Son*: The expenditure would thus be very great, and also in furnace-power to overcome that amount of friction, because the furnace, in proportion to its power, overcomes a certain amount of friction.—*Father*: Yes. If the friction of the air be very great, the furnace will overcome it, but produce a less quantity of air; but if the friction be not very great,—that is, if the air-gates be large enough for the air to travel,—the furnace will produce a larger quantity of air for the same amount of friction.

*Son*: Is not the furnace fixed, father, near to the up cast shaft, and constructed to hold a large quantity of fire?—*Father*: Yes. But they are not all constructed alike, nor of one size.

*Son*: If large fires are in mines, will the heat from them ignite the coal and cause great damage to the underground workings?—*Father*: I have known coal in mines to be ignited by the furnace fire, and the pits to be closed up for months.

*Son*: Is it possible, father, to construct a furnace by which the coal cannot be ignited?—*Father*: A furnace may be constructed to prevent coal igniting. I have a plan of one so constructed. It was given me by Mr. John Smith, a very intelligent, well-informed person; he was overman for years at several large collieries in the north of England, and is now a certified manager.

*Son*: I should be glad, father, to see Mr. Smith's construction of the furnace?—*Father*: You may see it with pleasure; this is the ground floor of it. After sufficient space is made in a proper part of the mine near to the up-cast shaft, walls are built, as on the plan. (See page 110.)

*Son*: What are the dimensions?—*Father*: You can make it as large as you think proper. The scale given by Mr. Smith is three-sixteenths of an inch to the foot. Mr. Smith gives the plan, but the furnace may vary in size, according to circumstances.

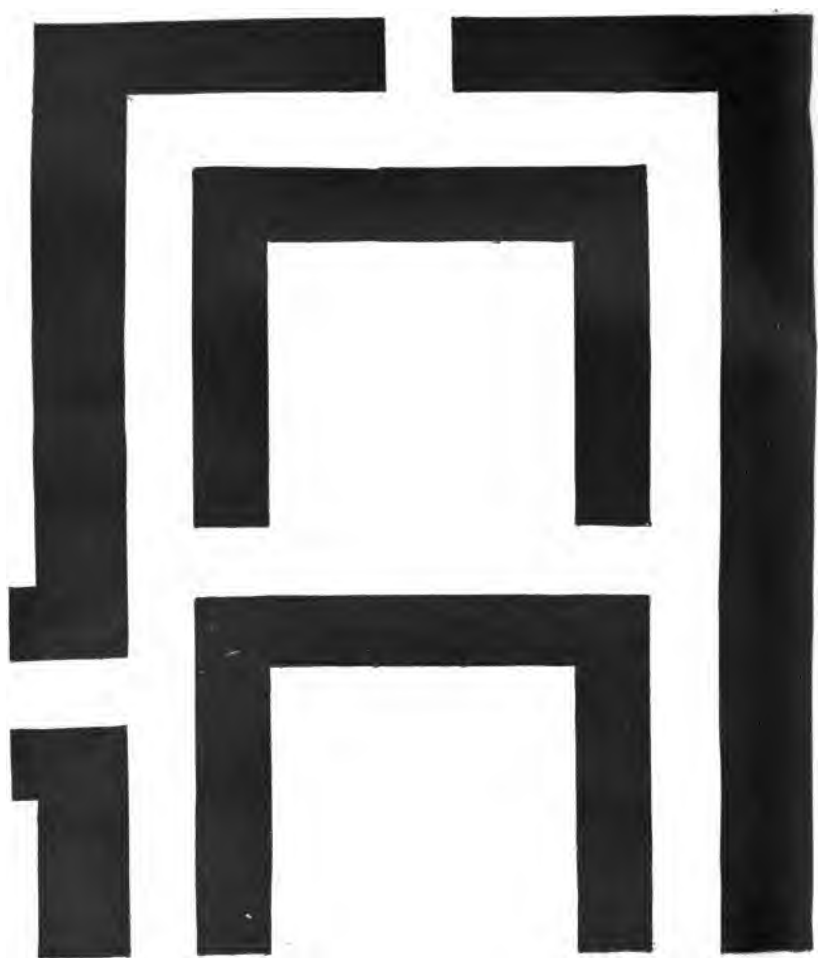
*Son*: The furnace walls, then, are built sufficiently high for the fire-bars?—*Father*: Yes; and from thence upward for the walling of the brick arch which spans the fire. (See also the front view on page 111.)

*Son*: This is the front view, then, of Mr. Smith's improved ventilating furnace?—*Father*: Yes. You see there are two brick arches over the fire, by which air can pass. Also, two

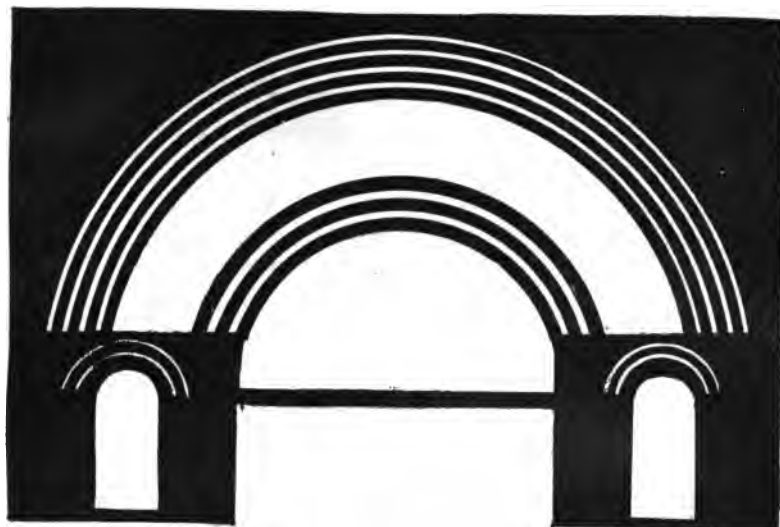
air-passages, one on each side of the fire, through which the air cools down the temperature of the fire, between one wall of brickwork and the other next the coal.

*Son* : You say this is the front view. Is the back similar to it?—*Father* : Yes, but not exactly so. I will show you the back view ; see, here it is. (See page 111.)

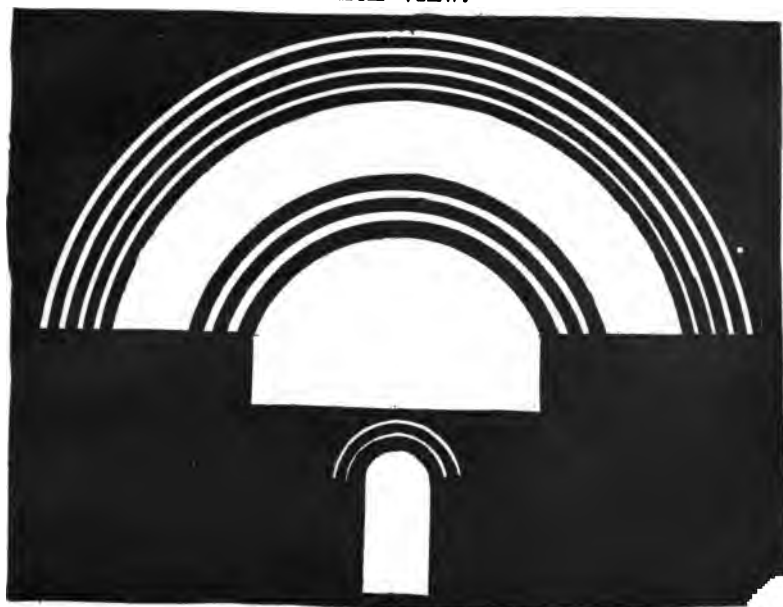
*Son* : This is, then, a representation of the back part, the black on the plan being the brickwork. The arches, I see extend across and over the fire, from the front to the back part. I see now, father, how a ventilating furnace is constructed. I think this one is very good, and that it is next to an impossibility for coal to be ignited by the heat from such a furnace.—*Father* : I have shown you the ground plan, the front view, and the back view. I think it may not be out of place to give Mr. Smith's views on furnace ventilation, etc. He says that ventilation is of no recent date ; yet man knows nothing, or very little, of ventilation. Coal-mining, and its mode of ventilation, was to man unknown till the effects of impure air were felt, or rather seen, by the candle-light, the light being extinguished for the want of pure air and the approach of carbonic acid gas. Such was the state of things that men were not able to work, as the candle could not burn for the want of pure air and the approach of carbonic acid gas. Then at this state of things the pit was relieved by hanging a fire-lamp at night in the shaft, to clear the workings of carbonic acid gas by next morning. This continued for some time, but soon failed to produce the desired effect, after which the fire-lamp was fixed at the bottom of the shaft. It answered a little better for a short time ; again it was tried with a large fire or furnace, laid upon flat grates or bars. This answered much better, yet it also had its faults, and I



FRONT VIEW.



BACK VIEW.



can name several pits burnt by this construction of the furnace. The last improvement is that of making a dumb drift from the furnace to the pit shaft, in the stone roof above the coal, beginning from 50 to 80 yards back from the pit, its rise being, say from 9 to 12 inches per yard, so that the mouth of the drift will be many fathoms up the shaft. Such dumb drifts were an improvement, but generally they are not attended to, if not altogether given up. Therefore, to eradicate the evils which have taken place, I have constructed an improved furnace, and hope others will try to make more improvements.

*Son* : Did you not show, on the Lund-hill plan, a dumb drift ?  
—*Father* : I did, because I knew it would be an improvement ; I was also informed a dumb drift was made at Lund-hill after the publication of my plan. This improved furnace, says Mr. Smith, will be ventilated with fresh pure air, which I have proved to be a benefit to the furnace, by making it burn and blaze more. Yet some hold it can make no difference, but they know no better. I ask, can a man, or animal, or fire do as well with foul air impregnated with impurities as with pure air ? Is it not proved that carbonic acid gas will destroy man, animal, or fire ? Therefore it is pure air, mixed with its proper quantity of oxygen, that is required ; without it neither man, animal, nor fire can live. Others hold that only a small portion of air can pass over a furnace. This has been the orthodox idea of scientific viewers who have had little practical experience. But I am able to show, and prove, that almost an unlimited quantity of air has, and can, pass over the furnace. An experiment was tried at North Seaton Colliery, March 19, 1863, by Mr. G. Scott, viewer, myself as overman, and Mr. Andrew Newton, furnace-man. In opening the separating doors at the furnace to let in

fresh pure air, it was found the air rushed in over the furnace with wonderful rapidity, yet this great gush of air did not diminish, but increased, the air passing around the workings in the interior of the mine. The characteristic of this improved furnace is a double arch to allow columns of gas to pass through without coming in contact with the flame of the furnace, which so repeatedly costs both life and property. Flues are provided also to keep the furnace clean and prevent it igniting the coal on each side, from which a proper quantity of pure air can be supplied.

*Son* : I think, father, Mr. Smith's plan of the furnace is very good ; I also think, with him, that furnaces should be supplied with fresh pure air.—*Father* : I believe many lives have been lost by gas igniting at the furnace ; some suppose the explosion at Lund-hill took place at the furnace, and at the time your grandfather was lost, the opinion of many was that the gas ignited at the furnace.

*Son* : Does not the coal absorb oxygen from the air as it travels along the air-passages?—*Father* : Yes. M. Fabre finds that as coal absorbs rapidly up to one hundred times its own volume of oxygen, the air which the miners have to breathe is deprived of oxygen to a hurtful degree ; the atmosphere of a mine is also further vitiated by the gaseous carbon compounds given off by the slow combustion of the coal. He concludes that a supply of air is more essential than of light, and even the best-ventilated mines require better ventilation. This also is in favor of the system of splitting the air, as it has not the same distance to travel, and is therefore not exposed to the same surface of coal.

**Several ways by which Coal is worked out in Mines, and why so many methods are adopted.**

*Son* : You have seen and adopted, no doubt, many ways of working out coal since you were first engaged in coal-mining?—

*Father* : Yes, I have adopted many ways, because I know that the same way of working will not answer with safety and economy in all mines. One plan of working coal may answer well at one colliery, but not at every one.

*Son* : Why will not that which answers well at one colliery answer in all mines?—*Father* : Because the nature of the roof, floor, and coal is not alike ; neither is the pressure of the roof, nor the discharge of gas in the coal, floor, and roof alike in all.

*Son* : Does the roof, floor, coal, and pressure vary much, then, in mines?—*Father* : Yes, at one colliery the floor is soft, but hard at another ; in other mines the roof and floor are both soft, in others both hard ; the floor lifts in some mines, but in others not so ; in some mines coal is hard, but soft in others ; the pressure of the roof upon the workings is very great at one colliery, but not so great at another ; gas in the coal roof, etc., prevents, at some collieries, tram-gates being cut through the whole coal to the extremity, as there would be no end of the falling in of the roads by cutting them in the whole coal ; yet in other mines, if the roads are not so cut they would fall very much ; in some mines the seam of coal is very thick, but in others very thin ; also, the seam of coal is flat in some mines, but dips or rises very much in others ; there are many throws, faults, troubles, veins, bad and soft coal in some collieries, but in others the coal is all good, and nothing to impede plans in operation. Single tram-gates may be cut through the whole coal at some collieries beyond

the current of air, and managers in charge of the same will be able to adopt plans in contemplation, while the discharge of gas in other mines will not allow tram-roads or narrow work to advance two feet beyond the current. The disadvantages in some mines are so numerous that a good profitable way of working out the coal cannot be adopted.

*Son* : I see now, father, why so many plans are adopted. As you say, one is because the floor is hard, another because it is soft ; one is adopted for this thing and another for that. Therefore I think no person should condemn a plan of working out coal unless he knows well the nature of the roof, floor, and coal, and all the disadvantages connected therewith ; as the plan he condemns may be worked with economy and safety where it is adopted, and also may be the best that can be used for that seam of coal.—*Father* : Yet many plans which are not useful are adopted by managers not having a proper knowledge of the nature of things. Therefore every underlooker or manager of mines should have a good knowledge of the nature of the roof, floor, coal, etc., and also a good foresight of his contemplated plans. He should have a foresight to see in his mind's eye the plan at work before he adopts it. If not, he cannot see his way clear before him as he should do, but, like a person bewildered in a thick mist, adopts unmatured plans, which will end in injury to the men under him and loss to his employer. His object should always be to adopt the best plan for the seam of coal to be worked out, and not to change because he may see a good plan of working coal drawn well on paper, or may have heard of a good plan adopted at some other colliery.

*Son* : I presume, father, some mines require much care and attention to produce a good profit for the employers and insure

safety to the men?—*Father* : Yes ; some seams of coal cannot be worked with a good profit if all the plans in use are adopted. So changeable is the roof, etc., in mines, that in some no plan appears to answer well. I have known—and had to manage—mines where, in one pit, the plan which answered well on the north part would not answer on the south.

*Son* : By what you say I clearly see one colliery would be much better to manage than another. Therefore, no doubt, father, some managers have got a good name for managing, not because their knowledge of mines was superior to others, but because they had a good colliery to manage ; while others with a great knowledge of mining have been discharged and disgraced because neither they nor any persons were able to make the colliery pay a good profit to their employer. As you have clearly shown the reason why so many ways of working out coal are adopted, I shall be glad to know, father, how or by what ways coal is worked out?—*Father* : One mode is pillar-, stoop-, or room-working ; long-wall-working another ; bank- or wide-working another ; and others work coal out in drifts, yet each and all the ways vary.

*Son* : What am I to understand, father, by pillar-, stoop-, or room-working ; that is, in what way is coal worked out under those methods?—*Father* : Pillar-working is adopted in several mining districts, but universally in the north of England. To get coal out in pillars, narrow work is cut in the whole coal endways and crossways of the coal, by which square blocks are formed. This mode will find room or places of work for a great number of miners, some in cutting narrow places, others in working out pillars, the pillars always being worked out next to the goaf ; that is, one pillar worked out next to the one just finished.

*Son* : Are the blocks or pillars square, and all of the same size in every mine?—*Father* : No ; in some mines they are square, but in others not ; neither are all the pillars of one size : they are cut large or small, to suit the seam of coal, roof, or floor where such pillar-working is adopted. If you inspect Plan No. 7 (page 118) and Plan No. 3 (page 70), they will give you a better knowledge how pillar-working is carried out.

*Son* : I see by the plan that narrow places are cut in the whole coal in two directions ; this way of working will, I see, make square blocks of coal to be worked out. This, then, father, is the plan of coal-working universally adopted in the north of England ?

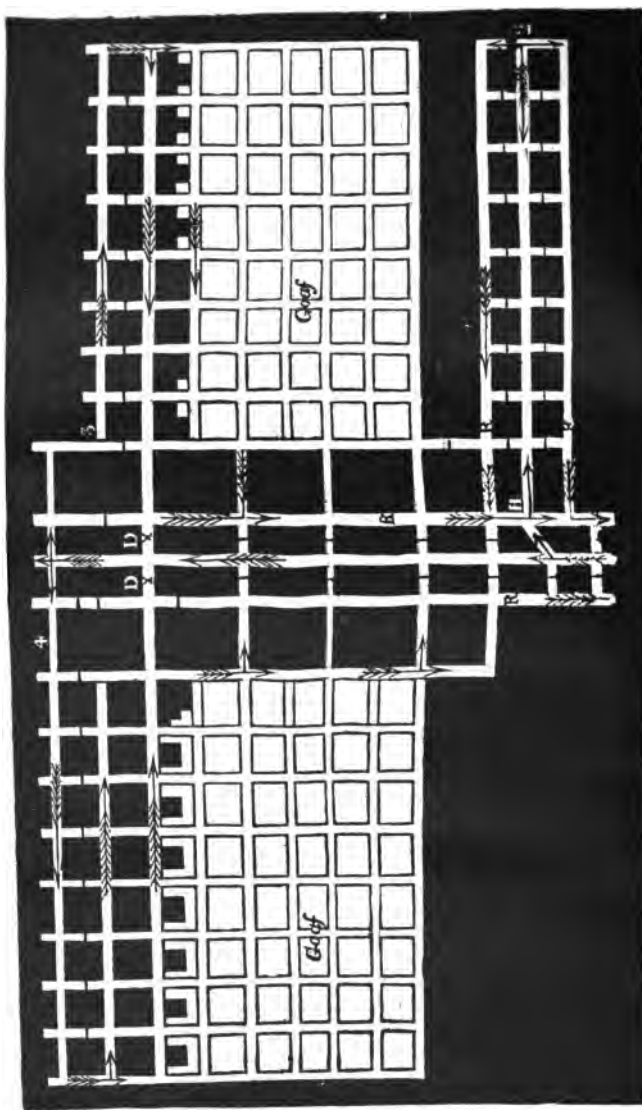
—*Father* : Yes.

*Son* : Yet the mode of ventilation on Plan No. 3 is not the same as that shown on this plan?—*Father* : No, this plan shows split winds, and not, like Plan No. 3, a mixture of winds. If you inspect this plan, you will find four divisions for the number of works. (See Nos. 2, 3, and 4.) The letter H shows the overthrow, the letters R R, regulators, and D D show the position of the doors.

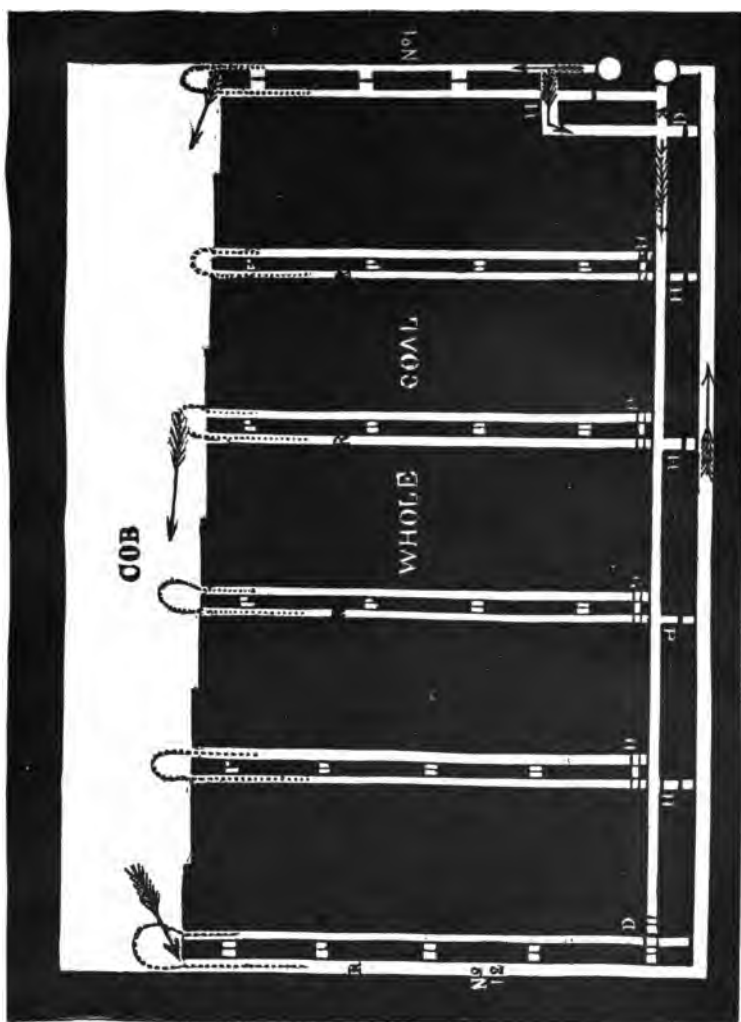
*Son* : I am glad, father, for the knowledge I have received from you. I think I see, in my "mind's eye," how pillar-working is adopted ; but how is coal got out by long-wall-working?—

*Father* : In long-wall there are many ways adopted. One is to work a great number of tram-roads, or narrow places, through the whole coal to the extremity of the block to be worked out ; after which, say 100 or 200 yards, or more, are brought back from the extremity, and the goaf left behind. Plan No. 8 (page 119) is a representation of this mode of working. You see the whole coal, and tram-gates cut through the coal, and also the goaf where coal is got out, left behind. The mode of ventilating the work-

PLAN No. 7.



PLAN No. 8.



ings is to conduct the air in at No. 1 gate-way, from there across the whole breadth of all the working faces to No. 12 gate-way, and from there in one current on it goes to the up-cast. As before stated, a large quantity of gases are always collected by this mode. Yet each part may be ventilated separately if overthrows are only fixed at the letters H H, and each separate division of air regulated at the letters R R. In this case all the doors would have to be removed except the one near the up-cast. Yet this is not the only way adopted for long-wall-working; others commence at the beginning to work out a large breadth of working face, say 100 or 200 yards of coal at once, the whole breadth being worked out to the extremity; the tram-roads are made through the goaf, to the working face, as the face extends into the extremity of the mine.

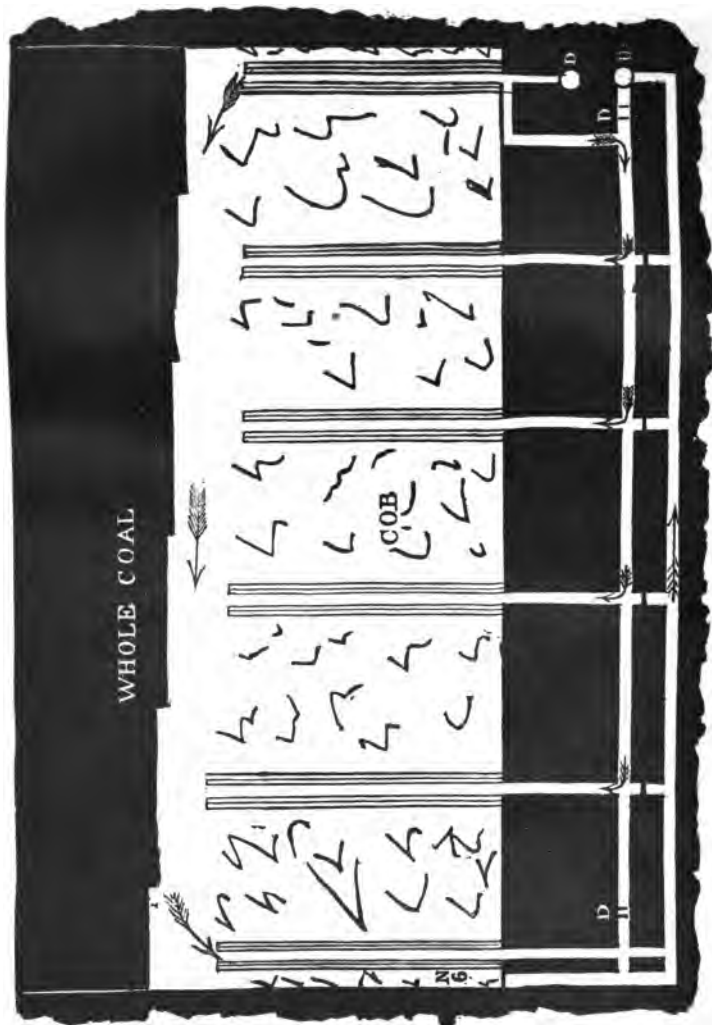
*Son*: How, father, are tram-roads cut or made through the old goafs to the working face? Is there not great danger in so working coal out? And, also, are tram-roads made through the goaf a great distance to the working face?—*Father*: To make tram-roads through the goaf, a stone wall four feet or thereabouts in thickness is built up on each side of the road, as the coal or working face extends forward. The stone walls prevent the roof falling in until the pressure brings the roof and floor nearly together, then the floor is either cut up or the roof cut down in the roads to make them (as the roof and floor meet) of the proper area. When finished, they look like stone drifts or tunnels, and will stand a good long time. As to the danger, it is not so great as in many modes of working; and the roads are also cut a great distance through the old goafs.

*Son*: You say 100 or 200 yards, or more, of coal face are worked out all in one breadth. Can this large breadth of

coal be worked out in every mine where the same plan is adopted?—that is, can you see all the men at work from one end of this large working place to the other?—*Father* : No, not in all mines. The breadth of the face of the coal worked out is in proportion to the strength of the roof. If you inspect Plan No. 9, it will give you a knowledge of this mode of working. The wagoners bring all the coal from the face of the workings through the old goaf. The mode of ventilating the workings is to pass the air fresh into every gate-way, except at No. 6, at which place all the air meets; after ventilating this place the air goes onward in one current to the up-cast. This mode may be said to be similar to Plan No. 2 (page 65), by which pure air is mixed with impure air. Yet this mode of ventilation is not good, as the whole of the gases discharged in all the workings are collected at No. 6 working place, so that an explosion there would affect every part of the mine. Therefore, ventilate each pair of tram-gates separately, by passing air fresh up one gate-way and returning it along the other. As to the mode of working out the coal, when the strength of the roof, etc., will not allow the whole breadth to be worked out at once, it is diminished accordingly; that is, two tram-gates work out their own breadth, advancing first into the extremity, other places follow up, one advancing a short space before another, by which the pressure upon the working faces is diminished, as each place takes its own pressure, and does not affect any of the others.

*Son* : Then I presume, father, when narrow places or tram-roads are cut through the whole coal, to its extremity, the entire breadth of the 100 or 200 yards is not brought back all at once? —*Father* : No, not always; it is often worked back in lengths, one before the other, as may be seen from Plan No. 8.

PLAN No. 9.

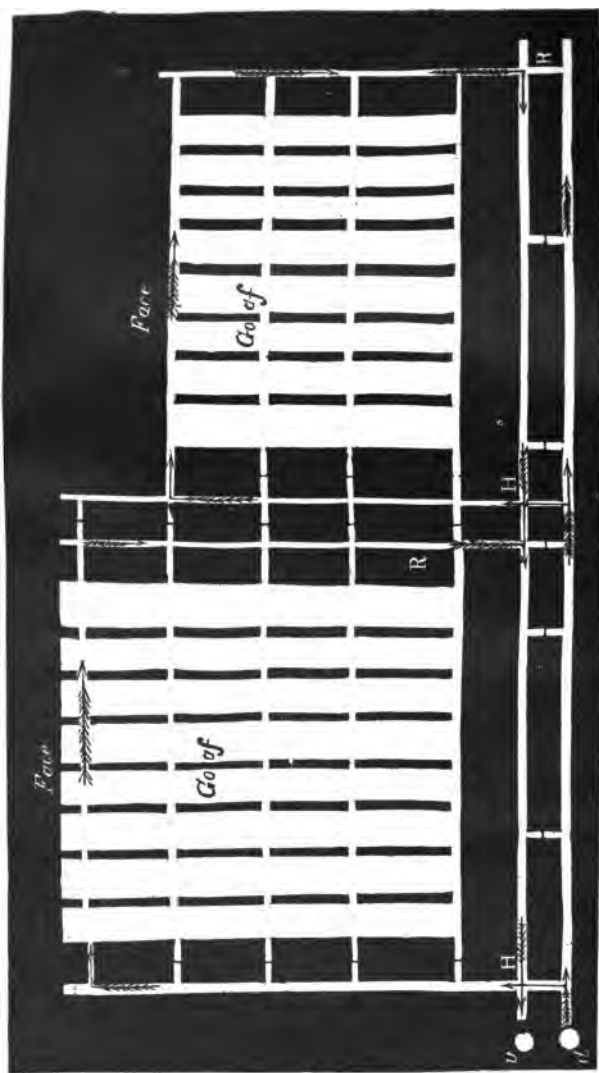


*Son* : I am obliged, father, for your information on long-wall-working. I now wish to understand the way in which coal is worked out by *bank-* or *wide-work* ?—*Father* : This method of working is similar to *long-wall* or *long-work*, excepting that the tram-roads are not made to the working face through the old goaf, but 60 or 100 yards of coal are worked out in one breadth, the tram-roads being cut in the whole coal on each side of the wide breadth of coal worked out.

*Son* : Is there any pillar of coal left to support the roof where these 60 or 100 yards have been got out ?—*Father* : In many the whole is got out ; in others ribs of coal, one yard in width, are left at distances of ten yards apart to support the roof, a hole being made through those ribs or posts of coal through which wagoners pass with coals from the working face, and as the bank face advances, new holes are made through the ribs, by which a new road is made next to the working face. You will have a better knowledge of the mode of working by inspecting Plan No. 10, which is a representation of this method. Ribs of coal are left between each working place, and as the face advances, new roads are cut through these ribs across all the working places. This mode of coal-getting is also shown in Plan No. 4 (page 73), the two being similar, except that in one the coal is worked out from the extremity of the block of coal, whilst in the other the working is commenced at the shaft and continued in the opposite direction. The mode of ventilation on Plan No. 10 is that of separate currents for each bank or working place.

*Son* : You say, father, to work out coal in *bank-* or *wide-work*, 60 yards or more are got out in one breadth, and worked away from the commencement to the extremity ; also, that for the conveyance of coal from the working faces, tram-gates are made in

PLAN No. 10.



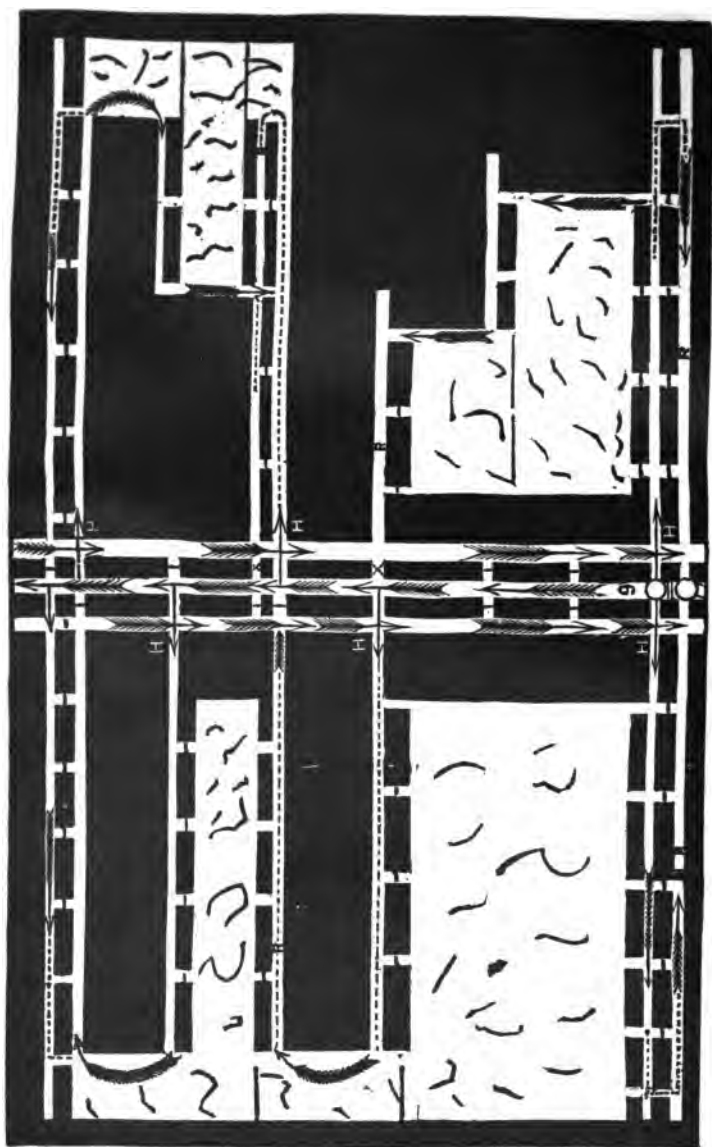
the whole coal on each side of this breadth. I wish to know, father, if this is the only way of getting coal out in *bank-* or *wide-work*?—*Father*: It is not the only way. In some mines only half is worked out at first, the other half being followed up a little behind it, or if the whole breadth is worked out, another breadth of, say 30 or 40 yards follows up the first. You will see this mode of working illustrated in Plan No. 11. Tram-gates for the conveyance of the coal are cut in the whole coal on each side of the breadth worked out. The mode of ventilation represented in this plan is that of separate currents.

*Son*: Is there any other way by which coal is worked out in *wide-work*?—*Father*: Yes, the following: A great number of tram-gates are cut through on the seam end of the coal to the extremity of the block to be worked out, after which coal is worked away on each tram-gate backward to the pit eye. Now, as tram-gates are cut in this case on the “endway” of the coal, the coal is worked away in breadths between tram-gate and tram-gate,—that is, spaces of from 10 to 20 yards each in width are worked out between one tram-gate and another, on the face of the coal, until the whole is worked away backward from the extremity. You will see a representation of this mode of working out coal in Plan No. 2 (page 65).

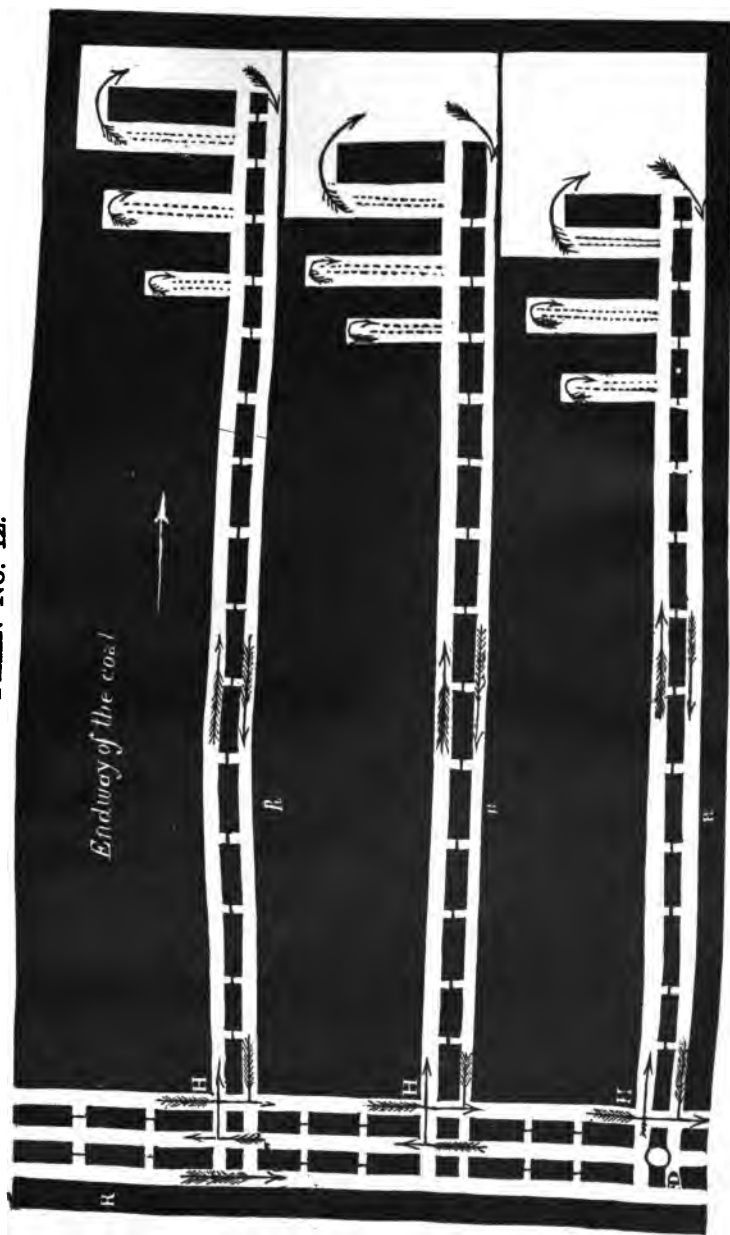
*Son*: I see by this mode, father, that as tram-gates are cut in the whole coal in Plan No. 2 to the extremity, and worked back in wide places, the goaf is left behind?—*Father*: Yes. This mode is often called “heading” or “ending work,” because narrow places are cut on the seam end of the coal, and not on the boardway of it, as in Plan No. 11.

*Son*: Very good, father; but how is coal worked out in drifts?—*Father*: The mode is similar to that shown in Plan No. 12, it

PLAN No. 11.



PLAN No. 12.



being worked away in headings or endings. Narrow places are cut, as before, on the endway of the coal, after which blocks of coal from 6 to 10 yards in width are worked out between one heading or tram-gate and another, a pillar or post of coal being left between two drifts; such pillars are worked backward (after the drifts are finished) to the tram-gate. For your better information I must refer you again to Plan No. 12, as you will by it have a better knowledge of the said mode of working. The mode of ventilating the works is that of separate currents.

*Son* : What distance may these drifts be worked in from the tram-gates? and what width are the pillars or posts?—*Father* : The width of a pillar varies from 6 to 10 yards or more, and the distance of drifts worked in also varies from 10 to 40 yards or more.

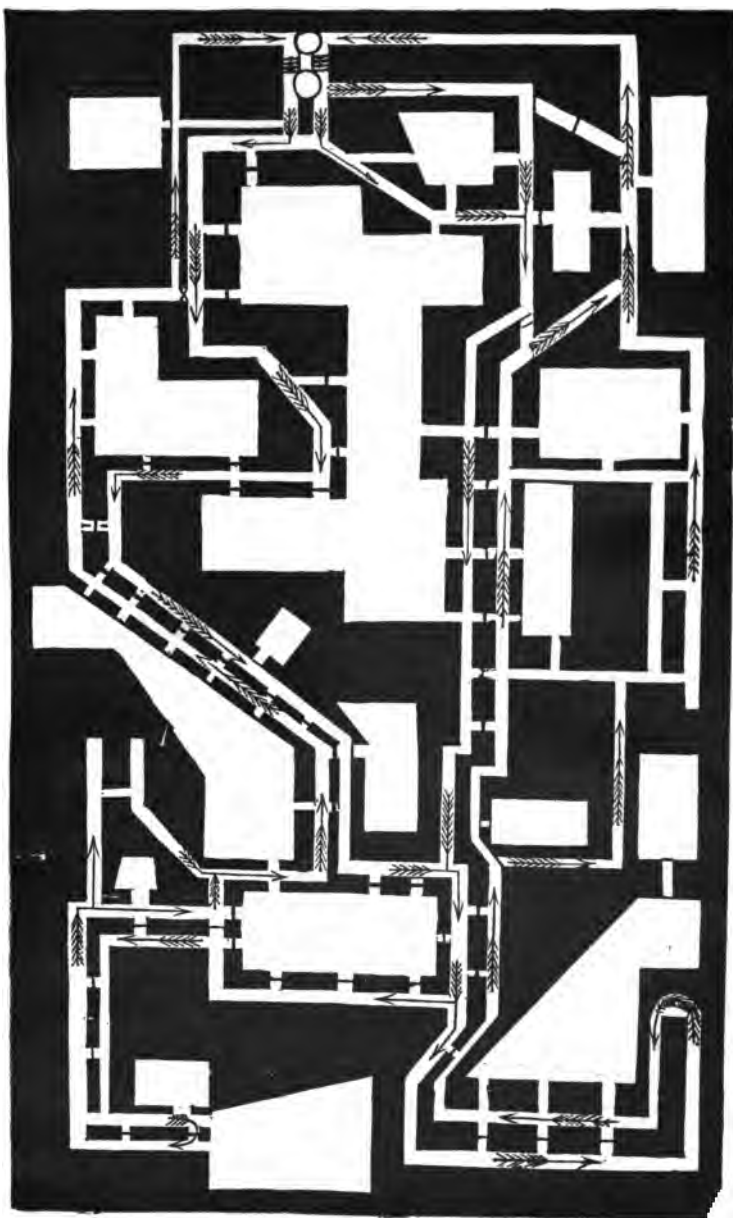
*Son* : Is there any other mode, father, by which coal is worked out?—*Father* : There are other ways of getting coal, but some managers have no regularity in their mode of working.

*Son* : In which way, then, do such managers work out the coal?—*Father* : They work it out from any place, anywhere, and in any way. Plan No. 13 will give you a better idea of this irregular mode of working out coal.

*Son* : What object do managers wish to accomplish by so working?—*Father* : They have several objects in view. One is to get a large quantity of coal, and produce a good profit for the employer. Another is to impress on the public and the employer's mind that they excel others in management.

*Son* : Is it not every manager's duty to get out a large quantity of coal, and try, if possible, to excel others in the management of mines, by which the employer may be profited?—*Father* : Yes; but if coal is not got out in a proper way, the profit pro-

PLAN No. 13.



duced will only be of short duration, as large blocks of coal are often left between two goafs, and to work such blocks out there is always great expenditure and much loss of coal; and for the conveyance of the coal, roads of a circuitous route have often to be made and many dangers met with, resulting often in loss of life.

*Son* : You know, and have seen, then, mines worked in the way you state?—*Father* : Yes, several; one colliery in particular, which would have been a good colliery for a number of years had it only been properly managed. It cost a great amount of money, but after a few years the proprietors would have been glad for any person to have taken it off their hands. They have since abandoned it, at a sacrifice of many thousands of pounds.

*Son* : Was the manager of the colliery in question a person who had a good knowledge of mines?—*Father* : He professed to have, as I know he took tradesmen's sons as pupils to qualify them for underground managers.

*Son* : Is the manager still at the same colliery, or was he discharged?—*Father* : Discharged! no; he had produced too good a profit in the short time he had been there to be discharged, and it would have been impossible for any person to impress on the minds of the employers anything disrespectful of him; yet he knew better than to remain there when the inside of the pie was got out, and another colliery was offered to him.

*Son* : Then those who came to manage the colliery after him would not be able to make it pay so well?—*Father* : No, neither could he, had he remained there, have made the colliery pay a good profit afterwards.

*Son* : I think his pupils would obtain but little information in regard to the management of mines by such a mode of work-

ing.—*Father* : If a person intends to be expert in the management of the underground workings, he must be taught in a mine, and not out of it; or he will have nearly the same knowledge of a mine as a mine would have of him. I have been in mines fifty-five years, and yet I find things in which I can profit constantly occurring.

*Son* : Are there no good, practical, and talented men to be found to manage the underground workings? and if so, is it not a mistake to place a tradesman's son in such an office?—*Father* : There are many practical men, and men of first-class knowledge, well able to take the management of the underground workings, but they are not always allowed to do so.

*Son* : Should not underground managers have a knowledge of the capabilities of the workmen under their charge, so as to appoint the right man to the right place?—*Father* : Yes, because some workmen have a better knowledge than others of gases, ventilation, fixing doors, overthrows, stoppings, bars, props, rails, laying and preparing roads, etc.

*Son* : I think they should also have a good judgment of every person's work, so as to give to each his right and due, and not to deduct the workmen's wages, as some, I fear, often do, as if good management consisted in that; but if they will show a good profit for their employers, let it be by excelling in real practical management.—*Father* : You are right; if a person can show his employer no profit but what he can take off a poor man's wages, the sooner he is removed the better; his object should always be to better the employed as well as the employer,—to do right to all.

*Son* : Is not the work in mines often much better, and attended with more profit to the miner, in one part than in another?—

*Father* : Yes, and such being the case, the manager ought to

give every miner an equal share of this better work, as far as it is possible, and not give the whole of it to those persons who may have obtained his favor by spending a convivial hour or two with him after the toils of the day or week. Fault-finders or tale-bearers generally have all the better work.

**The Best and Most Competent Persons to manage the Underground Workings of Mines.**

*Son* : Who do you think are most competent, father, to manage the underground workings of mines?—*Father* : Those persons who have both a practical and theoretical knowledge of mining. Such miners have a double advantage, as their knowledge has been practically acquired. They cannot be equalled by any other class of men. Therefore, I would recommend every one in charge of mines to obtain a knowledge both of the theory and practice of mining.

*Son* : I think those in charge of mines, father, should be steady, sober, and attentive, having good knowledge, foresight, and stability, because mines are constantly changing and things taking place which require much attention and care.—*Father* : Yes ; a person should possess the whole of these qualifications before he takes charge of so many lives and so much property ; he should be a man that will go first into a mine when an explosion of fire-damp has taken place. A good manager would not send others where he would not go himself ; he will go first, and see the cause, and risk his own life rather than those under his charge, because others, not having a proper knowledge of their work and the mode of ventilation, might not do right, from having too great a fear of doing wrong, by which they might

cause the loss of their own lives as well as those they were trying to save.

*Son* : It is your wish, I know, father, for every practical man who possesses the abilities to manage the underground workings of mines (as many practical men in mines, you say, have) to be brought out from the ranks, and for a mining institute to be formed, and that from such institute every one should pass an examination as to his qualification for underground manager. Would you, therefore, have every mining district to call out the men who have got a good knowledge of mining, and give them practical information on ventilation, gases, working out coal, surveying, and laying the workings on a plan, etc., such information being had in their own districts, after which they could be recommended for examination?—*Father* : Yes, I think it would be well for every district to have days for the men to meet to receive information in their own district, to qualify them, as the abilities of a person may be very good, but he may be too poor to attend often an institute which is at a distance from his own home. After the men have got to a state of efficiency, they should be recommended to some institute for examination.

### Mine and Land Surveying.

*Father* : A knowledge of land and mine surveying, and also of planning, is useful for managers ; they should understand its duties.

*Son* : I think so. Is this, then, a dial ? (See page 134.)—

*Father* : Yes ; it is made by Casartelli, 43 Market Street, Manchester, with the latest improvement which has just been accomplished by him. Mr. Casartelli improved the miner's dial by mounting the limb which carries the sights on axes or trun-



Casartelli's Latest Improved Circumferenter, or Miner's Dial.

nions, cast on the compass-box, attaching the arc for giving the angles of inclination to one of the trunnions, with the index so fixed as to be moved by the sight-limb whenever it was inclined to look through the sight up or down the road, thus giving the angle of *rise* or *dip*. This worked well, but it was necessary to take off the arc every time the dial was put in its case, and to fix it on the dial whenever it was required, and it sometimes happened that when wanted it was in the case in another part of the mine. To obviate this inconvenience, Mr. Casartelli recently introduced a semicircular limb, fixed to the compass-box by pivots in the line of N and S in such manner as not to obstruct the view through the sights; the degrees of angle are graduated on the face of the semicircle, and read off by indexes attached to the sight-limb, and which ride over the face of the semicircle when the limb is inclined for the purpose of taking a sight in steep mines. When the arc is not required, it is simply folded down on the outside of the compass-box, between the latter and the sight-limb. By this improvement the movable quadrant and all its inconveniences is done away with; the present semicircular arc is always at hand when required, and it can be put in or out of use in an instant.

*Son* : I think such a dial is very convenient.—*Father* : Much so for mine surveying. The needle may be either used or not, and if dispensed with you can use the dial as a theodolite, and by it take the dip of the mine also.

*Son* : There are many kinds of dials, are there not?—*Father* : Yes; I will show you others, but I think the one just referred to is very useful.

*Son* : You say, father, underground managers should have a knowledge of mine surveying and to lay down the workings of a

mine on plan. I wish to know how you would have them to get this information, as few persons will show a miner intending to improve himself how it is accomplished, be his abilities ever so good?—*Father* : I know few persons will show a man with a practical knowledge of mines how to survey. It cost me a good sum of money, and I had much to do to induce a person to give me the information ; also I have often had letters from practical men asking how to survey, and I have been sorry not to have been able to give them that information by letter that I could have done had I been in their company a short time ; this knowledge is soon obtained by seeing and doing the work. It is a little difficult to understand by reading and hearing.\*

*Son* : Would it take a long time for a person to get the necessary knowledge?—*Father* : No. It would soon be obtained if those who wish to acquire it could only have a little practice.

*Son* : But I fear no one, father, would show a number of underlookers and deputies the way mines are surveyed ; that is, they would not take the dial into a mine and show them.—

*Father* : The information can be obtained on the surface ; and a person would very soon understand how to survey in a mine, he having a practical knowledge of the underground workings.

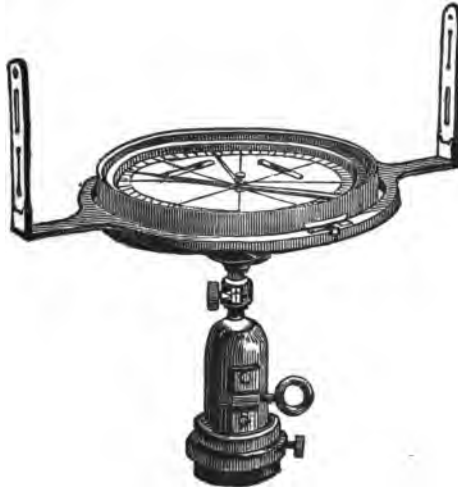
*Son* : I should be glad to understand mine surveying and how to lay the workings on a plan, if you can give me that information.—*Father* : I hope to show you how to survey mines with both the compass and the theodolite, and also how to lay

---

\* The knowledge of mine surveying and planning may be understood by reading this "Conversation on Mines." Several persons have written to say that they are able to survey the workings of mines, and lay the same on plan, by reading the contents of this book. I might name two persons out of many,—Mr. W. Hitchin, underlooker, of St. Helens, and Mr. William Valentine, underlooker, of Wigan.

the workings of a mine on a plan, if you will attend to what I shall say; as I shall give an explanation of the figures on the dial.

*Son* : Be assured, father, it will be my endeavor and delight to attend to your instructions, because I very much desire to know how to dial, and lay down the workings of a mine on a plan.—*Father* : The diagram you see is another representation of a dial ; you look at objects through the upright sights.



*Son* : Is this, then, a dial ? I see no figures on the dial plate.

—*Father* : You cannot see the figures in its *present form*, but I will show you it in another, to enable you to see them. In the large plan you will see the dial in another form. (See figure 14, at the beginning of this book. Open out the large sheet as you read ; see the beginning of book.)

*Son* : Yes, father, I see the figures better now.—*Father* :

Figure 14 is a representation of the dial. There are, you see, figures "around" the outer circle which give the number of degrees around its circumference. You will see, also, figures around the inner circle; these give the number of degrees between north and east, and also between north and west. It likewise gives the number of degrees in the quadrant,—that is, between south and west, and between south and east. For example, there are 360 degrees around the whole outer circle of the dial, but between north and west in the inner circle there are 90 degrees. Also 90 degrees between north and east; 90 between south and west; and the same number between south and east.

*Son* : I see there are two rounds of figures on the dial plate; those figures around the outer circle show 360 degrees, but those around the inner circle show 90 four times repeated.—

*Father* : Yes; so that when you read off those 360 degrees around the outer circle of the dial, make an entry of the number, whatever that number may be; but if you make an entry of the number of degrees between north and west, or between south and east, you will have to read off those degrees or figures around the inner circle of the dial, and give the number of degrees between north and west, etc., whatever that number may be.

*Son* : Are dials all figured alike?—*Father* : No. Some are figured round on the left-hand, similar to the dial shown in large plan, figure 14; others are figured round on the right-hand, similar to the figures on a clock face, commencing at 1, 2, 3 to 12, and so on to 360.

*Son* : If dials are not all figured one way round, protractors will not have to be figured all one way, will they?—*Father* : No. A protractor (to be suitable for a dial) should be figured round it on the opposite direction to the dial.

*Son* : Then if a dial reads off on the right-hand, a protractor should read off on the left to be suitable for a dial ; but if a dial reads off on the left, my protractor must be read off on the right ?

—*Father* : Just so. If you attend to this you will soon survey with any dials.

*Son* : Very good ; I understand the figures on the dial, but what about the dial needle ? I see it vibrates, or works backward and forward, at every turn or movement of the dial.—

*Father* : The cause of the vibration of the needle is, that it is a magnetic one, which is balanced upon the point of a pivot, so that it can vibrate without friction towards the direction to which it is most attracted. Its tendency is always to point one end north and the other south ; that is to say, the needle may vibrate backward and forward when the dial is removed, but it will soon come to a stand-still when the dial is at rest, and one end will point north and the other, of course, south. We learn from observations that the needle does not always point to the same place ; there is a slow but almost continual variation which does not appear to be capable of previous calculation. Thus, in the year 1576, the variation from true north was  $11^{\circ} 15'$  east ; in 1657, the needle stood due north ; in 1803, there was a west variation of  $24^{\circ} 59'$  ; in 1820, the variation was about  $24^{\circ} 12'$  west ; and from that time to August, 1864, the needle has varied to the east about  $3^{\circ} 40'$ . The variation in the beginning of 1869 was  $20^{\circ} 15'$  west. Generally, it may be understood that the western declination is now diminishing at the rate of 1 degree in eight years. When the survey of underground workings is performed by the compass, it is well to have the meridian lines which are drawn on a plan dated, by which means the variation can be got, so that in every subsequent survey, if the variation

•

be different, the meridian used in plotting can be altered accordingly.

*Son* : Suppose, father, I take the dial, and fix it at any point I may think proper, and look at an object, say 300 to 400 yards distant : how am I to fix the dial so as to obtain the degree north or south from the situation of the dial ?—*Father* : Before I commence to show you how to fix the dial and to understand its indications, I wish you to have a look once more at the dial. You see (on the large plan, figure 14) a letter N next to one of the sights, and also a letter S near the other sight. Well, when you fix the dial, always have the sight N next to the object you look at, and look through the upright sight S,—that is, in going forward into the workings. If you fix a dial in a mine, see and always have the upright sight or letter N next to the working face and the sight S next to the pit from whence you go, looking through the sight at objects which convey you from the pit into the workings, and so continue to look through at the letter S, sight after sight, until you come to the working face ; but if you take a back sight at an object towards the pit, keep the dial in the same direction, looking through the upright sight letter N ; that is, keep the dial fixed so that the sight at the letter N will always point into the workings and the sight at S towards the pit shaft.

*Son* : Very well ; I am glad, father, for the information how to fix the dial. I thoroughly understand it now. But how am I to know the number of degrees between one object and another ? —*Father* : You must fix the dial in the way just described, and look at objects through the sight S (if such objects convey you from the pit into the workings) ; after the needle has come to a stand-still, look at the north end of the needle (as one end always, as before stated, points north and the other south) and note what

●

degree the point of the needle is at, and whatever it may be, make an entry of it in your book, for it is the number of the degree away from the north to the object.

*Son* : Suppose the north end of the needle should stand or point at  $63\frac{1}{2}$  degrees : will it be  $63\frac{1}{2}$  degrees north-east ?—*Father* : Just so. The degrees are the same in this case as those degrees around both the outer circle and the inner circle of the dial, yet it is not requisite at all times to make an entry in your book of the two rounds of figures. I only give you a knowledge how to read off the dial by the two ways, so that, if required, you will be able to read it off by either way,—that is, you will understand both the rounds of figures. Yet, as you are only a learner, you will understand the degrees of the dial much better if you make an entry only of the outer circle first.

*Son* : Then if I find the point of the needle stands at, say  $63\frac{1}{2}$  degrees, when looking at an object, all I have to do is to make an entry of it in my book, which is  $63\frac{1}{2}$  degrees to the object ? But what am I to understand by these  $63\frac{1}{2}$  degrees ?—

*Father* : Well, the point of the dial needle stands or points north, therefore  $63\frac{1}{2}$  degrees is so much away from that north point,—that is, you will have turned the sight N away from the north point of the needle, so that a space of  $63\frac{1}{2}$  degrees will be between the north end of the needle point and the sight N.

*Son* : Then if I look at another object through the sight S, and the north end of the needle points at 152 degrees, I have only to make an entry of the degree in my book and the distance between object and object ?—*Father* : That is all you have to do. If, on looking at an object, the needle points at 152 degrees, it only shows a greater space between the sight N and the north point of the needle. And in like manner you may continue to

look at objects in several directions, and every object looked at may vary in the degree more and more until you come with the sight N round again to the north point of the needle. Therefore, an object of 152 degrees would be 28 degrees in the south-east direction,—that is, it would point 28 degrees away from the south-eastward. And in like manner an object at 240 degrees would point to 60 degrees in the south-west direction. If you look at an object at, say 320 degrees, the needle would point at 40 degrees in the north-west direction. There is no cause (as before stated) for you to bewilder yourself by making an entry in your book of the two rounds of figures, unless you think proper; the figures around the outer circle of the dial will do for one way of surveying.

*Son* : I think every person, father, may understand how to fix a dial, and also make a proper entry of the degrees, after being informed in this way. But how would you commence to survey the underground workings of a mine?—*Father* : Suppose you are required to survey workings similar to those on figure 15: you may make, if you think proper, a sketch in your book similar to figure 15, or according to the roads cut in the mine; after which, fix the dial in any part of the road, so as to see the centre of the pit and along the tram-road forward to the cross-roads. At the same time, let the dial be so fixed that the sight S will be next to the shaft and the sight N next to the working face, always keeping the dial in the manner described; then look forwards through the sight S; but if you have cause to take a back sight towards the pit, look through the sight N, and after the needle has come to a stand-still, make an entry of the degree pointed to.

*Son* : Suppose, father, I find the north end of the needle points to  $63\frac{1}{2}$  degrees?—*Father* : If so, make an entry on the

sketch in your book similar to the one you see on the figure; it shows  $63\frac{1}{2}$  degrees, so that it is  $63\frac{1}{2}$  degrees north-east. Afterwards measure the length from the pit to the cross-roads.

*Son* : Suppose the length of the road is 45 yards?—*Father* : Then mark 45 in figures, similar to those you see on the sketch. (See large plan at beginning of book.)

*Son* : The length being put down, do I remove the dial forward to another object?—*Father* : Yes; and fix it, if possible, in the centre of the cross-roads, so that you may look forward into each side road without removing it; but, if you cannot fix it there on account of iron, which affects the needle, each road will have to be taken separately, in the way you took the first length from the pit.

*Son* : Suppose I fix the dial and look forward on the first road, and find the north end of the needle points at 61 degrees, and the length from the cross-road to the end of the road is 40 yards, and I look for the degrees on each side road. One road I find at 152 degrees, and the other at  $32\frac{1}{2}$  degrees; all I have to do is to make an entry of the figures with the length of each road, one of the lengths being, say 45 yards, and the other 22 yards.—*Father* : Just so. That is the way with the degrees around the circle, but those degrees of the quadrant will be north-east 61, south-east 28, and north-west  $27\frac{1}{2}$  degrees.

*Son* : Then the sketch in my book will be like figure 15?—

*Father* : Just so. Now you have a knowledge of surveying,—how to read off the dial; and if you only attend well to it, you are sure to know the direction of each working part of the mine, and be able to dial forward as the workings extend, from sight to sight, until every sight is surveyed from the pit to the extremity of every road in the whole mine.

*Son* : As I have a knowledge of surveying, I now wish to understand how to lay the workings of a mine on a plan,—that is, if I had a large sheet of paper, I wish to know on what part of the paper to fix the pit, and how to lay down the workings?—

*Father* : All you have to do is simply to place a mark on your paper similar to the letter O, and call that the pit ; you may fix the pit on any part of the paper, but as near the centre of it as possible will be best.

*Son* : And what must I do after fixing the pit ?—*Father* : You see a line across the pit in figure 16, do you not ? (See large plan.)

*Son* : Yes. I also see a letter N at one end of the line and a letter S at the other end. The line crosses the centre of the pit.—*Father* : Well, when you have put the pit on the paper, draw a line across it similar to the one you see in figure 16.

*Son* : I am quite able to do that, but what must I do after ?—*Father* : Next take your protractor and place it across the pit and line, after which it will represent figure 17.

*Son* : Very well. I am able to do that also. I see figure 17 is only a representation of figure 16 with a protractor added to it ; but what have I to do after fixing the protractor?—

*Father* : You have only to look into your book (figure 15) for the degrees from the pit to the cross-roads. Did you not make an entry there of  $61\frac{1}{2}$  degrees from the pit to the cross-roads ?

*Son* : Yes, the number of degrees are, I see (figure 15),  $63\frac{1}{2}$ , and the length of the road is 45 yards.—*Father* : All you have to do, then, is to count round from the north end of the protractor until you come to  $63\frac{1}{2}$  degrees, and there make a pin mark (see P) in the side of the protractor.

*Son* : After I have done so, must I then take up the protractor ?—*Father* : Yes, and measure from the centre of the pit,

forward in the direction of the pin point, the length of the road, 45 yards, on a scale of 20 yards to one inch.

*Son* : After measuring the length of the road, will it represent figure 18? as I see the road extends beyond the pin mark P.—

*Father* : Yes, and by so doing you have now the pit and the first length upon the plan.

*Son* : I see; I now want the cross-roads. What have I to do next to lay them on the plan?—*Father* : All you have to do is simply to make another line with your pencil across the end of the road similar to the one across the pit. This line must be parallel to the one across the pit; to make a correct line you require a parallel ruler. (See figure 19.)

*Son* : Figure 19 is, I see, only a representation of figure 18, with a parallel ruler upon it; the ruler must be opened out until a line can be drawn across the end of the road. But what must I do after?—*Father* : You have to take the protractor and again place it across the road, similar as you did across the pit. (See figure 17.)

*Son* : When I have done so, it will represent, I see, figure 20, as the protractor is upon the line N and S.—*Father* : Such is the case. Look again for the degrees in your book (figure 15); there are for one road 61, another 152, and the third road  $332\frac{1}{2}$ ; such are the several degrees along each road.

*Son* : Then, I presume, father, I have only to do as before, count round the protractor for the degree on each road and make a pin mark at every degree?—*Father* : Just so. You count round the protractor until you see 61, then make a pin mark at P; after which count again until you find 152, and there also make another pin mark at P. Count forward to  $332\frac{1}{2}$ , and make another pin mark there.

*Son* : Very well ; I see all the pin marks upon the edge of the protractor ; do I now lift it off ?—*Father* : Yes, take off the protractor, it will then represent figure 21. (See all the pin marks P.)

*Son* : I think I see now how to plan : I have only to measure separately each road, measuring from the end of the road direct to each pin mark. The measurement of one road is 40 yards, or 2 inches on the plan ; the other roads are 24 yards and 22 yards.—*Father* : That is the way ; make the length of each road according to the scale, and also according to the number of yards you have entered in your book.

*Son* : When I have put the length of each road on the plan it will be like figure 22.—*Father* : Yes, continue to lay the workings on the paper until the whole of them are finished.

*Son* : Is there any other way, father, to lay workings on plan ?—*Father* : Yes ; all you have to do is to place the pit, as before, on your plan similar to the letter O ; any part of the plan paper will do, if only you have space enough for the workings ; near the centre of it is the best. Also, the meridian line should not be marked across the pit in this case, but marked on the paper in any part best suitable.

*Son* : If the pit be marked in one part of the plan, and the meridian line in another, how must I commence to lay down the workings ?—*Father* : All you have to do is to place the protractor on the line similar to figure 25 (page 148), after which mark off all the degrees entered in your book.

*Son* : The degrees entered in the book are as follows : 1st, sight 90 degrees, and the length 11 yards ; 2d sight 80 degrees, length 8 yards ; 3d sight 50 degrees, length 14 yards ; 4th sight 100 degrees, length 19 yards. I find the next sights

point in another direction ; because the 5th sight is 300 degrees, length 19 yards ; 6th sight 345 degrees, length 33 yards. —*Father* : Those are the lengths and numbers of the degrees named, therefore, if you look at the protractor (figure 25) you will see all the degrees marked, and in laying down the degrees of the roads in a mine they are marked round the protractor in a similar manner to figure 25 (page 148).

*Son* : Now that the degrees are all marked, must I remove the protractor away ?—*Father* : Yes, take it away. (See figure 26, with all the pin marks at each degree.) Figure 26 is only a representation of figure 25, only the protractor is removed.

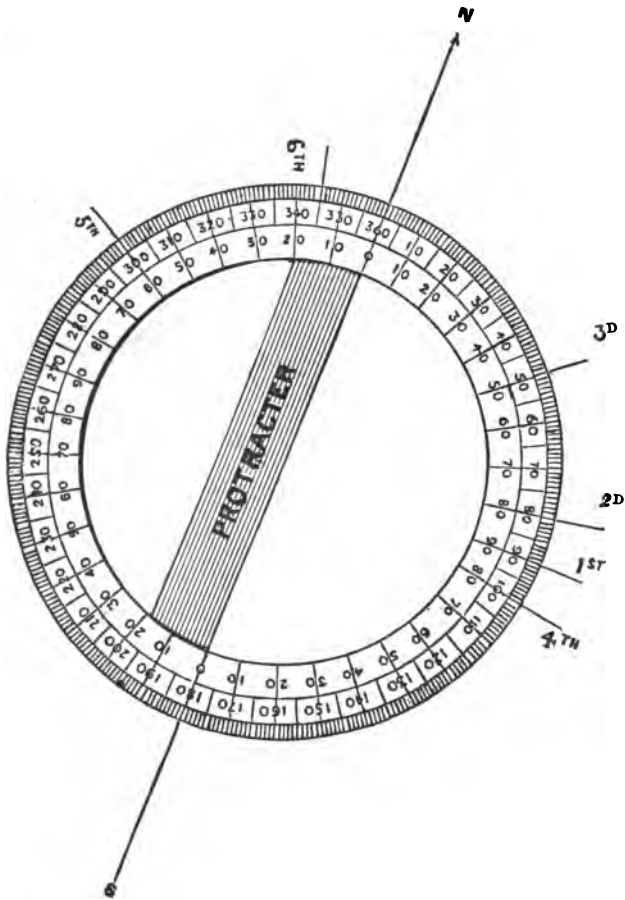
*Son* : I see all the pin marks : how must I lay down the workings ?—*Father* : You know the first sight was at 90 degrees, and the length 11 yards.

*Son* : I do, and a pin mark is on the edge of the protractor at 90 degrees. This sight was No. 1 ; see, it is parallel with A A, and the first length of the road from the pit.—*Father* : You are right, and so each sight is also parallel with the following numbers and letters, and each is also parallel with the degrees of the road. The second sight is also parallel with the letter B ; the third sight is also parallel with the letter C ; and so each sight is parallel with the road.

*Son* : Then all I have to do is to open the parallel ruler out, to make each degree parallel with the road ?—*Father* : That is the way, and also to mark down the lengths of the roads between each sight.

*Son* : I see very well now, father, how to lay the workings down on plan by this mode of plotting. There is no cause to make a meridian line at the end of every sight, as you did by the other mode of plotting.—*Father* : No, the degrees entered

FIG. 25.





in your book can all be marked off at once by this mode. (See figure 26.)

*Son* : I may, no doubt, lay down fields, boundaries, etc., in a similar manner, if I only commence at the pit, and look towards such objects?—*Father* : Just so ; you can lay on the plan any boundary or field, if only the pit or any well-known object be the place at and from which you commence. First lay down the pit on the plan, and therefore it must be the object to commence from to find others, or any other known object will do.

*Son* : I am very glad, father, for a knowledge of surveying, and also of laying the workings of a mine on a plan. I wish now to understand the way by which I may take the dip and rise of the mine?—*Father* : It is my intention to give you that information also. You see figure 23, on the large plan at the beginning of the book, which is a representation of a dial ; on its cover there are figures similar to those in figure 23 ; you will also find in the cover two holes, as represented in figure 23. All you have to do is to fix a peg, as in figure 23, with a string and a weight suspended to it.

*Son* : Shall I have to fix the dial bent on one side, and look through the sights when it is bent down?—*Father* : Yes ; and when you look through the sights at objects downward or upward you will see the degree of such dip or rise of the mine.

*Son* : The string on the dial cover is at 17 : do I understand the dip is 17 degrees?—*Father* : Just so. The mine dips at an angle of 17 degrees. All mines do not so dip ; some more, others less ; 17 degrees is about the dip in St. Helens.

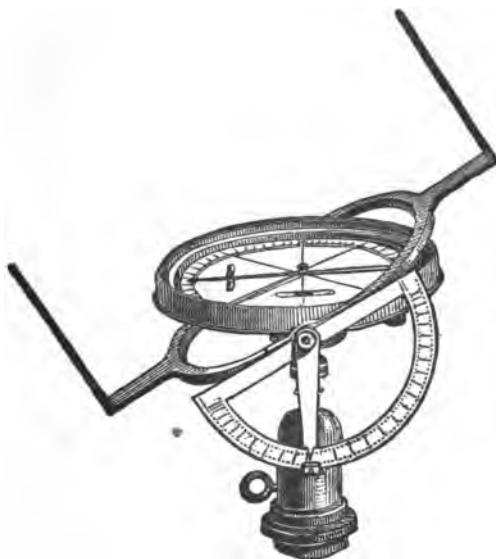
*Son* : Do I lay the dip of the mine on a plan similar to the underground workings?—*Father* : Yes. All you have to do is

---

\* This is the old way by which the dip is taken.

to make a line on your plan, and call the line the level surface (see figure 24), place your protractor upon this line, and count round to 17, make a pin mark there, and then take up the protractor.

*Son* : The dip of a mine, I see, will be shown in the same manner as in the large plan, figure 24.—*Father* : Just so. You will understand now how to take the dip and rise of the mine. You may take the rise and dip of the mine from another dial. (See the diagram.) It is so constructed as to suit the declivity of the mine.



*Son* : This dial must be very convenient. You will be able, with a dial like this, to take the degree of the road and the dip or angle of it at the same time.—*Father* : Yes ; the dial is very



convenient. It is Headley's dial, but manufactured by Mr. Davis, of Derby, the manufacturer of mining instruments.

*Son* : You have here, I see, another of Mr. Davis's dials. (See page 152.)—*Father* : Yes. This dial is a very useful instrument ; it combines all the latest Headley with the outside vernier of the theodolite.

*Son* : This dial, manufactured by Mr. Davis, of Derby, is much improved, and also very useful for mine surveying.—

*Father* : So it is. The figuring is so arranged that the readings of the needle and the vernier tally, thus keeping one another in check. If the needle be used, the vernier will detect the slightest local attraction, and that which has hitherto been doubtful in mining surveying will, with this instrument, be certain of accuracy so far as the magnetic bearings are concerned, which heretofore could only be checked by a repeated survey.

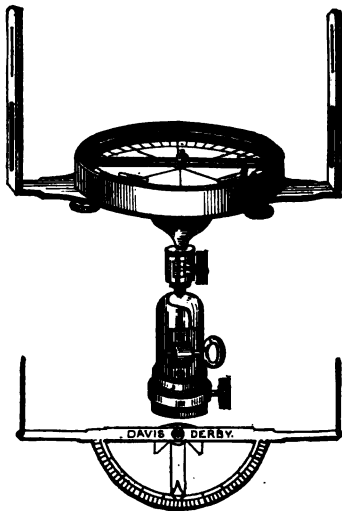
*Son* : The Headley sights and the vernier plate on this dial may, I presume, be clamped, and the dial can then be used as an ordinary rigid one, can it not?—*Father* : So it can. One great advantage of this construction is, that if the dial be out of adjustment it is at once detected by comparing the vernier and needle readings.

*Son* : But in reference to its weight with others?—*Father* : Its weight is not more than that of the ordinary Headley, and it is equally compact. Here is also another form of dial, similar to Headley's, which can be attached at pleasure, for ascertaining the angle or dip.

#### **Theodolites for Mine Surveying.**

*Son* : Is not the theodolite used now, father, for surveying the underground workings of mines?—*Father* : Yes ; some people use such.

*Son* : Is the theodolite very difficult to understand ?—*Father* : You may soon know how to use one for the surveying of mines ; it is very simple.



*Son* : I much desire to know how to survey mines with the theodolite ?—*Father* : It is my intention to give you that information also.

#### **How Theodolites are constructed.**

*Son* : I shall be glad to be informed how theodolites are constructed ?—*Father* : I might give you a minute description how several theodolites are constructed, but to do so would only bewilder you ; therefore, my object will be to give the *principle* upon which they are constructed. Theodolites are similar to dials, with upright sights, through which you look at objects. Around the circular plate are 360 degrees. The upright sights are so

constructed that in moving them round, like the hands upon the face of a clock, you do not move the circular plate. Therefore, in moving round the sights to look through at an object, you take particular notice of the degree opposite the sights.

*Son* : I see, in my mind's eye, the principle upon which theodolites are constructed. The minute-hand on a clock-face is moved round from the hour of twelve to one, and from thence to two, and forward round again to twelve. So, also, are the sights on a theodolite moved round from 0 or zero, or from the north point on the theodolite plate.—*Father* : I am glad you see the principle on which theodolites are constructed ; you now require a knowledge how to use them.

**The Magnetic Needle dispensed with, and how Workings are laid on Plan by that Mode of Surveying.**

*Son* : Just so ; I wish to know that ; but I would ask, is the magnetic needle entirely dispensed with in surveying mines by theodolites?—*Father* : The magnetic needle can be dispensed with entirely, if only the datum line can be found,—that is, if you can find, say due north from the centre of the shaft into any part of the workings ; if not, you will have to use the needle the first length only, to find the direction from the pit shaft into the workings.

*Son* : Well, but the underground tram-roads vary from a straight line ; and if you dispense with the needle, how can you find the proper degree or the proper direction from the pit into the workings?—*Father* : The degree of each tram-gate into the workings is very well found by the use of theodolites. There are two ways by which mines may be surveyed with theodolites ;

yet the two ways are nearly alike. In both ways the workings are laid on a plan just the same as when surveyed with the dial. The only difference is, you do not require to use the parallel ruler to make a meridian line at the end of every sight.

*Son* : I do not require to make a meridian line at the end of every sight ! then how do I lay down the workings ? Do I not use the protractor in the same manner as I used it in the other way of laying workings on a plan ?—*Father* : You use the protractor.

*Son* : If I use the protractor, upon which line do I lay it to find the next degree or the angle of the road ? because in the other mode of planning, I lay the protractor upon the meridian line.—*Father* : In laying the working down, so as to find the angle of each sight, you have only to place the protractor upon the line which you make from sight to sight ; by so doing, you can find the angle of the following sight.

*Son* : I see very well, now, how this is accomplished. Each line of sight, or tram-gate line, is similar to a meridian line, to find the next angle of the road.—*Father* : Just so. That mode of planning is adopted when you take the angle by one way of surveying with the theodolite, but not by the other.

### **How Mines are Surveyed by the Theodolite.**

*Son* : I wish to know how to use the theodolite by the two ways, therefore I think you may show the latter mode first.—

*Father* : I will do so. I gave you a description of the theodolite, or the principle on which it is constructed ; I wish you to bear that in mind. Then suppose we take the theodolite into a mine, and commence to survey with it from the pit along one of the tram-gates into the workings. Again, suppose the first sight is

due north from the pit, and the length of the first sight, say 100 yards.

*Son* : Say it is due north.—*Father* : If so, all we have to do is to fix the theodolite in the tram-gate at the 100-yards mark, with the sights opposite O, or north point (see page 158), and when so fixed, we must be able to see through the upright sights a line in the centre of the pit. After this, you move the sights round to look at another object at, say 200 yards' distance in the direction of the workings, being very cautious not to move the theodolite plate in moving round the sights to the object.

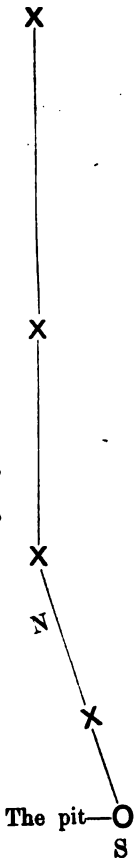
*Son* : Suppose I find the degree 25 is opposite the sight, would that be at an angle of 25 degrees *from* the last sight?—

*Father* : Just so. You now take up the theodolite, and again fix it at the end of the 200-yards mark, looking back at this 100-yards mark, being able to see a light through the upright sights, when such sights are opposite O, or the north point on the theodolite plate. When the theodolite is fixed properly, and you are able to see the mark, you will have to move the sights round again to see another object in the workings at, say 300 yards' distance.

*Son* : The degree opposite the sights, from this place to the 300-yards' mark, is, I find, 15 degrees, or is it not at an angle of 15 degrees for the previous sight?—*Father* : Just so. You take up the theodolite again, and go fix it at the 300-yards mark, looking back also again to this 200-yards mark, being able to see it through the sights when such sights are opposite O, or the north point on the theodolite plate.

*Son* : I see, when so fixed, the upright sights are moved round again to look through at another object into the workings.—

*Father* : So they are. Say the next sight is at 400 yards' dis-

**EXAMPLE.***The Tram-gate from Pit into Working Face.*

The fourth sight, 400 yards in length,  
at an angle of 5 degrees from the third  
sight, or 45 degrees from due north.

The third sight, 300 yards in length, at  
an angle of 15 degrees from the second  
sight, or 40 degrees from due north.

The second sight, 200 yards in length,  
at an angle of 25 degrees from due north.

The first sight, 100 yards in length, due  
north.

tance, and also at an angle from this sight of 5 degrees. And so you continue in like manner, from sight to sight, taking the angles as they vary from previous sights, until the whole mine is surveyed. My object is to give you the principle of the thing, and not to bewilder you with minutes, seconds, and thirds.

*Son*: As you have shown *one way* of mine surveying with the theodolite, which I now understand, I shall be glad to be informed *how* the other is accomplished?—*Father*: Well, the first and second sights are taken just in the same manner as the two first sights were by the last experiment. The first sight, you know, from the pit was due north, and the second sight was at an angle of 25 degrees, looking at an object in the workings 200 yards distant. All that is required, then, is to fix the theodolite at the 200-yards mark and look back (as before) to the 100-yards mark, and in looking back through the sights you must not fix the sights opposite O, or the north point on the theodolite plate, but fix them opposite degree 25. When you have got the degree properly, with the sights opposite 25, then you move round the sights to look through at the other mark at 300 yards' distance. After so doing, you will find the sights opposite degree 40,—the direction of that sight being 40 degrees away from the north point. Then you again remove the theodolite to the 300-yards mark, and look back also again to this mark, and in so looking back the sights must be *opposite* degree 40—the same being the degree of the road; and also, when found, it is the guide by which you know or find the degree of the next sight.

*Son*: After the theodolite is so fixed are the sights removed round so that you may see the next object?—*Father*: So they are. The object is 400 yards, you know, from this one.

*Son*: I find the object at the 400-yards mark from here is

opposite the degree 45.—*Father* : Such is the case. Do you not remember the sight, when taken by the other way, was at an angle of 5 degrees ? What makes it 45 degrees is, because the 5 is added to the other 40 ; therefore, it is 45 degrees from the north point, or away due north 45 degrees,—that is,— $25 + 15 = 40 + 5 = 45$ . (See page 158 for example.)

*Son* : Then, if I fixed the theodolite again, and looked back, the sights must be opposite degree 45 ; after which I look forward to another sight, to see in what direction the road varies from the last one ?—*Father* : Just so ; and so in like manner you take *back sights* alternately, sight after sight, until all is finished. By this mode of surveying you lay the working on plan just in the same manner as if surveyed with the dial.

#### **How to find the Degree of any Tram-gate or Road in a Mine intended to be driven.**

*Son* : I wish to drive a road from the pit to a certain place or object : how, father, must I find the degree to that object ?—

*Father* : Make a line on your plan from the point you wish to commence at, and from there to the object you intended to drive to ; then carry the line parallel to the meridian line ; lay your protractor then on the meridian line, after which count round from the north of the protractor until the parallel line of the intended road crosses it, and where the line crosses the protractor it is the degree of the intended road you require.

*Son* : When I have carried the line of the intended road parallel to the meridian line, and laid down the protractor upon it, if I find the line of the road crosses the protractor at, say 250 degrees, then I shall have to fix the sight of the road with the dial at 250 degrees ?—*Father* : Just so. That is the way.

**Miscellaneous Questions.**

*Son* : I have a few questions to ask which, no doubt, you will try to answer.—*Father* : What are they ?

*Son* : I wish to know how you find the area and the cubic contents of a circular pit ?—*Father* : I find it in the following manner : Measure across the pit or circle, and multiply the distance or diameter by itself ; multiply again by .7854, and then strike off the four last figures of the result in the manner below described. Find the area and also the cubic contents of a pit 12 feet in diameter and 365 feet deep.

**EXAMPLE.**

*To find the Area and Contents of a Circular Pit.*

The diameter of pit . . . . .	12 feet.	
Multiplied by itself . . . . .	12	
	<hr/>	
	144	
Again multiply by . . . . .	.7854	Thus the area
	<hr/>	is nearly 113 $\frac{1}{10}$
	576	feet.
	720	
	1152	
	1008	
	<hr/>	
Area of pit . . . . .	113.0976	Also the cubic
Multiplied by depth of pit . . . . .	365	contents are
	<hr/>	41,280 $\frac{8}{10}$ feet.
	5654880	
	6785856	
	3392928	
	<hr/>	
Cubic contents . . . . .	41,280.6240	

*Son* : I may find the cubic feet, then, of any circular pit, or circular air-passage, by this mode, be it less or more ?—*Father* : Yes, you must adopt this mode of measurement, whether the diameter be in inches, feet, or in yards. If the diameter of the

pit had been 12 inches and the depth 365 inches, there would have been the same result, but in inches instead of in feet. To find the cubic contents of an air-passage not circular, multiply the length of it by the width. Thus the length of the passage may be, say sixty feet by five feet wide and four feet high.  $60 \times 5 = 300 \times 4 = 1200$ .

According to the late Dr. Glover, 666 cubic feet of air will sustain a healthy man for 24 hours; if so, an air-passage of 1200 feet would, if full of pure air, sustain a man 43 hours. One man inhales 135 gallons of air every hour; a pony 540 gallons; a horse 1080 gallons.

*Son*: I wish to know the rule by which to find the area and cubic feet in the sinking of a pit of any diameter and depth.—

*Father*: I will show you how to find the area, cubic feet, and also what number of bricks is required in the walling of a pit.

*Son*: Such information will be very valuable. It will show how to calculate the amount of labor in sinking a pit.

#### **To find the Area and Cubic Feet of a Pit Thirteen Feet Diameter.**

Diameter 13 feet, multiplied by 13 = 169; multiply again by .7854 = 132.7326; multiply now by 1521, the supposed depth of pit = 201886.2846, total number of cubic feet.—*Father*: You see the rule in the table, on page 161, how to find the area and cubic feet of a pit. Multiply (as you see) the diameter by itself, then multiply 169 by .7854, and strike off the four last figures, the remainder (132) being the area of pit.

*Son*: Why strike off the four last figures? Do they count for nothing?—*Father*: The figures you strike off are decimals, that nearest the decimal point representing tenths, the next

hundredths, and so on. Seven, you see, therefore, is sevenths of a foot, or a little more.

*Son* : How are the cubic feet of a circular pit ascertained?—

*Father* : Just in the same manner as you see in the table. Multiply the area of the pit by its depth ; and again strike off the decimals, and the remainder is the result in cubic feet (201,886).

*Son* : Give me the rule, now, to find the circumference of a pit (say 13 feet diameter) and the number of bricks required to wall one.—*Father* : The following rule in mensuration will enable you to find the circumference of anything circular, whatsoever the diameter may be :

Multiply . . . . .	3.1416
By, say a 18-feet-diameter pit . .	18
	<hr/>
	9.4248
	31.416
	<hr/>
	40.8408

Thus you see the result as seen in the table.

*Son* : There are, I see, four decimals also in this.—*Father* : Yes ; four is the number,—circumference of pit  $40\frac{8}{10}$  feet.

*Son* : How do I find the area, then, father, in feet to be walled?—*Father* : By multiplying the figures which show the circumference by the depth of pit to be walled. Supposed depth  $521 \times 40.8408 = 21,278.0568$  area to be walled. Again, the number of bricks in a foot,  $5.333 \times 21,278.0568, = 113475.8769144$ . This gives the total number of bricks in the walling of a pit at the supposed depth of 521 feet.

*Son* : Are there not three decimals added to the others, which make seven?—*Father* : Yes, 333 are decimals, which are equiva-

lent to one-third of a brick. If a brick is nine inches in length and three inches in depth, it will require five bricks and a third to wall one foot area.

*Son* : I am glad for the information. I think I am able to find the cubic feet, etc., of a pit.—*Father* : Here are a few tables for your information, in which you may practise.

To find the area and cubic contents of a pit 13 feet 3 inches diameter. Diameter, 13.25 feet by  $13.25 = 175.5625$ . Multiply again by  $.7854 = 137.88678750$ . Multiply by 3212, supposed depth of pit,  $= 442892.36145000$ , the total number of cubic feet in shaft.

We will find the circumference of a 13-foot-3-inches-diameter pit, and the number of bricks required to wall one of this diameter. Multiply 3.1416 by the diameter, 13.25, to find the circumference of pit  $= 41.626200$  feet. Multiply 41.626200 by 1212, the supposed depth of pit,  $= 50450.954400$  feet area to wall. Multiply 50450.954400 by 5.333, the number of bricks per square foot,  $= 269054.939815200$ , the total number of bricks required.

Now we will find the area and cubic contents of a pit 13 feet 6 inches in diameter. Multiply the diameter, 13.5 feet by 13.5 feet  $= 182.25$ , the sum of diameter multiplied by itself. Multiply 182.25 by  $.7854 = 143.139150$  feet area of pit mouth. Multiply 143.139150 by the supposed depth of pit 2315  $= 331367.132250$ , total number of cubic feet.

Find now the circumference of a 13-foot-6-inches-diameter pit, and number of bricks required to wall one of the same diameter. Multiply 3.1416 by the diameter, 13.5  $= 42.41160$  feet circumference of pit. Multiply 42.41160 by the supposed depth of pit, 1232  $= 52251.09120$  feet area to wall. Multiply 52251.09120

by number of bricks per square foot,  $5333 = 278655.06936960$ , total number of bricks required.

We must now find the area and cubic contents of a pit 13 feet 9 inches diameter. Diameter,  $13.75$  by  $13.75 = 189.0625$  feet, sum of diameter, multiplied by itself. Multiply  $189.0625$  by  $.7854 = 148.48968750$  feet, area of pit mouth. Multiply  $148.48968750$  by supposed depth of pit,  $3322 = 493282.74187500$ , total number of cubic feet.

Also find the circumference of a 13-feet-9-inches diameter pit, and the number of bricks required to wall one of the same diameter. Multiply  $3.1416$  by the diameter,  $13.75 = 43.197000$  feet. Multiply  $43.197000$  by supposed depth of pit,  $3322 = 143500.434000$  feet area to wall. Multiply  $143500.434000$  by number of bricks per square foot,  $5.333 = 765287.8145222000$ , total number of bricks required.

*Son* : Any person able to add a few figures together may understand the tables.—*Father* : My object is to make you understand all I say.

*Son* : Have you any knowledge, father, of what power there is produced when a quantity of gas is ignited? that is, do you know what gas is capable (in proportion to its quantity) of propelling before it?—*Father* : I know the power of gas, when ignited, is very great, as may be seen in mines after explosions. At the Hetton Colliery explosion, December 20, 1860, it was supposed that the explosion had been caused by a flue, containing about 7000 cubic feet, becoming filled with gas, which afterwards ignited. The scientific evidence given by Mr. Isaac Lowthian Bell and Dr. Thomas Richardson was this: Supposing the 7000 feet to be exploded, it would become 56,000 feet, which would immediately be converted into after-damp. The temperature of

these exploded gases being about 1500 degrees Fahrenheit, or a bright-red heat, the power would be equal to 75 quarter casks of gunpowder of 25 lbs. each ; that is, an explosion of 1875 lbs. of gunpowder. So you may judge by this of the power of an explosion.

*Son* : Is blasting coal with powder allowed in mines where safety-lamps are used ?—*Father* : It is allowed in some mines.

*Son* : Those who allow blasting know well, I presume, that explosive gas (carburetted hydrogen) cannot ignite at the flash of powder ?—*Father* : Touch-paper is used for lighting with.

*Son* : Touch-paper is used ! That is not the question. Will not explosive gas ignite at the flash of powder, where blasting is allowed ?—*Father* : If explosive gas ignites at either a naked light or safety-lamp, so also will it ignite at the flash of powder.

*Son* : You know it will, then ?—*Father* : To be sure ; and persons who think otherwise I envy not their knowledge.

*Son* : Do not people say explosive gas cannot be destroyed ?—*Father* : Yes ; but it is well known to many that gas in a stocked place has often exploded in the safety-lamp, and that after such a place has been filled with tobacco-smoke, naked lights have been used. If the quantum of gas be above the explosive mixture, the gas will extinguish the tobacco in the pipe.

*Son* : Suppose much air passes around the place where a miner is working, is he to know by this that his place is safe from explosions ?—*Father* : No ; unless his knowledge is such as enables him to know the purity of the air ; as the safety of his place is not in proportion to the quantity of air, but to the purity of it.

*Son* : If the same quantity of air passes around his place every day, is he to know by this that his place is safe from

explosions?—*Father* : No ; his place may not be safe then, because a change of the weather will cause a larger discharge of gas at one time than at another, and if a larger quantity of gas be discharged, the air will be more impure at such times.

*Son* : But suppose the miner can only see a little gas in the air which passes around his place, can he then know it to be safe?—*Father* : No ; he cannot then say his place is safe, unless he has a knowledge of the several degrees of the impurity of the air ; because, if gas be pure, very little will be seen before it explodes ; therefore, he should have a knowledge of the quality as well as the quantity of the gas, to have a proper knowledge of the safety of his place.

*Son* : Suppose you had two pits, one, say of 126 feet area and the other only 100 feet area, which of the two, the larger or the smaller, would you make into an up-cast?—*Father* : The larger one, because the air expands, on account of the heat of the furnace and the high temperature of the mine, in passing through the workings to the up-cast ; and also, from gases being added in the air from the strata, space is required in the shaft for such expansion, otherwise the velocity of the air in the up-cast would be greater than in the down-cast ; and if the velocity be greater, the friction would be greater. The said quantity of air cannot ascend up the shaft as it would do if the shaft were larger in proportion to the expansion of the air, because the friction would impede the ascent of the air, as a weight to a balloon would impede its ascent ; for air is not propelled upward out of a mine, but ascends like a balloon of itself,—the ascent of the air being in proportion to its diminished density caused by its expansion.

*Son* : How much do you say air expands by heat?—*Father* : 480

parts of air, at 33 degrees of heat, become 481 parts, and increase one part for every additional degree ; so that when the volume of air becomes increased to 600 parts, the temperature is then at 152 degrees. Therefore, suppose the down-cast air at a temperature of 32 degrees and the up-cast air at a temperature of 152 degrees, the volume of air in the up-cast would have become expanded to one-fifth larger than the down-cast air, and if one-fifth expanded it would be one-fifth less in weight in the space it occupied.

*Son* : Suppose the seam of coal in the workings should dip or rise, would the furnace produce more air if the up-cast was fixed in one part than it would in another ?—*Father* : The same power of a furnace would produce more air if the up-cast was fixed in an elevated position ; because, as before stated, the air expands in passing through the workings, and this being the case, its tendency is to ascend and not descend. It therefore follows that if a furnace be fixed where the shaft is in an elevated position, so that the air in passing through the workings may ascend and not descend, it will produce a larger quantity of air than one of the same power which is not fixed in such a position ; because in a furnace so fixed the air will assist the furnace as it ascends through the mine to the up-cast, but will not do so if the air is caused to descend in passing to the up-cast. You may cause air to descend contrary to its nature, just as two horses might be pulling against each other ; the strong one would pull away the weaker ; so, in like manner, a larger furnace than needful would be required.

*Son* : Do you know what quantity of air is produced in mines per minute ?—*Father* : The quantity is not alike in all mines, but in some more and in others less. The following will give you a knowledge of what has been produced in some mines :

DURHAM . . . . .	Hetton Colliery . . . .	190,000 cubic ft. per min.		
NORTHUMBERLAND .	Wallsend " . . . .	120,000	"	"
YORKSHIRE . . . .	Ardsley Main Colliery .	80,000	"	"
" . . . .	Lund-hill " . . . .	50,000	"	"
DERBYSHIRE . . . .	Speedwell " . . . .	40,000	"	"
LANCASHIRE * . . .	Sutton Heath " . . . .	80,000	"	"

*Son* : Is not the quantity of air which rushes through and around the workings of a mine measured by the anemometer?

*Father* : Yes, it is one way of measuring it.

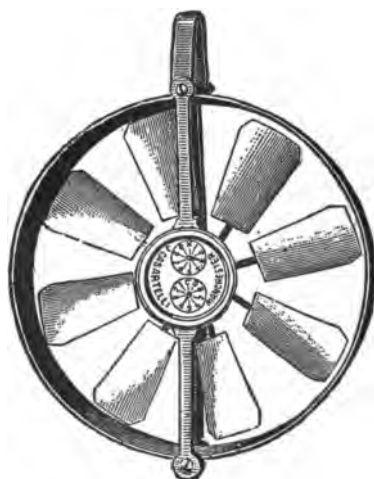
*Son* : Have you seen the anemometer?—*Father* : Yes ; it was first invented, I believe, by Mr. Biram, and manufactured by Mr. John Davis, optician, Derby ; and also by Casartelli, of Manchester.

*Son* : How is a person to ascertain by the anemometer the number of cubic feet of air which rushes through the air-passage ? —*Father* : In the following manner. The registering apparatus is in front of the wheel, and consists of six small circles marked respectively X, C, M, XM, CM, and M, the divisions on which denote units of the denominations of the respective circles ; in other words, the X index in one revolution passes over its ten divisions, and registers ( $10 \times 10$ ), or 100 feet ; the C index, in the same way, 1000 feet, and so on, up to 10,000,000 feet ; so that an observer has only to record the position of the several indices at the first observation (by writing the lowest of the two figures on the respective circles between which the index points in their proper order), and deduct the amount from their position at his second observation, to ascertain the velocity of

---

\* This quantity of air was produced by one furnace 4 feet by 6 feet, and one up-cast of 9 feet diameter.

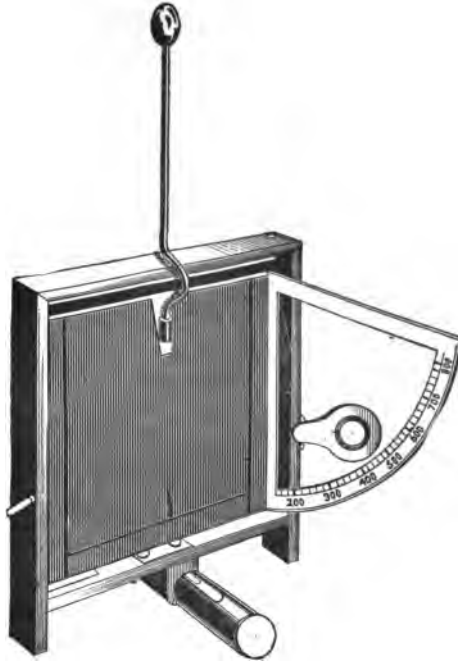
the air which has passed during the interval; this, multiplied by the area in feet of the passage where the instrument is placed, will show the number of cubic feet which have passed during the same period. These anemometers have been much improved recently by Mr. Casartelli, of Manchester, and are made by him.



Casartelli's Improved Biram's Anemometer.

*Son* : Suppose I fix the anemometer in the air-gate, and the number of revolutions be, say 1000 feet; all I have to do, then, is to multiply the area of the passage by the 1000 feet?—

*Father* : Just so. Suppose the area of the air-gate be 16 feet; multiply 16 by 1000, and the result will show 16,000 cubic feet of air which has passed in the space of time you have had it fixed,—maybe in a minute.



Casartelli's Dickinson's Anemometer.

DIRECTIONS FOR USE.

Place the instrument perpendicular by the level. The figures on the quadrant to which the fan is raised show the velocity in feet per minute; the velocity thus ascertained, multiplied by the area, gives the amount of ventilation in cubic feet per minute.

*Father :* This anemometer was suggested by Joseph Dickinson, Esq., inspector of mines, and was arranged and made by Mr. Casartelli, of Manchester. It is much used by underlookers

and deputies. No time for starting and stopping it is required, only to note the velocity of the current, which is marked on the quadrant.

*Son*: Nos. 200, 300, 700, etc., I see on the anemometer. If the force of the air-current should send the fan up to 700, this would show the velocity of the current to be travelling 700 feet per minute?—*Father*: Just so, and that velocity multiplied by the area of the passage would give the quantity of air per minute. Sometimes the current will be intermittent, and the fan will move between two figures or divisions; in this case take the mean between the two figures as the velocity indicated. For example, suppose the fan moves between 300 and 400, the velocity will be 350 feet per minute.

#### **Hall's Anemometer.**

*Son*: You have explained to me the methods of measuring air by the "Biram" and "Dickinson" anemometers: are there any others to which you wish to call my attention?—*Father*: Yes. Mr. Hall, H.M. Inspector of Mines, has recently invented an anemometer by means of which it is possible, not only to measure the air passing through a colliery, but also to register the quantity from hour to hour, so that any change or variation of the current can be seen at a glance; and since this instrument also registers the speed of the ventilating fan, and also the water-gauge pressure, the cause of any such variation can be detected.

*Son*: Tell me, father, how this anemometer you refer to operates, because it appears to be a great improvement on those you have already described?—*Father*: Attempts have often been made to obtain a self-registering anemometer which would bear

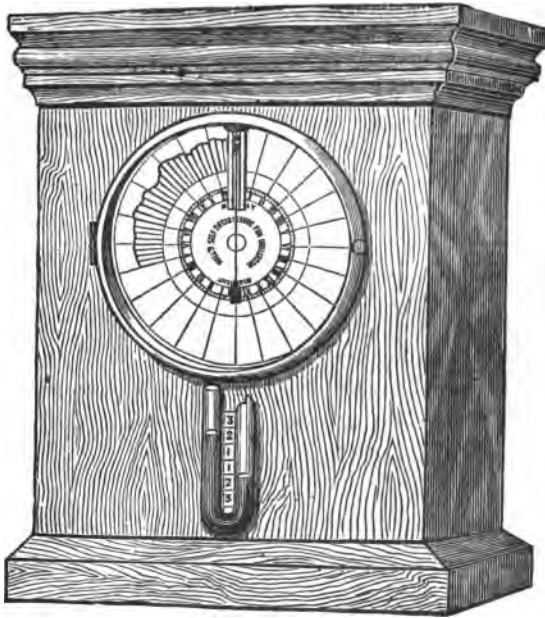
the wear and tear of constant work, but the dust and damp always present in the air-ways of mines quickly wore out such instruments. You can easily understand that such an anemometer as "Biram's," if fixed permanently in a great velocity of wind, would soon fly to pieces; indeed, all instruments with revolving or movable parts are unsuitable for such a purpose. The "Robinson" anemometer, which consists of four semicircular cups placed at the end of arms at right angles to each other, is the only one of the movable anemometers which has been tried with any success. This "Robinson" anemometer does not revolve so rapidly as a "Biram," travelling theoretically at only one-third the speed of the current, whilst the "Biram" travels nearly as quick as the current itself, so that the wear and tear of constant motion in the former is somewhat less; but although this is so, it has been found impossible to keep it in order for any length of time. Mr. Hall's new anemometer has no movable part; it consists simply of hollow tubes of brass or iron converging at both ends to a small diameter in the centre, like two truncated cones joined together at their apexes; these are called venturi tubes, and when a tube of this form is presented with one of its large open ends to a current of air, the air as it passes through travels much quicker at the narrowest or smaller diameter of the tube in precisely the same way as it does through a small regulator in an air-way underground, and this quickened speed causes a certain amount of vacuum at the point in the tube where it occurs,—that is, it has a tendency to pull or drag anything after it in the same way as a railway train dashing through a station catches up any light pieces of paper lying about and carries them forward for some distance in its wake. Advantage is taken of this peculiarity to measure the speed of the current passing through the tube in

the following manner: A small pipe is inserted into the narrowest portion of the tube, and this is connected with an ordinary water-gauge, and it is found that the water stands in one leg a certain height above the other, in exact proportion to the amount of vacuum set up by the speed of the air passing the tube at the narrowest part, and as the speed of the current increases or decreases, so the water rises and falls. Then, by experiment, certain heights of the one leg of water above the other are found to represent fixed velocities, and having got the velocity in this way the total quantity of air is computed as with any other anemometer. With a single tube as described a velocity of current equal to 1000 feet per minute will show a quarter of an inch of water-gauge; and when a second tube of smaller size is inserted within the first, the registration increases to one inch; and on a third of still smaller size being introduced, the registration amounts to about four inches, although the speed of the current still remains at 1000 feet per minute. The rapid increase in the elevation of the water on the second and third tube being introduced arises from the fact that the exit ends of these latter terminate exactly where a partial vacuum is already existing from the action of the first tube, the one thus assisting the other and causing the air to travel at a very high speed through the smallest tube, and thus a much greater vacuum is formed, and the amount of such vacuum is shown by the water-gauge.

*Son*: How does the water-gauge show the vacuum set up in the smallest tube?—*Father*: The small pipe to which the water-gauge is attached is passed through the outer tubes and is inserted into the smallest or innermost tube at the point where it is narrowest,—that is, at the point of smallest diameter.

*Son*: I understand; and as you have explained that the exit

end of each smaller tube terminates where a partial vacuum already exists, through the action of its predecessor, it is easy to understand that the same pressure of wind beating against the entrance end of the smallest tube will cause air to rush through



Hall's Self-registering Ventilation Indicator, manufactured by John Woods, Clock and Scientific Instrument Maker, Rainhill, Lancashire.

at a greatly increased speed, because of the exit end of the tube being in a partial vacuum, as stated.—*Father* : Yes, quite so ; this arrangement of the venturi tubes was contrived by M. Bourdon, of Paris, and when used in conjunction with the self-regis-

tering apparatus invented by Mr. Hall, it affords a reliable means of detecting any variation in the quantity of ventilation passing through a colliery.

*Son* : Does Mr. Hall's apparatus depend upon electricity ?—

*Father* : No ; it is found that electricity is troublesome, and he adopts a much simpler plan. The small tube, which I have already mentioned as being put in connection with the anemometer, is prolonged or extended to some convenient place, such as the manager's office, and the rise and fall of the water is made to move a marking pencil over a dial, kept in motion by clock-work, and thus a diagram is traced showing the strength of ventilation at any hour of the day or night.

*Son* : Yes, I understand ; but you said that the instrument also exhibited the speed of the fan.—*Father* : That is so ; a little valve is placed in the pipe, and at every five-hundredth revolution of the fan engine this valve is opened for a few seconds, allowing outside air to flow into the pipe, and causing the water-gauge to fall to zero for an instant, and each time that this occurs a downward stroke is marked on the diagram.

*Son* : Are there any of these instruments in practical operation at collieries ?—*Father* : Yes ; there are several working successfully.

*Son* : I thank you for the information, father, on mines. I had no idea our conversation would have continued so long, and yet I am glad it has done so. I have more information now than I had before, for which I am thankful.—*Father* : My object is to do all the good I can. I take pleasure in doing so,—in putting, if possible, the right man in the right place ; in helping those who cannot help themselves ; and in giving knowledge to those who require it. You have a knowledge of gases : how mines

discharge gases ; why one discharges more gas than another ; the cause of some mines discharging a mixture of gases ; how a change in the weather affects the workings of a mine ; the power of an explosion, and how to diminish that power ; how air is propelled down and around the workings of a mine ; several ways of ventilation ; the danger of one and the safety of another ; the friction of the air in mines ; the great friction produced by one mode of ventilation, and how it can be reduced by another ; several ways by which friction is produced ; the power of the furnace, and the quantity of air produced by an increased power ; several ways by which coal is worked out in mines ; why so many ways are adopted ; and also who are the best and most competent persons to manage the underground workings of mines ; of surveying and also laying the workings on a plan. I must now, my son, draw to a close. I hope what I have said you will inwardly digest, so that my labor bestowed upon you will not be in vain. If I have been successful, I shall be well rewarded, my object being to give you and all others information on this subject. My wish is, if ever you have charge of the underground workings, do that which is right so far as is in your power, both to the employer and the employed. Give to every person his right and due. Do not give away your master's money, unless you have labor equivalent for it, as his money is not yours. Neither give away the workmen's labor to the master, for by so doing you rob them of their rights and living. Do to each as you would wish each to do to you. Study to be upright in all your dealings with every person, remembering that life is only of short duration, so that you may be found right for the life to come.

*Son :* It is your will, I know, father, for me to do what is right

*m*

and just, and I hope it will always be my endeavor so to do ; if not, I may expect to be beaten with many stripes.—*Father* : If all people go astray, you are not justified in doing wrong. Never take advantage of a person because his profession of religion be not the same as yours ; if he is sincere in his worship, look upon him as a friend and brother.

# QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

WRITTEN FOR THE ASSISTANCE OF PERSONS INTENDING TO

## COMPETE FOR CERTIFICATES

AS

MANAGERS, OVERMEN, UNDERLOOKERS, DEPUTIES,  
AND FIREMEN OF COLLIERIES.

---

*Examiners*: We presume you to be a steady, sober, and attentive person?—*Applicant*: I have not had any intoxicating drinks for years.

*Examiners*: Can you show any proof of your sobriety and attentiveness?—*Applicant*: I have a note from my employer whom I have served for years, one from the manager of the colliery, and another from our minister; and I have also a temperance certificate.

*Examiners*: You have had a situation, no doubt, in mines?—*Applicant*: I have worked my way up from a fireman to a deputy, and from a deputy to an underviewer or underlooker.

*Examiners*: Are you, then, a thorough practical man?—*Applicant*: My experience in mines began in early life.

*Examiners*: Have you a knowledge of mathematics?—*Applicant*: A little; but I am self-taught.

*Examiners*: You have some knowledge, we presume, of decimals and fractions, etc., etc.?—*Applicant*: Yes. My knowl-

edge of figures will enable me to measure, I think, anything required in the management of mines.

*Examiners* : You will be glad to give us, no doubt, a proof of your knowledge?—*Applicant* : I will give you a few examples with which most things in mines and collieries can be measured, or the contents obtained ; such as pit-boxes, wagons, air-ways, currents of air, timber, coal, circular measurements, or other cubic contents. Here they are :

“CROSS MULTIPLICATION.”

The following will give you a knowledge how to find the area of any air-passage.

<i>Ft.</i>	<i>In.</i>		<i>Ft.</i>	<i>In.</i>	
7	9		9	8	
3	6		7	6	
<hr/>			<hr/>		
21	0		63	0	
2	3		4	8	
3	6		4	6	
	4	6	4	0	
<hr/>			<hr/>		
27	1	6	72	6	0

Another a little more difficult.

<i>Ft.</i>	<i>In.</i>	<i>P.</i>		
240	10	8		
	9	4	6	
<hr/>				
2160	6			
	7	6		
		6	0	
80	0			
		8	4	
			2	8
10	0	0		
		5	0	
			4	0
<hr/>				
2258	4	0	0	0

To find the following area will yet be a little more difficult.

*Ft. In. P.*  
 7 5 9  
 3 5 8

21 0  
 1 8  
 2 8  
 2 11  
 2 1  
 3 9  
 1 9  
 1 8  
 2 8  


---

 25 8 6 2 8

*Ft. In. P.*  
 868 7 5  
 187 8 4

2576 0  
 11040 0  
 86800 0  
 79 11  
 4 9 1  
 .245 4  
 4 8  
 8 4  
 10 2 8  
 2 4  
 1 8  


---

 50756 7 10 9 8

The cubic contents of a coal wagon, a box, or any cubical measurement.

*Ft. In. P.*  
 1 7 6  
 1 1 6

1 0  
 7 0  
 6 0  
 1 0  
 7 0  
 6 0  
 6 0  
 8 6  
 8 0  


---

 1 9 11 8 0  
 20 6  


---

 20 0  
 15 0  
 1 6 4  
 5 0  
 6 0  
 4 6  
 5 6  
 1 6  


---

 37 5 8 7 6  
 16

The cubic contents of another.

<i>Ft.</i>	<i>In.</i>	<i>P.</i>
1	2	9
1	2	9
<hr/>		
1	0	
	2	0
		9 0
	2	0
		4 0
		1 6
		9 0
		1 6
		6 9
<hr/>		
1	6	1 6 9
19	0	0 0 0
<hr/>		
19	0	
	9	6
		1 7
		9 6
		1 2 3
<hr/>		
28	8	5 8 8

<i>Ft.</i>	<i>In.</i>
16	9
6	6
<hr/>	
96	0
	4 6
	8 0
	4 6
<hr/>	
108	10 6
	8 4 6
<hr/>	
864	0
	6 8
	4 0
86	0
	3 4
	2 0
	4 6 0
	5 0
	3 0
<hr/>	
911	9 11 3 0

Another a little more difficult.

<i>Ft.</i>	<i>In.</i>
97	5
18	3
<hr/>	
776	0
970	0
	7 6
24	3
	1 3
<hr/>	
1777	10 3
	2 3
<hr/>	
3554	0
	1 8
	6 0
444	3
	2 6
	9 0
<hr/>	
4000	2 0 9 0

The cubic contents of a coal box, length 2 feet 5½ inches by 2 feet 7¼ inches, depth 2 feet 4¼ inches.

<i>Ft.</i>	<i>In.</i>	<i>P.</i>
2	5	6
2	7	8
<hr/>		
4	0	
	10	0
	1	0
1	2	
	2	11
	0	8 6
	0	6 0
	0	1 8
	0	1 6
<hr/>		
6	4	9 10 6
2	4	9
<hr/>		
12	0	
	8	0
	1	6
	1	8
		1 0
2	0	
	1	4
	8	0
		8 4
		2 0
4	9	
	8	0
	6	9
		7 6
		4 6
<hr/>		
15	4	8 7 10 10 6

<i>Ft.</i>	<i>In.</i>	<i>P.</i>
0	8	0
0	8	0
<hr/>		
0	5	4
10	0	0
<hr/>		
4	2	
	8	4
<hr/>		
4	5	4

To find the area of a pit 13 feet in diameter :

13	diameter multiplied by 13.
13	
<hr style="width: 50px; margin: 0;"/>	
39	
13	
<hr style="width: 50px; margin: 0;"/>	
169	
.7854	
<hr style="width: 50px; margin: 0;"/>	
676	
845	
1852	
1188	182 feet area, .7826 being
<hr style="width: 50px; margin: 0;"/>	decimals, near 182½ feet
132.7326	area.

To find circumference of a 13-foot pit :

3.1416
13
<hr style="width: 50px; margin: 0;"/>
94248
31416
<hr style="width: 50px; margin: 0;"/>
40.8408

Circumference  $40\frac{1}{2}$  feet. See also pages 161 to 165 for more decimal measurements.

*Examiners* : The measurements are useful for colliery work. You are able, we presume, to survey with a dial the workings of a mine?—*Applicant* : Yes, and also to survey with the theodolite and lay the workings on plan.

*Examiners* : Then you can land survey, no doubt?—*Applicant* : I am able to do land surveying ; but, you know, I am self-taught, not having spent any time in a surveyor's office.

*Examiners* : We require you to produce a plan of the workings of a mine surveyed and planned by yourself, and another on land surveying ; or else give some other proof that you are able to survey, etc.—*Applicant* : I have a number of plans ;

they are not so well finished as they might have been had I served my time in a surveyor's office, but I know they are correct.

*Examiners:* Have you a perfect and thorough knowledge of mine gases?—*Applicant:* I think so.

*Examiners:* What do you know of mine gases?—*Applicant:* The atmosphere, I know, is a compound, or a mechanical mixture; in 100 parts it consists of 21 parts of oxygen and 79 parts of nitrogen, or 1 part oxygen and 4 parts nitrogen. Oxygen gas is a supporter of combustion, and, if left to exert its native energies, it would melt the hardest substances and set the earth in flames; everything would blaze with a rapidity which would carry destruction through the whole expanse of nature; oxygen would feed the flames on every side, and set at defiance the united efforts of every engine in the fire-brigade. It is not so with nitrogen, the other ingredient of the atmosphere. If the air consisted of nitrogen only, every species of fire and flame would be extinguished, and all the tribes of animated nature instantly destroyed. Nitrogen, therefore, is not a supporter of combustion, but it is made in order to temper down or dilute the excessive strength of the oxygen.

*Examiners:* You have a knowledge, no doubt, of the composition of fire-damp?—*Applicant:* I think so. It is also a compound, and consists of two gases, hydrogen and carbon; in, say 5 feet of fire-damp, 4 parts are hydrogen and 1 part carbon. Hydrogen is combustible only in oxygen or air, but does not itself support combustion. Carbon is the chief constituent of coal, and is an ingredient in the composition of animals and plants.

*Examiners:* Do you know what after-damp consists of?—

*Applicant* : Yes. It is composed of three gases & ingredients.

*Examiners* : What are they?—*Applicant* : In 11 parts of after-damp, 1 part consists of carbonic acid gas, 2 parts of watery vapor, and 8 parts of nitrogen. Carbonic acid gas, or black-damp, is a positive poison, nitrogen merely poisons by excluding oxygen,—that is to say, carbonic acid gas lays violent hands upon its victim and kills him at once, while nitrogen starves him to death by excluding all nourishment, therefore it is death to all who breathe it.

*Examiners* : From a few gases, then, nearly all other gases, when mixed, are obtained?—*Applicant* : Yes. Air, water, explosive gas, after-damp, and carbonic acid gas are obtained from only four gases.

*Examiners* : Name the four gases?—*Applicant* : They are the following :

	Symbol.	Atomic Weight.
Hydrogen . . . . .	H . . . . .	1
Oxygen . . . . .	O . . . . .	16
Nitrogen . . . . .	N . . . . .	14
Carbon . . . . .	C . . . . .	12

*Examiners* : We presume you know the weight or specific gravity of mine gases?—*Applicant* : The specific gravity of the atmosphere is 1.000, fire-damp 0.555, and carbonic acid gas, or black-damp, is 1.524.

*Examiners* : Do the variations in the weight of such gases affect mines?—*Applicant* : Yes, mines are affected in the following manner : fire-damp being only 0.555, is little more than half the weight of the atmosphere, 1.000, and as such is the case, fire-damp makes its way up into every hole in the roof and into

all workings which are very high, and to bring such gas down from those high places both a propelling force in the current and a large quantity of it also is required.

*Examiners*: Does black-damp also affect mines by its great weight?—*Applicant*: Black-damp, or carbonic acid gas, being 1.524, is one-third heavier than the atmosphere, 1.000, and near two-thirds heavier than fire-damp, 0.555, and as such is the case it settles down to the floor, like mud in water, and fills the lowest workings, and to bring black-damp up and away therefrom a strong propelling force in the ventilating current is required, and if the propelling force in the current is not sufficiently strong, the air will pass through the gas and not bring it away.

*Examiners*: How are mine gases discharged or produced?—

*Applicant*: Just in the same manner as steam is discharged from a boiler when much compressed, when the weight on the valve is insufficient to keep it in. The strata in mines is pressed with gases to overflowing, and when gas discharges therefrom it is at the time when the atmospheric weight is insufficient to keep it in.

*Examiners*: How is it that a mine gives off a certain quantity of gas one day and a much larger quantity on another?—

*Applicant*: That is owing to the change in the atmospheric weight, which weight varies from one day to another. Just in like manner if the weight on a boiler valve be reduced just at the time when steam is blowing off, an increase in the quantity of steam will take place, and so an increase in the quantity of escape gas will take place if the atmospheric weight be reduced when gas is discharging.

*Examiners*: But every mine does not give off alike the same quantity of gas, although the atmospheric weight be reduced

from all mines alike, and at one and the same time. How is that?—*Applicant*: I know mines do not all discharge the same quantity of gas, and yet the atmospheric weight may be reduced at the same time from each of them; that is owing to the variation in the compression of gas in the strata, caused by the fact that some mines have been discharging gas longer than others have; in like manner one boiler is less compressed with steam than others, because of its having been blowing off longer.

*Examiners*: But when mines are first opened out they do not all give off alike the same quantity of gas; some may discharge a large quantity, others little or no gas. How is that?—

*Applicant*: The strata from the bottom to the surface in some mines is more open than in others, and where the strata is open, gas escapes to the surface and never can accumulate in the mine; therefore, when the mine is opened out no gas or very little is found, while in others with no open strata a large quantity is found.

*Examiners*: Do you know how a motion of the current is caused to move along and through the workings of a mine?—

*Applicant*: I think so. Its motion is caused by propulsion or exhaustion at one shaft or at the other; therefore, whether by propulsion or exhaustion, a great moving propelling power in the current is produced at the down-cast over that at the up-cast; the minimum density and weight of the air is always at the up-cast, so that from the first yard at the up-cast the air becomes more and more dense, and, step by step, every yard in the air-way along its route from stage to stage this propelling force increases, until the maximum density and propelling moving weight is obtained at the down-cast, and this motion is the current pro-

duced. (See pages 38 and 39, on ventilating powers, or the current's motion.)

*Examiners* : What mode of ventilation would you adopt in mines discharging explosive gas?—*Applicant* : The mode of separate divisions: I would divide, split, or separate the air into distinct currents or parts of, say 4000 cubic feet of pure air per minute for each separate division.

*Examiners* : Why would you have divisions of air?—*Applicant* : Because by so doing I should prevent explosive gas from collecting in large quantities, as the danger lies in the collecting and exploding of too large a quantity of gas.

*Examiners* : Is it more safe, then, to have divisions?—*Applicant* : Yes, because if 100 feet of gas were discharged per minute in the workings of one division, 500 feet of gas might be discharged in the workings of five divisions, and to ventilate all with one current, the whole volume of 500 feet of gas would be exploded at once, but only one-fifth of it if ventilated separately, and so the power of the explosion would be reduced to one-fifth; the quantity of choke-damp left after the explosion would be reduced to one-fifth; the danger to life would be reduced to one-fifth; and the quantity of air obtained by having divisions would be much increased, because the friction of the current would be much diminished. (See pages 73, 118, 126, 127, 129, for plans.)

*Examiners* : You know, then, what is meant by friction in the air-current?—*Applicant* : It is a rubbing of the air-current along the roof, floor, and sides in its passage through the mine.

*Examiners* : What steps would you take to reduce its friction?—*Applicant* : I would shorten its route by making divisions, or enlarge the passage through which it had to pass. (See page 98.)

*Examiners*: What plan would you adopt in the working out of coal?—*Applicant*: In every mine the one that would suit the nature of the roof, floor, coal, etc.

*Examiners*: Could you adopt a plan suitable alike for all mines?—*Applicant*: Impossible, except there were no change in the roof, floor, etc. If it were so, then one plan of working out coal would do for every mine; but as it is not, I must first obtain a knowledge of the nature of the roof, etc., to enable me to adopt a plan suitable for the mine intended to work the coal out.

*Examiners*: We presume you know several ways, then, of working out coal?—*Applicant*: I have a knowledge of pillar-working, bank- or wide-work, drifts, and long-wall-work, etc., etc. (See page 114 on working coal plans.)

*Examiners*: Have you superintended the sinking of pits or shafts?—*Applicant*: I have done a little of that, having had to measure the sinking of shafts, and having been present when putting in rings, water-tables, and walling of shafts, etc.

*Examiners*: Have you had anything to do with engines, boilers, and furnaces, both above and below ground?—*Applicant*: I have some knowledge of such, but have not superintended the erection of the same.

*Examiners*: Can you calculate the nominal horse-power of a steam-engine?—*Applicant*: I think so.

*Examiners*: We will suppose, then, the diameter of the cylinder to be 55 inches, travelling 200 feet per minute, and 7 lbs. pressure on the piston: let us know its nominal horse-power?—*Applicant*: I will calculate its power in the following manner:

55	diameter multiplied by
55	
<hr/>	
275	
275	
<hr/>	
3025	
.7854	
<hr/>	
12100	
15125	
24200	
21175	
<hr/>	
2875.8350	square inches in the cylinder.
220	speed of the piston.
<hr/>	
475167000	
47516700	
<hr/>	
522683.7000	
7	average pressure on piston.

Divided by 33000)3658785.9000(110 horse-power.  
33000

---

35878  
33000  

---

28785 remainder.

*Examiners :* We will speed the engine to 360 feet per minute, and an average pressure on the piston of 20 lbs. per square inch above the pressure of the atmosphere : let us know its nominal horse-power?—*Applicant :* I will do that.

2875.8350	square inches in cylinder.
360	speed of the piston.
<hr/>	
1425501000	
71275050	
<hr/>	
8553006000	
20	average pressure on piston.
<hr/>	
17106012.0000	carried forward.

Divided by 33000)17106012.0000(518 horse-power.

165000

60601

33000

276012

264000

12012 remainder.

*Examiners* : Can you give the quantity of water a pump will lift, 12 inches diameter, 66 inches stroke, and 27 strokes per minute?—*Applicant* : I will try to give the quantity.

12 diameter multiplied by  
12

144

.7854 decimal area.

144 circular inches multiplied by

31416

31416

7854

118.0976 square inches of pump-barrel.  
66 length of stroke.

6785856

6785856

7464.4416 cubic inches.  
27 strokes per minute.

522510912

149288832

Divided by 277.274)201539.9282(726 gallons.

1940918

744812

554548

1902648

1668644

238.9992 = 238 inches and 9992 decimals over.

## WEIGHT OF WATER.

1 cubic foot 62.5 lbs.  
 1 cubic foot 6.25 gallons nearly.  
 1 gallon 10 lbs.  
 1.8 cubic feet 1 cwt.  
 35.84 cubic feet 1 ton.  
 11.2 gallons 1 cwt.  
 224 gallons 1 ton.  
 277.274 cubic inches 1 gallon.

*Examiners*: Do you understand hydrostatics, or the pressure, motion, and force of fluids?—*Applicant*: I profess to know a little of that.

*Examiners*: Suppose a cask was filled with liquid and a long tube inserted tightly into the top, the area of the cask being 2000 inches and the area of the tube one-tenth of a square inch: what pressure would be produced by pouring 3 lbs. of water into the tube?—*Applicant*: I will try to give its pressure.

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 10 & \text{area of tube.} & \\
 3 & \text{lbs. of water.} & \\
 \hline
 80 & \text{lbs.' pressure per square inch.} & \\
 2000 & \text{area of cask.} & \\
 \hline
 60000 & \text{lbs.' pressure.} & \\
 1 \text{ cwt.} = 112 & 60000(535 \text{ cwts., } 80 \text{ lbs.} & \\
 & 560 & \\
 \hline
 & 400 & \\
 & 836 & \\
 \hline
 & 640 & \\
 & 560 & \\
 \hline
 & 80 &
 \end{array}$$

This will show 535 cwts. and 80 lbs. of pressure produced by 3 lbs. of water.

*Examiners* : Suppose two circular boards form a pair of bellows, a long tube half a square inch is inserted into the top, the area of the board is 144 square inches ; pour into the tube 2 lbs. of water (after the bellows has been partly filled with water) : what pressure will be produced?—*Applicant* : The pressure produced by the 2 lbs. of water will be 576 lbs.

$$\begin{array}{rcl} 144 & \text{area of bellows.} & \\ 4 & \text{lbs.' pressure per square inch.} & \\ \hline 576 & \text{lbs. of pressure produced.} & \end{array}$$

The weight and pressure of fluids lead to many strange and important results.

*Examiners* : You have some knowledge, no doubt, of pneumatics?—*Applicant* : I also understand a little of that science, such as the mechanical properties of the atmosphere, its resistance, its pressure, its elasticity ; and how the air acts on barometers, siphons, syringes, air-pumps, water-pumps, fire-engines, etc., etc.

*Examiners* : Have you a knowledge of mechanics?—*Applicant* : I have some knowledge of the mechanical laws of motion, such as the inclined plane, the wedge, the screw, the pulley, the lever, and the balance ; so that I know if power be gained there is loss in velocity. (It would be well for applicants to study much the above sciences.)

*Examiners* : Do you know the strength of materials, the breaking strain of chains, hemp ropes, steel and wire ropes, the strength of iron and timber?—*Applicant* : I have some tables and rules to show the same.

*Examiners* : Let us see them.—*Applicant* : Here they are :

## STRENGTH OF MATERIALS.

To find the breaking strain of hemp ropes.\*

Breaking weights in tons =  $\frac{\text{circumference squared in inches.}}{4}$

*Examiners:* What is the breaking weight of a rope eight inches in circumference?—*Applicant:* You may find it in the following manner:

$$\frac{8 \times 8}{4} = 16 \text{ tons.}$$

To find the weight which may be safely appended to a hemp rope:

$$W = \frac{\text{circumference squared in inches.}}{10}$$

*Examiners:* What weight might be safely appended to a hemp rope ten inches in circumference?—*Applicant:* Here you have it:

$$\frac{10^2}{10} = 10 \text{ tons. Answer.}$$

## COLUMNS.

*Table of practical formulæ by which to determine the amount of weight a column of given dimensions will support, in pounds.*

For a rectangular column of cast iron . . . . .	$W = \frac{15300 \text{ l } b^3}{4 b^2 + .18 l^2}$
For a rectangular column of malleable iron . . .	$W = \frac{17800 \text{ l } b^3}{4 b^2 + .16 l^2}$
For a rectangular column of oak . . . . .	$W = \frac{3960 \text{ l } b^3}{4 b^2 + .5 l^2}$
For a solid cylinder of cast iron . . . . .	$W = \frac{9562 \text{ d}^4}{4 d^2 + .18 l^2}$
For a solid cylinder of malleable iron . . . . .	$W = \frac{11125 \text{ d}^3}{4 d^2 + .16 l^2}$
For a solid cylinder of oak . . . . .	$W = \frac{2470 \text{ d}^4}{4 d^2 + .5 l^2}$

NOTE.—W = the weight the column will support in lbs.; b = the breadth in inches; l = the length in feet; d = the diameter in inches.

\* Tables are to be had showing the breaking strain of ropes, etc. If the applicant be in possession of them, the examiners should be satisfied.

*To find the ultimate transverse strength of timber.*

When the beam is supported at both ends and loaded in the middle:

Let  $L$  = length in inches.

$B$  = breadth     "

$D$  = depth       "

$$M = \begin{cases} 1672 \text{ for English oak.} \\ 1556 \text{ for beech.} \\ 1018 \text{ for elm.} \\ 1682 \text{ for pitch pine.} \\ 1841 \text{ for red pine.} \\ 900 \text{ for larch.} \end{cases}$$

$$W = \frac{D^2 \times B \times 4 \times M}{L}$$

$$\text{or } W = \frac{4 D \times B D \times M}{L}$$

*Examiners* : What weight will it require to break a beam of pitch pine, supported at both ends and loaded in the middle, the breadth being seven inches, depth nine inches, and length thirteen feet?—*Applicant* : You may find the same thus :

$$\frac{9^2 \times 7 \times 4 \times 1682}{156 \text{ ins.}} = 23727 \text{ lbs.}$$

The above result must be multiplied by three if the load is distributed uniformly along its entire length. It may easily be remembered, what may be learned from the above rule, that the strength of timber varies as the square of the depth multiplied by the breadth. Thus a plank  $11 \times 8$  laid flatways would bear little more than one-fourth of the weight that it would sustain edgeways, because  $3 \times 11 = 99$  and  $11^2 \times 8 = 368$ . A plank of pitch pine of these dimensions, and 7 ft. in length between the supports, would bear—

$$\text{Flatways } \frac{4 \times 8 \times 11 \times 8 \times 1632}{84} = 6698 \text{ lbs.}$$

$$\text{Edgeways } \frac{4 \times 11 \times 8 \times 11 \times 1632}{84} = 28210 \text{ lbs.}$$

2. When the beam is supported at one end and loaded at the other—

$$\frac{D^2 \times B \times M}{L}$$

*Examiners* : What weight will break a beam of larch fixed at one end and loaded at the other, the breadth being 5 inches, depth 7 inches, and length 5 feet 6 inches?—*Applicant* : Here you have it :

$$\frac{5^2 \times B \times 900}{66} = 2386 \text{ lbs.}$$

The beam, if loaded in the middle, will bear half as much more weight, and if loaded uniformly along the entire length, the above result must be doubled.

These rules show how to find the weight that will **BREAK** the beams ; the weight that may be safely placed upon them is not more than one-fourth to one-third.

*Examiners* : Please give the size, weight, and strength of round and flat ropes.—*Applicant* : You have here tables showing these qualities in flat and round ropes of various materials and sizes.

ROUND Steel Wire Ropes.		ROUND Iron Wire Ropes.		ROUND Hemp Ropes of Equivalent Strength.			
Circumference.	Weight per Fm.	Circumference.	Weight per Fm.	Circumference.	Weight per Fm.	Working Load.	Breaking Strain.
<i>Inches.</i>	<i>Lbs.</i>	<i>Inches.</i>	<i>Lbs.</i>	<i>Inches.</i>	<i>Lbs.</i>	<i>Cuts.</i>	<i>Tons.</i>
3½	11	4½	18	12	32	108	34
3½	9½	4½	16	11	30	96	29
3½	8½	4	14	10	28	84	25
3	7½	3½	13	9½	26	78	23
2½	7	3½	11½	9	22	70	21
2½	6	3½	11	8½	20	66	19
2½	5½	3½	9½	8	16	57	17
2½	4½	3½	8½	7½	14	50	15
2½	4½	3	7½	7	12	45	14
2½	4	2½	7	6½	10	42	13
2½	3½	2½	6	6	9	36	11
2	3½	2½	5½	5½	8	34	10
1½	3	2½	4½	5	7	28	9
1½	2½	2½	4½	4½	6½	27	8
1½	2½	2½	4	4½	6	24	7
1½	2½	2½	3½	4	5	22	6½
1½	2½	2½	3½	3½	4½	20	6
1½	1½	1½	3	3½	4	18	5
1½	1½	1½	2½	3	3½	15	4
1½	1½	1½	1½	2½	3	10	3
1½	1½	1½	1½	2½	2½	8	2½
1½	1½	1½	1½	2	2	6	2
1½	1½	1½	1	2	1½	4	1½
1½	1½	1½	¾	1½	1	3	1
1½	1½	1½	¾	1½	¾	1½	¾

FLAT Steel Wire Ropes.		FLAT Iron Wire Ropes.		FLAT Hemp Ropes of Equivalent Strength.			
Size in Inches.	Weight per Fm.	Size in Inches.	Weight per Fm.	Size in Inches.	Weight per Fm.	Working Load.	Breaking Strain.
<i>Inches.</i>	<i>Lbs.</i>	<i>Inches.</i>	<i>Lbs.</i>	<i>Inches.</i>	<i>Lbs.</i>	<i>Cuts.</i>	<i>Tons.</i>
8½ by 18	18	4½ by 30	30	8½ by 2½	46	120	46
3 " 16	16	4½ " 27	27	7½ " 2½	40	108	40
2½ " 14	14	4 " 24	24	7 " 1½	36	96	36
2½ " 12½	12½	3½ " 22	22	6½ " 1½	32	88	32
2 " 10	10	3½ " 20	20	6 " 1½	28	80	28
1½ " 8	8	3 " 18	18	5½ " 1½	27	72	27
		3 " 16	16	5½ " 1½	26	64	26
		2½ " 14	14	5½ " 1½	24	56	24
		2½ " 12	12	5 " 1½	22	48	22
		2 " 10	10	4 " 1½	20	40	20
		1½ " 8	8	3 " 1	16	32	16

*Examiners:* Let us have the strength of chains. *Applicant:* I will.

TABLE OF THE WEIGHT AND STRENGTH OF CHAINS.

Diameter.	Weight per Fathom.	Proof Strength.	Diameter.	Weight per Fathom.	Proof Strength.
<i>Inches.</i>	<i>Lbs.</i>	<i>Tons.</i>	<i>Inches.</i>	<i>Lbs.</i>	<i>Tons.</i>
$\frac{5}{8}$	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	1.27	$1\frac{1}{8}$	68	26
$\frac{7}{8}$	8	1.82	$1\frac{3}{8}$	76	29
$1\frac{1}{8}$	10 $\frac{1}{2}$	2.5	$1\frac{1}{2}$	84	32
$1\frac{3}{8}$	13 $\frac{3}{4}$	4	$1\frac{5}{8}$	93	35
$1\frac{1}{2}$	17	5	$1\frac{3}{4}$	102	38
$1\frac{5}{8}$	22	6	$1\frac{7}{8}$	111	41
$1\frac{3}{4}$	28	7 $\frac{1}{4}$	$1\frac{7}{8}$	120	44
$1\frac{7}{8}$	30	10	$1\frac{9}{8}$	128	48
$1\frac{7}{8}$	36	11 $\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{9}{8}$	136	52
$1\frac{7}{8}$	42	13	$1\frac{1}{2}$	142	56
$1\frac{7}{8}$	49	15	$1\frac{1}{2}$	148	60
1	55	18	$1\frac{1}{2}$	150	65
$1\frac{1}{8}$	60	22	$1\frac{1}{2}$	162	70
			$1\frac{1}{2}$	171	75
			2	180	80

*Examiners:* We give you now a large number of questions which have been asked now and again at several Boards of Examiners in the United Kingdom. If able to answer them your success is certain.—*Applicant:* I am glad to have the questions previously asked at the several Boards of Examiners; it will be my greatest endeavor to answer such to the best of my ability.

### Mensuration.

1. Give a sketch of a triangle, and find the superficial area, the base 1236 links, and perpendicular height 73 links.
2. Give a sketch of a parallelogram, and find superficial area, 3725 yards by 2935 yards.

3. Give a sketch of a rhombus, and find the area, the length being 37.50 links and 25.75 links wide.

4. Give a sketch of a polygon, and the formula to find the area of any given size.

5. Give a sketch of a circle, and a formula to find superficial area when the diameter is 36 inches.

6. What are the cubical contents of a cylinder 36 inches in diameter and 5 feet 6 inches in length?

7. What are the cubical contents of a cone whose diameter at base is 36 feet and perpendicular height 24 feet?

8. Give a sketch of a trapezium, and a formula to find the areas of the two triangles, the diagonal being 100 yards and perpendiculars 35 and 65 yards respectively.

9. How would you measure an air-way when the sides, roof, and floor are very irregular?

10. Is there more or less rubbing surface in a circular air-way than in any other shapes?

11. What is the sectional area of an air-way when the width is 7 feet 6 inches and average height 5 feet 6 inches?

12. How many cubic feet of air pass per minute along an air-way 8 feet high by 10 feet wide, the velocity of the air-current being 450 feet per minute?

13. How much larger is an air-way 10 feet by 10 feet than one 5 feet by 5 feet, and what is the rubbing surface in each?

14. How much larger is an air-way 6 feet by 6 feet than one of 10 feet by 2 feet, and what is the rubbing surface in each?

15. If there were four air-ways 4 feet by 4 feet each, what would be the area and rubbing surface of all? Also, the area and rubbing surface of one 8 feet by 8 feet? Say whether in the former or in the latter would the largest quantity of air pass.

16. What is the difference in area between an air-way 4 feet 6 inches by 3 feet and one 6 feet 6 inches by 5 feet, and give rubbing surface in each?

17. Give the formula to find the circumference of a shaft, the diameter being 14 feet 6 inches.

18. Give the formula to find the area of a 15-foot-diameter shaft.

19. Give the formula to find the area of the sides of a shaft, the diameter being 13 feet and depth 150 yards.

20. Give the formula to find cubical contents of a shaft, diameter 12 feet 6 inches and the depth 220 yards.

21. Give the formula to find what quantity of bricks a shaft will take, 9 inches work, diameter 15 feet, and depth 156 yards.

22. How would you find the horse-power of a condensing engine, diameter of cylinder 20 inches, pressure on piston 7 lbs. per square inch, and 150 feet per minute speed of piston?

23. How would you find the horse-power of high-pressure steam-engine, with the cylinder 24 inches in diameter and pressure on piston 16 lbs. per square inch, speed of piston 200 feet per minute?

24. What is the weight of water contained in a pipe 1 foot long by 10 inches diameter?

25. What is the weight of water contained in a fathom of pipes 15 inches in diameter, and the number of gallons?

26. What is the pressure of water in pipes per square inch in pounds, the diameter 12 inches and height of pipes 250 feet?

27. What is the weight in lbs., measure in gallons, and cubic inches of water contained in a shaft 15 feet in diameter and 1 foot deep?

28. What is the weight in lbs., measure in gallons, and cubic

inches of water contained in pipes 13 inches in diameter and 100 feet in length ?

29. What is the weight of 12 cubic inches of water ?

30. What is the weight of 1 cubic foot of water in lbs. and measure in gallons ?

31. How would you find the number of Imperial gallons contained in a cistern 14 feet by 20 feet by 10 feet ?

32. What is the weight in ounces of a cubic foot of water at 60 degrees ?

33. What are the cubical contents in inches in the Imperial gallon ?

34. How many bricks can there be made out of 2 cubic yards of strong clay ?

35. How many bricks can be made out of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  cubic yards of mild clay ?

36. How many bricks of the ordinary size can there be made out of an acre of strong clay, 4840 square yards, and 1 foot deep ?

37. Add together 507 tons 13 cwt. 2 qrs. 12 lbs.

1670 " 15 " 1 " 8 "

47 " 14 " 3 " 14 "

490 " 9 " 2 " 7 "

38. How much would be required to pay 75 men a fortnight's wages, at the rate of 27s.  $4\frac{1}{2}$ d. per week ?

39. What weight of material will have to be raised in a sinking shaft 15 feet by  $5\frac{1}{2}$  feet, and 40 fathoms deep, supposing it averages 130 lbs. per cubic foot ?

40. The sum of two numbers is 37,091, one of them 19,013, what is the other ?

41. Find the square root of 94,206,430.

42. Extract the square root of 3,511,876 and 67,272,804.

43. The average wages of a colliery, per man, were 5s. per day. A first advance of 10 per cent. is given; a second is given of 12 per cent.; a third of 15 per cent.,—all upon the gross earnings. What is the average of these advances? Reductions are made on the gross earnings: first, of 15 per cent.; second, of  $12\frac{1}{2}$  per cent.; third, of 10 per cent. What would be the average wages after these reductions?

44. Subtract 273 chains 11 yards 2 feet 10 inches from 500 chains 17 yards 1 foot 1 inch.

45. Divide 13 acres 2 roods 6 perches by 19, and 3132.71 by 73.700.

46. What are the areas of air-ways 4 feet 3 inches by 3 feet 9 inches, and 4 feet 5 inches by 6 feet 2 inches? What is the total of the two?

47. Deduct 57 acres 1 rood 27 perches from 91 acres 2 roods 17 perches, and find the value of the difference at £100 per acre.

48. What is the area of a shaft 9 feet 6 inches diameter?

49. What is the circumference of a circle whose radius is 8 feet?

50. Extract the square root of 289, and show the process.

### **Mines Regulation Act, 1872.**

51. When the underground workings are approaching old wastes of which no plans have been kept, what special dangers are the workmen exposed to? How would you guard against them?

52. State shortly the general rules as to the use of gunpowder or other explosive in mines where inflammable gas has been noticed.

53. What is the requirement of the act as to the number of shafts in use at each mine, and state shortly the exceptions to it that may be allowed?

54. In mines where there is inflammable gas, what special precautions are to be observed by the workmen and by those in charge of the mine ?

55. Give a short statement of the requirements of the act regarding man-holes or places of refuge on underground roads.

56. What limitation does the act impose on the employment of young persons between 12 and 16 years of age ?

57. What are the duties of a certificated manager as described by the Coal Mines Regulation Act ?

58. To what extent are single-linked chains prohibited by the Mines Act ?

59. Give a general abstract of the Mines Regulation Act, more especially those clauses relating to the safety of workmen and duties of certificated managers.

60. Under what circumstances would you withdraw the workmen ?

61. State the chief provisions of the Mines Acts of 1872 and 1886 for the safety of mines and miners.

62. What are the regulations as to the employment of women, young persons, and children, as regards their age and hours of employment ?

63. State the provisions of the act as to the ventilation of mines.

64. What are the regulations as to enginemen and firemen ?

65. What precautions are to be adopted in approaching gas or water ?

66. In what words does the act make the ventilation of mines compulsory ?

67. State all you know of the registers required to be kept in or about a mine.

68. To what extent could a ventilating current be charged with fire-damp without being explosive?

69. How does the act provide for the frequent inspection of working places in a mine?

70. What is the general rule in regard to the fencing of places?

71. What is the duty of the person in charge of any part of a mine in case of danger arising from gas, and what should be done before the workmen can be readmitted, according to the general rule?

72. What does the general rule provide for as to gunpowder, —viz., as to storage quantity in one place, charging of it, missed shots, and its use in finding gas in the working places?

73. What notices are required to be given in case of accidents, and to whom should they be sent?

74. What is the general rule as to safety-lamps and lights in places where there is likely to be an accumulation of fire-damp?

75. What does the act specify as to single shafts, the fencing of shafts, mouthings, and entrances?

76. What does the act specify as to signalling, guides, or conductors, if exceeding 50 yards? Also, as to there being sufficient cover overhead in shafts, and single-link chains in raising and lowering persons in shafts?

77. What does the act specify as to the slipping of ropes on drums, engine breaks, indicator to show the position of cage in shaft, fencing of machinery, safety-valves and steam-engines, barometers, thermometers?

78. What does the act specify as to who may be employed about an engine, windlass, and gin?

79. Describe the material you would use in stemming the part

next the powder, what kind of tools you would stem with, and how you would light the shot.

80. What provisions does the act provide for self-acting and engine planes, as regards persons travelling up and down, and also in the horse roads?

81. What is the least thickness to be between two shafts used for the purpose of ingress and egress?

82. What size must the roads be which communicate with the two shafts or outlets of a colliery?

### **Boring, Sinking, Tubbing, Walling, Pumping.**

83. Describe the process in sinking through marls, metals, linstey, rock, burr, and running sand.

84. What size or thickness of brickwork would you put into shafts where marls, metals, linstey, and jointy rock is sunk through, and would it be safe to omit bricking in any of the above metals or rocks?

85. What distance apart would you place walling rings in shafts where marls, metals, linstey, and jointy rock have been passed through? Should they vary in distance, and, if so, state the cause?

86. Describe the method of putting in a length of brickwork in a sinking pit, and what precautions should be taken where gas is given off.

87. After having placed a ring of brickwork in a shaft, and walled it up, how would you proceed with sinking in order to place another ring of brickwork below?

88. Should walling rings be laid level? and how would you lay them so?

89. How and where would you place water-tables in a shaft?

and would you prefer them made of iron, or wood lined with lead? and should they be level or dipping to a point?

90. What is the common source of danger to be guarded against in sinking?

91. What kind of foundation should rings be laid upon to be perfectly safe?

92. Which is the best way of slinging rings in broken ground and making them safe until another length is put in below?

93. How would you sink a shaft perfectly perpendicular and of the proper dimensions?

94. Suppose the metals, or other measures, for the support of rings or brickwork are not good for a long distance, how would you proceed should 18 or 20 yards give way?

95. Which is the best process of tubbing off water and sand? and is iron or wood the most preferable?

96. How would you commence sinking operations in a place where you would have to sink through 30 feet of sand, about 30 feet deep from the surface?

97. If, while sinking a 16-foot shaft, you came upon a sand-bed at 30 yards from the surface and 21 feet in thickness, how would you proceed?

98. Suppose you were sinking a shaft through running sand with a wooden curve or iron castings, and you came upon a very large boulder or hard side, how would you proceed?

99. By what means would you keep tubbing perpendicular in going through sand?

100. Describe what sort of foundation you would rest tubbing upon for safety.

101. Give the size and strength of tubbing for shafts with the following diameters: 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, and 18 feet.

102. How would you make secure a pumping lift in a shaft where it is bricked and tubbed ?

103. How would you proceed with sinking if you came upon a large influx of water ?

104. How would you manage to blast the rock at the bottom of a shaft when much water is always at the bottom ?

105. Describe, by a sketch or otherwise, the different kinds of pumps used in a pit, and also the sliding pipe or suction, and describe its merits.

106. Sketch the form and give the size of shaft for single and double cages, including ordinary provisions for pumping.

107. Describe the general arrangements and size of pipes, and the mode by which 1000 tons of water may be lifted from a 60-fathom pit in 24 hours. Also, give the contents, in cubic feet, of a place 10 yards long, 3 yards wide, and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  yards high. If this place was full of water, how long would it take a pump to empty it, delivering at the rate of 20 gallons a minute, there being  $6\frac{1}{4}$  gallons in a cubic foot ?

108. Describe the class of engine necessary for the above work, with size of cylinder, stroke, and number of strokes per minute.

109. State the different methods of pumping water out of dip workings.

110. State the advantages of a series of lifts of pumps in a deep pit.

111. Suppose the water in a shaft should rise up above the bucket and clack doors, how would you proceed to change the bucket or clack piece ?

112. What would be the diameter of working barrel and length of stroke to lift 147 gallons of water at each stroke of the engine ?

113. What is the usual form in which a pit is sunk in this district? Give a reason for this, and state how the work is kept in this form.

114. Explain fully the meaning of the following terms: cradle, ground-crab, spring-hook, and bunton.

115. Describe the best method of timbering, walling, and tubbing a shaft, giving the dimensions of the materials you would use for a 13-foot pit.

116. Describe fully the various kinds of cribs and the method of laying them.

117. Describe the best method of sinking through a quicksand, and what thickness of iron tubbing would be used in a shaft where the head of water is 196 feet and 14 feet diameter.

118. What is the effect of gas behind tubbing, and how would you guard against it?

119. In sinking and opening out a colliery, what is the principle which should guide you in determining the position of the works?

120. What is the proper thickness of brick lining for shafts 9 feet and 6 feet diameter?

121. If you had to tub a 13-foot shaft for a depth of 150 yards, how many and what wedging cribs would you put in, and what strength of tubbing?

122. Describe the process of laying a wedging crib and putting in the tubbing.

123. How would you secure pumps in a sinking pit?

124. In what place have you had the management or superintendence of sinking operations, opening out a seam, and where situated?

125. If in sinking you meet with a strong blower of gas, what steps should be taken to make the shaft in a fit state of working?

126. Can you explain the ordinary method of boring?

127. Is there any particular scale of charges for boring by the ordinary hand method?

128. Is steam-power ever used in boring? Give the systems in use.

129. Can you describe the system of boring by the diamond rock drill?

130. What particulars can you give as to the cost of boring by the diamond rock drill?

131. Can you explain the process of putting tubbing into a shaft?

132. In plugging up the holes in the tubbing, what care is necessary?

133. What provision is sometimes made to allow the safe escape of the confined air?

134. How do you ascertain the amount of pressure which the tubbing has to resist?

135. How do you determine the proper thickness which the cast-iron tubbing should be?

136. Can you explain the action of the lifting pump which raises the water from the mine to the surface?

137. Can you explain the action and working of a forcing pump?

138. How many horse-power would be required to raise 4000 cubic feet of water per hour from a mine 180 fathoms deep?

139. How many gallons of water would a steam-engine of 50 horse-power raise from a depth of 200 fathoms in one hour?

140. What must the horse-power of an engine be to pump 87 feet of water per minute from the depth of 60 fathoms?

141. How many cubic feet of water will an engine of 50 horse-power raise per minute from a depth of 90 fathoms?

142. What time will it take an engine of 40 horse-power to pump 4000 cubic feet of water from a depth of 60 fathoms?

143. Which part of an estate in a coal royalty would be the most advantageous to sink the up- and down-cast shafts, for the better winding of the coal, the better ventilation of, and the better pumping of the water from, the mine?

144. Should the down-cast or the up-cast shaft be the largest, and why so?

#### **Boilers, Engines, and Machinery.**

145. Give a description of the high-pressure steam-engine.

146. Give a description of the Cornish engine, and what sort of valves it has.

147. Give a description of the condensing engine.

148. When the water in a boiler has become dangerously low, what would you do?

149. Describe iron, steel, and wood conductors for winding shafts, and how they are arranged, and which you think the best for safety.

150. Which are the best kinds of pulleys for round and flat hemp, steel, and iron ropes, and give the diameters best suited for different sizes of ropes?

151. Give the diameter, circumference, width, thickness, weight, and strength of round and flat ropes, hempen, iron, and steel, to wind a weight of 2, 3, 4, and 5 tons.

152. Give a description of cages, their weight and strength,

thus: What would have to be the strength of a 1-box cage, box weighing  $4\frac{1}{2}$  cwt., and to carry 8 cwt. of coal? Again, what would be the weight and strength of a 2-box cage, boxes weighing  $4\frac{1}{2}$  cwt. each, and to carry 8 cwt?

153. What would have to be the size, stroke, etc., of an engine for lifting 200 tons of coal each day of eight hours out of a 100-fathom pit?

154. What mode would you prefer in hauling coals out of dip workings?

155. Describe the best kinds of boilers and appliances for the safe and economical production of steam.

156. In speaking of machinery, what is meant by horse-power?

157. Describe the fittings of a boiler, more especially those necessary for safety.

158. What is the effect of sediment or incrustation forming in a boiler, and is any danger likely to arise from it?

159. What shafts and plant would be required to raise 100 tons per hour from a coal-field of 2000 acres, 5 feet 6 inches thick, and an average depth of 300 yards?

160. Describe a high-pressure and a condensing engine, showing how to find the indicated and nominal horse-power.

161. What is Richard's Indicator, and how is it used?

162. Give details of the different parts of a high-pressure winding engine whose cylinders are 30 inches in diameter and 5 feet stroke.

163. How many and what sort of boilers would you have to drive them?

164. Give the proper size and strength of boiler plates for high-pressure boilers.

165. What diameter of pumps will an 85-inch cylinder engine work from a depth of 121 fathoms, at a steam pressure of 15 lbs. to the square inch?

166. What horse-power must an engine be to raise 2000 cubic feet of water from a depth of 180 fathoms?

167. What number of boilers 40 feet long and 7 feet diameter would be sufficient to work an 85-inch cylinder engine?

168. How many Imperial gallons per minute of feed-water would be required to supply six boilers of 288 nominal horse-power?

169. What kind of engines would you recommend to raise 1500 cubic feet of water from a depth of 20 yards? Give power of engine, size of cylinder, and lift.

170. What size of hauling engine would be required to draw 100 tons per hour up an incline 1000 yards long, having a gradient of one in six?

171. If an engine with a 4-foot stroke has an initial pressure of 40 lbs. to the square inch, and the steam is cut off at a quarter stroke, what is the pressure at the end of stroke?

172. Give a description of the Lancashire and Cornish boilers, and their mountings.

173. Required the weight on a safety-valve, at 20 inches from the fulcrum, with a pressure of steam of 45 lbs. per square inch.

174. Describe the Watt's indicator.

### **Modes of Coal Working and Opening out of Mines.**

175. What mode of working out coal are you acquainted with?

176. What is meant by pillar- and stall-work, and give a sketch of each?

177. State the ordinary conditions for adopting the long-wall-, stop-, and room-workings.

178. If a seam should have a dip or rise of 1 in 8, sketch what you consider would be a good form of long-wall-working for it, having due regard to its ventilation and the direction of the main road.

179. Under the same conditions, give a sketch of stop- and room-workings.

180. Show also a sketch of the long-wall-working.

181. Under average conditions as regards roof and floor, what dimensions would you give the pillars, and what openings in the stop- and room-workings of a 4-foot seam, 100 fathoms deep, with a view of combining safety with the extraction of the greatest quantity per acre?

182. Explain the size of pillars most suitable for removal, and sketch the safest mode of removing them.

183. How large a bottom stoop or pillar of coal would you leave in to support a 60-fathom pit, and on what principle is this determined?

184. Give a rough section showing the different seams in your district.

185. Give a sketch of other modes of coal working.

186. Why are there several ways of coal working adopted, and why will not one answer for all mines? Give your reasons.

187. What plan of coal getting can be pursued with the greatest economy and safety, as well as to get the greatest quantity daily?

188. What mode of coal getting is the safest as regards gas?

189. How and where would you take the drag of the air with the water-gauge?

190. How is a water-gauge affected when the air-course is suddenly contracted or enlarged?

191. Where would you fix the registering thermometer in an up-cast shaft?

192. What method is adopted for working the steep seams of South Wales?

193. What is the system used in working the Dudley thick or 10-yard coal?

194. How would you support the roof of a mine when working the systems known as board and pillar, also long-wall?

195. Falls of stones are the cause of many accidents. How do you ascertain the danger of a stone?

196. If in driving a heading you meet with a fault throwing the coal down 20 yards, how would you work the coal on the other side?

197. What size of pillars would you leave for the support of the main road and shafts?

198. Have you had any experience in underground haulage? If so, what are the systems?

199. What gradients would you lay out for main roads so as to make the the resistance equal for full and empty trams?

200. What is the least gradient at which a self-acting incline will work?

201. Which is the cheapest mode of conveying coal to the shafts?

#### **Ventilation and Gases in Mines.**

202. Give a description of furnace ventilation, or the best way to construct one, and where to place the same. Give, also, a description of a dumb drift.

203. How would you find the motive column, or difference

between the weight of air in the down-cast and the up-cast shafts?

204. Describe shortly the different modes of artificial and natural ventilation.

205. Explain why artificial ventilation is more reliable than natural.

206. State whether exhaustion or propelling air gives the greatest and safest ventilation, and why. (Give the explanations separately.)

207. Where would you fix the mechanical ventilators to be the most serviceable?

208. Describe how a current is caused to move along the air-ways from the down-cast to the up-cast shaft.

209. What mode of ventilation can be relied upon as the safest? State the reason why.

210. Can you describe any other way to produce more air for the workings than that of dividing the currents? If so, state how you would produce it.

211. What quantity of air per minute does each person, horse, and pony require in a mine where gases are given off from the strata?

212. What mode of ventilation requires the most air-crossings and the least number of air-doors?

213. Why should air-courses have large areas? and under ordinary conditions, as regards gas, what quantity of air should be circulating in a pit with 100 men and 50 horses in it, and what should be the least dimensions of an air-way for that quantity?

214. How do you measure the quantity of air, and at what speed should air travel through workings? Also, if the area of an air-passage be 52 feet square, what velocity must be at-

tained in the air-current to produce 35,000 cubic feet of air per minute?

215. Explain the advantage of splitting the air.

216. If the velocity of a current going at the rate of 5 feet per second had to be increased to 10 feet per second, how much would the ventilating power have to be raised to produce the increased rate?

217. Sketch what you consider a good furnace for a pit with 100 men, and give its dimensions and relative position to the shaft.

218. In driving a heading 200 fathoms long, how would you provide for ventilation?

219. What mode of ventilation reduces the explosive mixture and reduces friction? State the reason why it is so.

220. In what proportion does friction increase? Show several ways how friction increases and diminishes. Also, what is the horse-power expended when the ventilating current measures 65,000 cubic feet per minute and the water-gauge is 0.60 inch?

221. By what means is density increased and diminished?

222. How are mines affected when a change in the weather takes place?

223. Is explosive gas more sensitive to a change in the atmosphere than the mercury in the tube of a barometer?

224. When are mines in the greatest danger, and state how it is caused?

225. How are gases caused to expand out of the strata and, at times, overflow the workings?

226. How does the temperature of the air increase while travelling through the workings, and what are the several causes?

227. By what route would you conduct pure air into the workings and the impure from them?

228. Describe an air-crossing and its use.

229. How would you construct an air-crossing strong enough to withstand an explosion?

230. Describe a regulator and its use.

231. Will a change in the temperature of the air on the surface increase or diminish currents in mines, and, if so, how?

232. Will a change in the atmospheric pressure make a change in the quantity of air in the current?

233. How would you prevent outbursts of gas from the floor and roof?

234. How would you propel explosive gas from high points in the mine?

235. How would you propel carbonic acid gas from the lowest point in the mine?

236. How would you construct stopping so as not to be blown down?

237. What is atmospheric air composed of?

238. What is the composition of fire-damp, or carburetted hydrogen gas?

239. What is the composition of black-damp, or carbonic acid gas?

240. What is the composition of choke- or after-damp?

241. What is the composition of carbonic oxide, or white-damp?

242. What are nitrogen, oxygen, and hydrogen gases?

243. What are the specific gravities of atmospheric air, oxygen, nitrogen, carbonic acid, carburetted hydrogen, hydrogen, and carbonic oxide gases?

244. What are the atomic weights of all the above gases?

245. What are the indications of the presence of all the above gases?

246. What are the properties of nitrogen gas, and will it support combustion or respiration?

247. What are the properties of oxygen gas; will it support combustion, and is it essential to the support of animal life?

248. What are the properties of carbon; does it support combustion, and is it essential to support animal life?

249. What are the properties of carbonic acid gas, and how does it act upon animal life?

250. Is after-damp called by any other name, and how does it act upon animal life?

251. How does carburetted hydrogen gas act upon the animal system?

252. Where is after-damp found after an explosion?

253. Immediately after an explosion in a mine, which of the two shafts would you prefer to descend, the up-cast or down-cast shaft?

254. How does an explosion expend itself,—against the current of air or with it?

255. Which is the greatest explosive mixture? and in what proportions of air and gas will an explosion take place?

256. What is the mixture of explosive gas and atmospheric air when it is so reduced as only to show a blue light on the flame?

257. In what proportions will gas and air have to be mixed in order to extinguish the flame of a lamp?

258. In a mixture of air and gas where safety-lamps are used, what should be done to prevent an explosion should the lamp become filled with flame?

259. Will the flame pass through the gauze if suddenly jerked when in an explosive atmosphere?

260. Why will the flame not pass through the gauze if carried carefully and protected with a shield?

261. How many parallel wires are there to an inch in the gauze of a safety-lamp?

262. How many apertures are there in a square inch of safety-lamp gauze?

263. What is the thickness of a wire from which a safety-lamp gauze is made?

264. How is it that different parts of a mine vary in the quality and quantity of its gases?

265. How would you act should the gas continue to burn in the safety-lamp after drawing down the wick?

266. Describe the Stephenson, Davy, and Clanny safety-lamps. Which do you think the best and safest, and why? and what constitutes their safety?

267. What is gunpowder made of?

268. What is the composition of gunpowder-smoke?

269. How would you make a cartridge?

270. Sketch what you would call a good furnace for 80,000 cubic feet of air per minute.

271. In travelling the air-ways of a mine, how would you instruct your firemen to proceed?

272. How would you lay out your works so as to insure the least damage in case of an explosion?

273. How would you proceed to remove a sudden accumulation of fire-damp?

274. State the rule for finding the weight of a column of air.

275. What method would you adopt for obtaining a large amount of air with but a small water-gauge?

276. How would you distribute the air in a mine working 100 tons per day?

### **Surveying and Planning on the Surface.**

277. By what means would you ascertain the proper dip of a mine?

278. How would you keep headings, levels, and tunnels properly and correctly?

279. For survey above and below ground a chain is used. What sort and length of chain is best adapted, the length of the links, and the number of links per chain?

280. What is the vertical rise of an inclined plane whose angle is 36 degrees and slant distance 400 links?

281. Suppose a vein of coal at an angle of 32 degrees with the horizon: to what depth would a shaft have to be taken to catch the vein, if it is set at a distance of 30 yards from the outcrop?

282. Suppose a vein of coal at an angle of 56 degrees with the horizon, and the shaft has to be taken to a depth of 141 yards to catch the vein: at what distance is the shaft placed from the outcrop?

283. If in a shaft a seam of coal is cut through at a distance of 40 yards from the bottom, and a tunnel has to be driven at the bottom of the shaft in the direction of the seam, what distance will the tunnel have to be driven, supposing the seam to dip at an angle of 20 degrees?

284. If, in driving the west levels in a seam of coal dipping to the south one in six, an upthrow fault of 15 yards is met

with, what would you do to recover the coal? and, if it were tunnelled out, what would be the length of the tunnel? Also, what length of tunnelling, if dipping two in seven, with an upthrow fault of 37 yards?

285. Does the magnetic needle keep true north, and, if not, what are its variations yearly?

286. Have you, or any one, discovered why the needle oscillates, and by what means is it found?

287. How are working plans kept correctly when this oscillation is constantly going on?

288. Describe the compass, and explain the circumstances under which it is unreliable.

289. Explain what is meant by the scale of  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch to the chain.

290. Describe how you would plot a survey on paper, and name the instruments you would require to use.

291. Why is it necessary to make deductions from the measurements of mines which rise or dip, and how would you find the correct measurements?

292. Sketch on paper as near as you can the following bearings of a survey:

N.E. 82° and 68 links.	N.W. 35° and 87 links.
S.E. 51° " 95 "	N.W. 87° " 140 "
N.E. 63° " 78 "	S.W. 52° " 140 "
N.E. 20° " 97 "	S.E. 48° " 85 "

293. Produce a complete plan of pit workings showing the ventilation, also the plan of survey and survey book.

294. What is understood by the term "true north" and "magnetic north?" Is there any difference? If so, say what?

295. Find the weight of coal in an acre of a seam 5 feet 6½ inches thick, taking the specific gravity at 1.25.

296. Describe the difference between the fast and loose needle dialing.

297. What dial would you prefer for surveying steep measures, and why?

298. What is the use of the vernier?

299. In a heading going S. 71° E., what must be the course of a cross-heading going at right angles to the north side?

*Examiners*: We are glad you are so well informed on the subject of mining; we hope, a certificate being granted, you will always be found worthy of such, by constant care and attention.—

*Applicant*: It will always be my greatest delight and pleasure to give satisfaction, to save life and property.

P.S.—I consider many of the preceding questions are foolish; my opinion is, they are put to puzzle a young man. All practical men should bestir themselves and obtain the information required for the management of mines. They have the practical knowledge; all they require is a theoretical knowledge. If mines are to be managed properly for safety and economy, men must be obtained with a knowledge both of the practice and theory of mining. A class of managers so qualified would be unequalled; and any person able to answer the preceding questions, and properly understanding them, will not, I venture to say, be far from the mark, and should satisfy both examiners and employers, as well as the public.—W. HOPKIN.

A LECTURE  
ON  
THE ATMOSPHERE:  
ITS  
CHANGES AND EXPLOSIVE GASES.

BY WILLIAM HOPTON,  
"CERTIFICATED" MINE MANAGER.

---

THE atmospheric air is the foundation of my discourse. When God breathed into man the breath of life, he gave him good, pure air to breathe. It was not given grudgingly, nor sparingly, but plentifully, and in abundance.

It was given to sustain, to nourish, and to support him; and the more we know of its properties, the more we shall estimate its value and its worth; because it is useful for many things, if not useful for all things. The air we breathe maintains the clouds in the heavens and gives buoyancy to the feathered tribes as they fly along through it. It raises balloons, smoke, vapor, and all noxious gases to the heavens.

It also throws back light, or gives a reflective power, by which objects are enlightened. It is owing to the atmosphere that the heavens appear bright in the daytime; for, without it, only that part of the heavens would be light or luminous in which the

sun is placed ; and if we could live without air, and had to turn our backs to the sun, the heavens would appear as dark as in the night-time. This reflective power of the atmosphere is the means by which objects are enlightened so uniformly on all sides. The want of this reflective power would cause a strange alteration in the appearance of things, the shadows of which would be so very dark, and their sides, enlightened by the sun, so very bright, that, no doubt, we could see no more of them than their bright parts ; and for a view of the other parts we must turn them half round or wait until the sun came round upon them.

But what would be the result had we a world void or destitute of air ? In a world void or destitute of air the feathered tribes would have no use for their wings, they could not fly ; nor could a fish swim in the ocean,—it would sink to the bottom. A cat, a mouse, or a bird in a room void of air would expire in a few moments. To have a world void or destitute of air, music would lose its charms ; neither could the sound of bells and voices be heard ; however loud we might call at the top of the voice, we could not be heard. To have a world void of air, the medium through which sound is conducted would be lost ; and, if so, we should be no better than people who are deaf and dumb. Everything would have to be conducted by signs and motion ; but I am glad we have not a world void or destitute of air.

Having shown a few useful properties of the air, I will now endeavor to show of what it consists.

The atmosphere is a compound, or a mechanical mixture ; a compound is a mixture of ingredients,—that is, several things mixed or blended together to make one ; therefore the atmos-

there is a compound of two ingredients composed of two opposite principles. One ingredient is the source of flame and life, the other ingredient is destitute of both, yet producing, by their different combinations of mixtures, the most diversified, beneficent, and good effects. These two ingredients of the atmosphere are termed oxygen and nitrogen gases. To give an explanation of the two gases, it will be well to show first the properties of oxygen, and then the properties of nitrogen.

Oxygen is not a combustible, but a supporter of combustion ; that is to say, it is not like the gas found in coal-mines, which, explodes at a naked light ; neither is it like the gas in the street, so that, if it filled a room, it might be exploded. Not so, I say, with oxygen gas ; it cannot be exploded ; it only supports and feeds the flame.

If the air consisted of oxygen only, we could not make the poker very hot, but it would burn ; nor could we extinguish a candle but by cutting off the wick ; and if a house should be on fire, the consequences must be awful indeed, as there would be no means of extinguishing the devouring element. If oxygen gas was left to exert its native energies, it would melt the hardest substances, and also set the earth in flames. Not only would such articles as wood and coal burn, but even stone, iron, and other substances would blaze with a rapidity which would carry destruction through the whole expanse of nature. This terrific oxygen would feed the flames on every side, and set at defiance the united efforts of every engine in the fire-brigade ; and water, in such an atmosphere, would have no power in extinguishing the flames, but only support the conflagration, as water in 100 parts is composed of 85 parts oxygen and 15 parts hydrogen. Indeed, if the air consisted of oxygen only, the

whole world must shortly be in one general conflagration ; and it has been imagined that the earth may be consumed in this very manner at the last day, were the Author of nature to take away nitrogen from the air and leave oxygen alone remaining. Nor could we breathe oxygen by itself ; it would cause our blood to circulate with greater rapidity, and soon waste and destroy the human frame ; therefore, we have some knowledge of what the result would be if our atmosphere consisted of oxygen only.

The other ingredient of the atmosphere is nitrogen, of which I have very little to say, only this : if the air consisted of nitrogen only, every species of fire and flame would be extinguished, and all the tribes of animated nature instantly destroyed. Nitrogen, then, neither supports combustion nor enables animals to live ; but, as a component part of the atmosphere, it is made in order to temper down or dilute the excessive strength of the oxygen.

#### **The Mixture of Oxygen and Nitrogen Gases.**

The two gases of the atmosphere will not do in a separate state, unless mixed in such proportions as they now are by Providence. They supply the means of carrying out the great system of nature. The mixture is constituted as follows : In 100 cubic feet there are 21 parts of oxygen and 79 parts of nitrogen. The mixture of these gases is everywhere and always alike,—yes, on the mountain-top and in the plain, in England, in America, in Africa, or New Zealand,—ever the same, 21 parts oxygen and 79 of nitrogen. It will not do, therefore, to have more or less of either of these gases. I know the atmosphere is daily deprived of its oxygen by fires, combustion, and flame, and consumed also in the lungs by every person and animal that

breathes the air; yet the Divine mind has not overlooked this great consumption of oxygen without providing an equivalent supply, which is obtained from the leaves of trees and other vegetables, which give off the quantity of oxygen required, and no more, so that the mixture is nicely balanced and proportioned, continuing always and everywhere the same.

What an all-comprehensive, intelligent Mind it shows, to cause one simple principle in different combinations of mixtures to produce so many important beneficial effects! What dreadful havoc would be produced in the whole system if such substances as oxygen were not nicely balanced and proportioned! These facts demonstrate the infinite knowledge and wisdom of the great Contriver of the universe, in the nice adjustment of every circumstance so as to preserve the balance of nature and to secure the happiness of her offspring.

Let us see what the effects would be if the mixture were to be altered.

To alter the mixture (by weight) from 21 to 37 parts of oxygen, and the nitrogen from 79 to 63 parts, gives what is called laughing gas, which, when inhaled into the lungs, will produce fits of laughing, leaping, running, and many other delightful emotions. Then again, if the mixture were altered to 56 parts oxygen and 44 parts nitrogen, it would produce instant suffocation to all who attempted to breathe it.

These gases, producing such effects, compose the air we breathe, the only difference being in the mixing of them,—adding and diminishing the quantities.

Having thus demonstrated the mixture, I will now speak of the weight or specific gravity of such gases, which is of equal importance.

The weight of oxygen is 1.007,—that is, near 33 grains to 100 cubic inches of the atmosphere. The weight of nitrogen is 0.9748, or near 30 grains to 100 cubic inches of the atmosphere. That is to say, the relative weight of the two gases is what a 33-lb. weight is to a 37-lb. weight, the nitrogen being a small degree lighter than the oxygen; and it is wisely contrived so to be, for were it otherwise—that is, were oxygen a small degree lighter than nitrogen, so that the latter would be a degree heavier than common air—it would occupy the lower regions of the atmosphere and produce universal sickness and death; because, instead of ascending as it now does when thrown off by the lungs in breathing, it would descend to the surface of the earth, to be breathed over and over again.

Here we again perceive an admirable adaptation of means to an end, and from ignorance of such facts the bulk of mankind do not understand the blessings they enjoy.

Having given, then, a brief explanation of the atmospheric air as a compound, together with its mixture and weight, I will now speak of its expansive and contracting properties.

You know, by exerting sufficient force, a piece of india-rubber may be pulled or stretched out to three or four times its natural length, and immediately that force is removed it returns to its original dimensions. I know we cannot take hold of and grasp the atmosphere as we can india-rubber, and pull it out, yet we can do that which amounts pretty nearly to the same thing. Mr. Boyle tells us that he expanded the air with an air-pump until it swelled out and occupied a space 14,000 times larger than it usually occupied; that is to say, the air expanded out until one cubic foot would fill a room thirty feet in length, thirty feet in width, and fifteen feet in height.

Again, another person informs us that he compressed or contracted the air until it occupied a space 40,000 times less than it naturally occupied; that is to say, the air, in this case, was compressed until one cubic foot, or the same amount of the air which filled a room thirty feet long and thirty feet wide by fifteen feet high, was pressed into a space only one-twenty-fourth part of an inch.

It is also said that were it possible to transport a person from the earth, with the same pressure of air in his body as when on the surface, to a place five hundred miles high, one breath of air from his lungs would swell and expand out until it would fill a sphere as large as this globe.

By what I have now stated every person will see that the expansive and contractive properties of the air are very great. I must now leave the subject of expansion, having to speak of it again shortly. I will now speak of the height and weight of the atmosphere.

As we ascend into the higher regions of the atmosphere, we find our bodies pressed upon with less and less weight than on the surface of the earth; if, therefore, we were to ascend a mountain, or go up in a balloon, our bodies would be pressed upon with less and less weight than on the earth's surface, and with more and more weight as we descend.

In proof of this, a number of gentlemen once ascended in a balloon to a very great height; in doing so, their hands and feet were much swollen, so that the skin of their hands and feet had to be cut. Again, a number of gentlemen, in a journey among the mountains of Peru, were surprised to find that they had great pangs of straining and vomiting, and also casting up of blood; and, no doubt, had they remained two or three hours

longer they would have died. That shows if we ascend to a very great height the pressure of the atmosphere on our bodies is so reduced that it is not sufficient to counterbalance the pressure of the fluids in the body.

The atmosphere, then, is considered to be forty-five miles high; this height is known, as before stated, by the weight of it diminishing and increasing as we ascend and descend; therefore the atmosphere must press upon itself, so that the nearest yard of air to the surface of the earth is pressed upon by the whole weight of air above.

I will illustrate this subject a little: therefore let us imagine that, instead of a layer of the atmosphere forty-five miles high, we have a number of wool packs the same height. If such be the case, will not the nearest pack to the ground be pressed upon by the weight of all above, and also pressed into a much smaller space than the uppermost one? Just in like manner, then, the lower part of the atmosphere is pressed upon by the whole weight of that above.

It is evident, then, we live at the bottom of a very deep sea,—a sea forty-five miles deep, not of water, but a deep sea of air,—and at the bottom of this deep sea there is a great weight always pressing upon bodies and substances which lie on its floor, or on the earth's surface. Now, the average weight of air pressing on the earth's surface is fifteen pounds per square inch, or 2160 pounds upon every square foot; and as the area of the whole earth's surface is near two hundred thousand millions of square miles, the total weight of air pressing on this globe is twelve trillions, forty-three thousand four hundred and sixty-eight billions and eight hundred thousand millions of pounds, or five thousand billions of tons.

Five thousand billions are very soon said, yet the quantity is too great for any person to conceive. It would find employment for all the people in England—men, women, and children—to count the number in twelve months, and work hard twelve hours each day. Such is the weight of air in tons pressing on the earth's surface.

Living, then, as we are, at the bottom of this deep sea of air, it is evident the pressure on our bodies is very great; it is estimated at near fourteen tons; yet a small quantity of air within the human body, which will not weigh above a single ounce, will, by its strong elastic force, counteract the effect of this tremendous pressure and prevent us being crushed to pieces. A room is full of air, and were it not for the strong elastic force of it within counterbalancing the weight of that without, we should all be crushed to death by the falling of the building, and every glass window would be shattered to atoms. It is this great weight of the atmosphere which raises water in our forcing pumps and supports quicksilver in barometers, and also prevents the water in our seas and rivers from boiling and evaporating into steam. Take the pressure away and all liquids would at once boil; therefore, the pressure keeps the steam down and prevents boiling.

Liquids may be made to boil by two methods: we may either take away the pressure and allow the natural heat of the liquids to act, or add so much additional heat to overcome the pressure. This weight of the atmosphere is the earth's great boiler-valve, preventing the outbursts of gases pressed and pent up in the earth's strata. Let the Author of the universe remove this pressure and the whole globe would shortly be in flames. The whole earth's strata, like steam in a boiler, is pressed with gases

to overflowing, and only prevented from a tremendous outburst by the atmosphere being equal in weight to the pressure of the gases therein; then remove it, I say, and the earth would shortly be in flames. I know many people will say it is all a delusion, because the pressure of the atmosphere on their bodies is not felt; yet what I have stated is certainly the case.

### **How this Pressure acts on Pumps.**

A respectable gentleman in Scotland applied to a friend in order to obtain his advice respecting a pump which he had constructed at considerable expense. He told him that, notwithstanding every exertion, he could not obtain a drop of water, although he was sure there was plenty in the well, and although he had plastered the well-top all round and blocked up every crevice. When the well was inspected, it was found to be air-tight, so that the atmospheric pressure could not act on the surface of the water; but an orifice was at once made in the well, and water flowed from the spout abundantly. Again, one of the grand dukes of Tuscany wished to pump water from a very deep well, but having erected his pump, it was found that the water would not rise in the pump-barrel. This very much surprised his Highness, and he called together the philosophers in order that the mystery might be solved. Now, the opinion hitherto of the rise of water in a pump-barrel was, that nature abhorred a vacuum, but why it did not rise for the Grand Duke was a mystery. The pump-makers were then questioned, and they affirmed that water never would rise more than thirty-four feet, but why it was so they could not tell. Matters remained in this state until one of the pupils of Galileo undertook the investigation, and he made this important discovery,—that just as water could not be pumped

more than thirty-four feet, neither could quicksilver be pumped more than thirty inches, because the weight of the atmosphere, pressing on the surface of the water, balances that in the pump-barrel; therefore, by every stroke of the pump it takes away its load; but it is the atmospheric weight which supplies it with another load of water as often as it removes one.

#### **How this Pressure acts on Barometers.**

Just on the same principle, then, mercury is also balanced in the tube of a barometer by the atmospheric weight. I say balanced, because it is just on the same principle as two weights in a pair of scales, the mercury being in one scale and the atmospheric weight in the other, so that thirty inches of mercury and thirty-four feet of water balance a weight of air forty-five miles high.

You have seen that the mercury in the tube of a barometer moves up and down; now, the cause of this is changes that from time to time take place in the atmospheric pressure, so that when the mercury moves upward the atmospheric pressure is increased, but diminished when it falls down. This change in the atmospheric weight is just on the same principle as tides of water in the ocean. Tides of water roll along from one part of the ocean to another, by which its weight varies in proportion to its depth. So, I say, we have tides of air rolling along from one part of the globe to another, and as this atmospheric tide rolls along, its weight varies accordingly. These tides in the atmosphere are caused by the rise and fall of the temperature in separate parts of the globe. The air expands and swells out in one part of the globe in consequence of a rise in the temperature; in another part it contracts into less space by a fall of temperature. And

it is owing to this atmospheric contraction and expansion that currents of air, or wind, move from one part of the globe to another. Now, these winds on the surface show the great wisdom of God. Had it been otherwise, smoke, vapor, noxious gases, chemical stench, and other smells would remain in the places whence they were emitted, producing universal sickness and death.

### **How this Change in the Atmospheric Weight affects Mines.**

Now, this variation in the weight of the atmosphere affects greatly the gases discharged in mines, on the same principle as steam discharged from a boiler. If, when steam is blowing off from a boiler, you at the same time take a little weight off the valve, will not an extra quantity be discharged? Atmospheric weight, then, is the earth's great boiler-valve, preventing the outburst of gases pent up within the earth's strata. Now, when this weight, which is, say 15 lbs. to-day, is reduced to 14 lbs. to-morrow, an extra discharge of gases takes place in mines.

If what I have just stated be correct, there is another question to solve, that is: If this atmospheric pressure be simultaneously reduced in all mines, and the discharge of gas takes place from all, how is it that each mine does not discharge an equal quantity of gas? I will explain this by a simple illustration. Suppose we had three boilers full of steam, the weight on each valve being 15 lbs. The steam in one boiler is so compressed that a great quantity of steam is discharged; the next, not so compressed, blows off less steam; and the third, being but slightly compressed, discharges very little steam. Now, if 1 lb. weight be taken from each valve, the greatest discharge of steam will be from the boiler most compressed. And so when the atmospheric pressure is

reduced from all, the greatest quantity of gas will be discharged from those mines that are the most compressed.

Again, if the atmospheric pressure is the same in all mines, how is it that the compression of gases is not alike in all? I answer, because explosive gas has been discharged from one mine for a longer period than from another, diminishing the compression in proportion; just in the same manner as steam being less compressed in the boiler which has been longest blowing off. From what I have stated it will be understood that one mine discharges more gas than another in proportion to the time which such discharges occupy, or the strata to surface more open.

Mines vary not only in the quantity, but also in the quality of their gases. One discharges pure explosive gas, another a mixture of the two gases called explosive gas and black-damp, while a third discharges black-damp alone. It may be asked why mines vary in the quality of gases discharged, which may be explained in the following manner: Suppose we had a mine newly opened out, in which the explosive gas in the strata is so strong as to overpower, for a time, the atmospheric weight; it will discharge a large quantity of gas until its compression is reduced nearer and nearer to the weight of the atmosphere, after which the discharge of explosive gas will be only occasional, according to the changes in the atmospheric weight, which to-day is 15 lbs. and to-morrow may be reduced to 14 lbs., a proportionate discharge then taking place. Consequently, when the atmosphere returns to its former weight of 15 lbs., the air itself is then forced into the strata to fill up the space vacated by the gas when the atmospheric weight was lowest; the air then works in and out of the strata, backward and forward, and mixes

with the gas therein, as the same reduced pressure which caused the gas to expand and rush out will also force the air in. The weight of air never being long at a stand-still, it works backward and forward, into and against the strata, like a person drawing in and letting out his breath. By this forcing of atmospheric air into the strata, a mixture of explosive gas and black-damp is discharged, which is given off at intervals until all the explosive gas is exhausted, after which the mine discharges black-damp only. In the same manner a person lets air into his body by breathing, and that air is converted into nitrogen or carbon before it is discharged. By what I have just stated you will understand why one mine discharges pure explosive gas, another a mixture of the two gases, and a third black-damp only.

Again, gases do not vary in quality and quantity only, but also in weight, and this variation in weight very much affects mines. I will now show the weight of those gases, and how they affect mines. The weight or specific gravity of the atmosphere is 1.000; therefore, one foot of it will weigh nearly two feet of explosive gas, because the specific gravity of explosive gas is 0.555. Explosive gas, then, being so much lighter than air, is the cause of its so affecting mines, because it makes its way up into every hole in the roof, and all very high workings; and like cork-wood in water, or a balloon in the air, it rises to the top of all such workings and overflows them, and to bring the gas away a propelling force in the air-current is required, as well as quantity.

Again, a foot of black-damp will weigh nearly three feet of explosive gas, because the specific gravity of black-damp is 1.524, and as such is the case, it settles downward to the floor, like mud in water, and fills the lowest working places, and to bring

it also up therefrom a propelling force in the air-current is required as well as quantity; if not, the gas will not mix with the air, but pass through and leave it there.

Let every fireman, deputy, underlooker, and manager remember, then, such laws of nature, and never depart from them. For the fixing of brattice cloth to propel downward explosive gas from any high working place, the cloth must be so arranged that the largest space for the current to pass to the working place must be in going to the gas and the least space in coming from it, so that force may be obtained in the return current; if not, the air will pass through the gas and not bring it away. Then again, for the bringing up of black-damp from below out of deep workings, the space behind the brattice cloth must be least in coming from the working place and largest in going to it, so that force in the return current, as well as quantity, may be obtained. When this is not attended to, miners often work in jeopardy when it might at once be removed.

I will now speak of the composition and mixture of those mine gases. Fire-damp is a composition of two gases, termed hydrogen and carbon, the two being mixed together from the carburetted hydrogen gas called fire-damp. In five feet of this gas, four parts of it consist of hydrogen gas and one part of carbon.

Again, when an explosion of this gas takes place another gas is produced, which is called after-damp, or choke-damp; this after-damp is also a composition of three gases,—viz., nitrogen, carbonic acid, and watery vapor. In eleven parts of after-damp, one part consists of carbonic acid, two parts of watery vapor, and eight parts of nitrogen.

What can fire-damp also be obtained from? I answer, from

water and wood, because hydrogen is one of the ingredients of water, and carbon is also one of the ingredients of charcoal; therefore, the two ingredients of fire-damp can be obtained from water and wood.

Also, what can after-damp be obtained from? I answer, from air, water, ginger-beer, and wood, because nitrogen is one of the ingredients of the air, and carbonic acid is one of the ingredients of ginger-beer and of charcoal. Watery vapor, the other ingredient, is water when condensed; so that after-damp can be obtained from air, water, ginger-beer, and wood.

What effect does after-damp produce on a person when breathed? The following: Carbonic acid is a positive poison; nitrogen merely poisons by excluding oxygen,—that is, carbonic acid lays violent hands upon its victim and at once kills him, while nitrogen starves him to death by excluding all nourishment; therefore, it is death to all who breathe after-damp. When breathed it takes away a person's strength, his limbs fail him, they become heavy and powerless; he then feels a death-like sickness, yet without pain, and at last he passes away insensibly, like a person going to sleep, and in that state he enters eternity. I have a knowledge of the effect it produces, having been for a long time insensible through breathing it.

Again, as to the explosive mixture of fire-damp: I have before stated that fire and flame are supported by the oxygen in the air. If flame could exist without oxygen, the blaze at the end of a gas-pipe would pass through it, and along to the whole magazine of gas, and instantly explode it; but no! it is impossible: oxygen in the air is required to feed it. A proper mixture, therefore, of explosive gas with oxygen is required to cause an explosion. I say a proper mixture, because the power of an explo-

sion is in proportion to the mixture, as well as the quantity of such gases. The greatest explosive power is obtained when one foot of fire-damp is mixed with, say seven or ten feet of air, but an explosion will take place when one foot of fire-damp is mixed with from four to twelve feet of air; therefore, it requires a larger quantity of air than gas to cause an explosion, and a larger quantity of air than gas to prevent one. So that gas, you see, is rendered harmless by adding more pure air to the same quantity of gas,—that is, it becomes further removed from the explosive mixture. Gas is not destroyed, it is only rendered harmless, by a large admixture of atmospheric air; the old goaf, and other places charged with gas to overflowing, cannot be ignited if the atmosphere is not allowed to mix with it. This I have several times proved to be correct.

Many know not why the Stephenson safety-lamp becomes extinguished in a mixture of fire-damp. It is because the lamp is so constructed with air-passages as to admit only just the quantity of air required to feed the flame, and an explosion taking place within the lamp enlarges the flame, and an enlarged flame requiring more air, which the passages do not supply, it dies out just as a person would die for the want of food.

My next subject is ventilation. What are we to understand by it? or how does a current of air descend one shaft and pass up another? This may be better understood by a very simple illustration of two weights in a pair of scales. Suppose, then, we had a pair of scales with a 15-lb. weight in each scale; in that case, the weight at each end being equal, the scales would be perfectly balanced; but if we add 1 lb. to one, making it 16 lbs., that weight would overbalance the other, and the same

effect would be produced by taking off a pound from one end, reducing it to 14 lbs. What I wish you to understand by this simple illustration is this: remembering that the 15 lbs. of atmospheric weight press alike on the top of one shaft as on the top of another; and as two 15-lb. weights cannot overbalance each other without either adding or diminishing, so a current of air cannot pass down one shaft and up another, but remains at a stand-still, unless weight be added to or taken from the atmospheric pressure at the top of one of the shafts. You will now understand how a current of air is produced and caused to pass down and around the workings of a mine.

As there are several ventilating powers, I will briefly mention a few of them:

1. The force of the wind blowing on the surface is one power, because the air propelled into a hopper at the top of a shaft adds an increased weight or density in that shaft or scale, by which a current of air is produced for the workings.

2. A water-fall in one shaft propels a force of air which adds more weight to that scale, by which a current is produced.

3. A ventilating fan produces ventilation by its revolving force, because it adds to or diminishes the atmospheric weight, and by so doing propels downward or upward a current of air for the workings.

4. The cylinder of a ventilating engine propels a force of air up or down with every stroke of the piston, which produces a current.

5. In giving an explanation of the furnace-power I must return again to the subject of expansion and contraction, because the power of the furnace is in proportion to the amount of heat raised to the largest volume of cold air; therefore, if we fill a

bladder with, say four hundred and eighty cubic inches of the air at a temperature of thirty-two degrees, every degree of heat added to the air in the bladder would cause it to expand one part more, so that when the temperature had risen from thirty-two degrees to one hundred and fifty-two degrees, the four hundred and eighty parts of air would have expanded to six hundred parts, or one-fifth larger, and the weight would be one-fifth less than in the space at first occupied.

By a simple illustration I think I can make this subject a little more clear. Suppose we had a pair of scales so large and so constructed that we could weigh in the one all the cold air in the down-cast shaft and in the other all the hot air that filled the up-cast; we should find the cold air in the down-cast scale would overbalance very much the hot air in the up-cast scale. By this simple illustration you will now understand that the furnace-heat swells out the air in the up-cast, by which it becomes much less in weight than the cold air in the down-cast for the space occupied; therefore, if one foot of cold air expands by heat into two feet, these two feet, you know, will only weigh the same as one foot before. Heat, then, makes air so light by expansion that it rushes up one shaft like cork-wood in water, or a balloon in the air, and the cold air in the down-cast is too heavy to remain in its place; it falls down and rushes through the workings to occupy the place of the hot air; therefore, to produce a great current of air, the furnace should be fixed where it can heat the largest volume of cold air, as its power is accordingly.

Before I leave this subject I must tell you that the furnace-power is affected much by changes of temperature on the surface from winter to summer; because its power, as before stated, is in

proportion to the difference in the number of degrees of heat raised betwixt the down- and up-cast shafts; that is, if the furnace should raise the temperature in the up-cast to, say one hundred and forty-two degrees, at a time when on the surface the temperature was at, say thirty-two degrees, this will show a net ventilating power of one hundred and ten degrees. But in summer if the temperature on the surface should rise to, say eighty degrees, the net ventilating power of the furnace would be then only sixty-two degrees, because you take eighty from one hundred and forty-two; this will show that a change from winter to summer, or any sudden fall in temperature, affects much the furnace-power and currents in mines.

By what I have now stated you will understand when mines are in the greatest danger. When the barometer falls it shows that this weight in the atmospheric valve is diminished, by which an extra outlet of gases is discharged. Also, a rise in the thermometer shows an increased temperature on the surface, and, by this increased temperature, the ventilating power is diminished, by which the underground currents are also diminished. These two changes suddenly taking place at one and the same time affect very much the workings of mines with gases. One is the cause of an extra discharge of gases; the other diminishes that current of air which should take the gases away.

We now come to the subject of ventilation, or to the distribution of the ventilating currents,—a subject which has caused much controversy. To distribute the ventilating currents properly, for the safe conducting of gases through and out of the workings, requires the greatest caution and care; because the atmospheric changes are often and many; in the opening and closing of doors, the uplifting, squeezing, and falling of the air-

gates ; together with the number of lights exposed, and sudden outlets of gases taking place, much caution and care is required, so that it is next to an impossibility to keep, at all times, every person away from danger ; therefore, it is well, then, to keep as far as possible the danger from them, because there is a right and a wrong way of conducting gases away from the men and out of the workings of a mine.

By ventilation you may either throw all the gases discharged upon every workman employed or conduct them away. I think I can make this subject a little more clear by a simple illustration. Suppose a number of chemical works are near a large population, who are affected by breathing impure air every time the wind blows from the works towards them ; but in case a change in the wind takes place, so as to blow the gases in an opposite direction, if its force be not one-twelfth of that which blew the gases to them, yet, by this change of the wind, all will breathe a purer air, as no gas can come against the wind, be its velocity ever so small.

And so, in like manner, is the ventilation of mines : the ventilating current should be conducted pure into the workings, to convey, as far as possible, the gases away, and not conduct them into the tram-roads and upon every person employed. There are several ways of ventilation, but I propose to glance for a short time only at the separate-current system ; in doing so I ask, what amount of air can be produced per minute for the whole workings of a mine ? 20,000 feet, 40,000 feet, 60,000 feet, 80,000 feet, or 100,000 feet, be that amount less or more, all of it should not be sent in one current around the workings of a mine. Divide or separate it into distinct currents, or parts, of, say from 4000 to 6000 feet of pure air for each division ; after which,

if ten, fifteen, or twenty miners are getting coal in one district, supply the said number of miners with one distinct current of pure air, fresh from the down-cast, after which conduct the said current away safe to the up-cast, and do not, if possible, ventilate other workings with it afterwards. Then again, supply another current of fresh pure air to another group of miners, and conduct the said current, as before, direct to the up-cast ; and so on, in a similar manner, supply each party of miners with fresh, distinct currents of pure air.

By splitting into parts you divide the explosive power, as gas is prevented by this system from collecting in large quantities ; because, if one hundred feet of gas were discharged per minute from one group of miners, we might have five hundred feet discharged in the workings of five groups of miners, and to ventilate all with one current, the whole volume of five hundred feet of gas might be ignited at once ; but if ventilated separately, only one-fifth would be ignited ; thus the power of the explosion would be reduced to one-fifth and the danger to life in the same proportion. Therefore, ventilate with separate currents. Yet do not misunderstand, and think I am of opinion there never will be explosions. I answer, there always were, and always will be, explosions under the best management ; yet if a proper system of ventilation were adopted the loss of life and property would not be so great when they do take place.

## ALGEBRA.

### QUESTIONS, ANSWERS, AND EXAMPLES.

*Son* : Can you give me any information about algebra, for I frequently find useful rules in books which require to be worked out by algebra, and which are, therefore, unintelligible to me ?

*Father* : I will endeavor to give you, as concisely as I can, sufficient instruction in algebra to enable you to use most rules that are given in books on engineering ; and if you find that you require any further knowledge of it, you will afterwards, I think, find no difficulty in following up the study in any good work on algebra, such as Todhunter's.

*Son* : I see the signs  $+$ ,  $-$ ,  $\times$ ,  $\div$  : do they mean the same as in arithmetic ?

*Father* : Yes ; in fact, though there are slight differences, algebra is practically arithmetic with letters in place of figures ; for instance, suppose we take the letter  $a$  and give to it the value of 2, and to the letter  $b$  we give the value of 6, then  $a + b = 2 + 6 = 8$ , and  $b - a = 6 - 2 = 4$  ;  $a \times b$  (which for abbreviation is usually written  $ab$ )  $= 2 \times 6 = 12$ , and  $b \div a$  (usually written  $\frac{b}{a}$ )  $= 6 \div 2 = \frac{6}{2} = 3$ .

*Son* : What is meant by a simple or a compound expression ?

*Father* : A *simple* expression contains no parts connected by the signs  $+$  and  $-$ , whereas a compound expression does, and the parts connected by the signs  $+$  and  $-$  are called *terms* of the expression. It will be better if I now explain to you a little about the use of brackets.

*Son* : I thank you, and will pay all the attention I can.

*Father* : When two or more numbers are to be treated as forming one number, they are enclosed within *brackets*. Thus supposing we have to denote that the sum of  $a$  and  $b$  is to be multiplied by  $c$ , we denote it thus:  $(a + b) \times c$ , or simply  $(a + b)c$ ; here we mean that the whole of  $a + b$  is to be multiplied by  $c$ .

*Son* : Then  $(a - b + c)(d + e)$  means that the result of  $a - b + c$  is to be multiplied by the sum of  $d + e$ ?

*Father* : Yes. Sometimes instead of using brackets a line is drawn over the numbers which are to be treated as forming one number. Thus  $\overline{a - b + c} \times \overline{d + e}$  means the same as  $(a - b + c)(d + e)$ . I will give you some useful memoranda with regard to brackets, and would like you to observe them very carefully :

*I.*—When an expression within a pair of brackets is preceded by the sign  $+$  the brackets may be removed.

*II.*—When an expression within a pair of brackets is preceded by the sign  $-$  the brackets may be removed if the sign of every term within the brackets be changed.

*III.*—Any number of terms in an expression may be put within a pair of brackets, and the sign  $+$  placed before the whole.

*IV.*—Any number of terms in an expression may be put within a pair of brackets, and the sign  $-$  placed before the whole, provided the sign of every term within the brackets be changed.

*Son* : Can you give me an easy example of the application of letters instead of figures?

*Father* : Yes ; there is a very simple one here in a rule for getting the weight and strength of hemp rope :

W = weight of rope in lbs. per fathom.

C = circumference in inches.

B = breaking weight in tons.

$$W = \frac{C^2}{4}.$$

$$B = C^2 \times .28.$$

From this rule I wish you to tell me what is the weight and breaking strain of a good hemp rope 6 inches in circumference and 20 yards long ?

*Son* : I see from the rule that W (that is, the weight of the rope in lbs. per fathom) is equal to  $C^2$  (the square of the circumference in inches) divided by 4 ; and therefore

$$W = \frac{C^2}{4} = \frac{6^2}{4} = \frac{6 \times 6}{4} = \frac{36}{4} = 9,$$

so that the weight is 9 lbs. per fathom, and as it is 10 fathoms long, the whole weight is 90 lbs. Again, B (the breaking weight in tons) =  $C^2$  (the square of the circumference in inches) multiplied by .28 ; and therefore

$$B = C^2 \times .28 = 6^2 \times .28 = 10.08,$$

so that the breaking strain is a little over 10 tons.

*Father* : Very good. I think you will now be able to apply your knowledge to another very useful rule,—viz., to find the safe load on chains :

D = diameter in eighths of an inch.

W = safe load in tons.

$$D = \sqrt{9W}.$$

$$W = \frac{D^2}{9}.$$

Can you tell me what would be a safe working load for a chain made from  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch iron?

*Son*: Before I can do that I shall have to ask you what is meant by  $\sqrt{9W}$ ?

*Father*:  $W$  is to be multiplied by 9, and the square root of the result taken.

*Son*: Thank you; I think I shall now manage it.  $D$  (diameter in eighths of an inch) = 3, therefore

$$W = \frac{D^2}{9} = \frac{3 \times 3}{9} = \frac{9}{9} = 1,$$

so that the safe working load is one ton.

*Father*: What would be a safe working load for a chain made from  $1\frac{1}{8}$ -inch iron?

*Son*:

$$W = \frac{D^2}{9} = \frac{(1\frac{1}{8} \times 8)^2}{9} = \frac{\left(\frac{17}{16} \times \frac{8}{1}\right)^2}{9} = \frac{\left(\frac{136}{16}\right)^2}{9} = \frac{\frac{18496}{256}}{\frac{9}{1}} =$$

$$\frac{18496}{256 \times 9} = \frac{18496}{2304} = 8\frac{1}{8};$$

therefore the safe working load is  $8\frac{1}{8}$  tons. I see that I can now work out very simple rules; but as there are many which are not so simple as those which you have just showed me, I shall be pleased if you will give me some further instruction.

*Father*: Very well, I will show you now a few more difficult examples. In the examples which follow I will, for the purpose of illustration, give to the letters which I use certain values, thus:  $a = 1$ ,  $b = 2$ ,  $c = 3$ ,  $d = 4$ ,  $e = 0$ , and therefore  $a + b + c + d + e$  has the same value as  $1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 0 = 10$ . Again,  $a + b - c + d + e$  has the same value as  $1 + 2 - 3 + 4 +$

$0 = 7 - 3 = 4$ . Again,  $(a + b)(c + d) = (1 + 2)(3 + 4) = 3 \times 7 = 21$ . Again,  $\frac{a + b}{c + d} = \frac{1 + 2}{3 + 4} = \frac{3}{7}$ .

*Son* : I think I understand so far very well ; but I would like you to show me how to add quantities in algebra.

*Father* : To do this, I must explain that in algebra quantities which have the *plus* sign prefixed are called positive quantities, and those which have the *minus* sign are called negative quantities. If a term be preceded by no sign the sign  $+$  is to be understood.

Terms are said to be like when they do not differ at all or differ only in the numerical parts, otherwise they are said to be unlike. Thus  $a$ ,  $2a$ ,  $3a$  are like terms ;  $a^2$ ,  $2a^2$ ,  $3a^2$  are like terms ; but  $a^2$ ,  $ab$ ,  $b^2$  are unlike terms.

*Son* : Cannot the following expression be put in a simpler form :  $8a - a + 4b + 6c - b + 4c - 3a$  ?

*Father* : Yes ; it does not alter the value of the expression, in whatever order we put the terms, if we are careful to prefix the proper sign to each. So, in the expression you have given, we will collect them together as follows :

$$8a - a - 3a + 4b - b + 6c + 4c.$$

Now  $8a - a - 3a = 4a$ , for if we subtract  $a$  from  $8a$  we have  $7a$  left ; and, then, if we subtract  $3a$  from  $7a$  we have  $4a$  left. Similarly  $4b - b = 3b$ , and  $6c + 4c = 10c$ . Thus the expression may be put  $4a + 3b + 10c$ .

*Son* : I see that it is necessary to separate like quantities from unlike quantities before dealing with them.

*Father* : That is so ; and it will be more convenient if, in explaining how to do addition, I make three cases,—viz. :

I.—When all the terms are like terms, and have the same sign.

II.—When all the terms are like terms, but have not the same sign.

III.—When the terms are not all like terms.

*Son* : In the following expressions,  $a + 2a + 3a$ ,  $a - 2a - 3a$ ,  $a + b + c$ ,  $b - 2b + b$ ,  $bc + 3bc + 8bc$ , do not the first and fifth belong to the first case ; the second and fourth belong to the second case ; and the third belong to the third case ?

*Father* : You are quite right ; and I will now give you the rule which applies to the first case,—viz., *Add the numerical parts, prefix the common sign, and annex the common letters.*

*Son* : Then, in the first and fifth examples that I gave before,  $a + 2a + 3a = 6a$ , and  $bc + 3bc + 8bc = 12bc$  ; but is it right to follow the same rule in the expression  $a - 2a - 3a$  ? Does this equal  $-6a$  ?

*Father* : Yes ; for  $-$  is the common sign and  $a$  the common letter, and you have prefixed the one and affixed the other as instructed in the rule. I see you understand that in all cases where no number is stated in front of a letter or letters, that 1 is understood ; thus  $a$ ,  $bc$ ,  $abcd$  mean  $1a$ ,  $1bc$ ,  $1abcd$ .

*Son* : What is the rule in the second case ?

*Father* : *Add all the positive numerical parts into one sum and all the negative numerical parts into another ; take the difference of the two sums, prefix the sign of the greater, and annex the common letters.*

*Son* : By *positive* I suppose you mean all that have the plus sign before them expressed or understood, and by *negative* all that have the minus sign ?

*Father* : Yes, I will give you one or two examples to do :

$$6a - 3a + 10a + a - 4a - 2a$$

*Son* : Collecting all that have the plus sign I get  $6a + 10a$

$+ a = 17a$ , and then collecting all that have the minus sign I get  $- 3a - 4a - 2a = - 9a$ ; and taking the difference of the two sums, and prefixing the sign of the greater, I get  $17a - 9a = + 8a$ .

*Father* : You are quite right; but it is not usual to prefix the positive sign to a simple expression, as it is always understood if no sign is stated.

Can you now add the following :

$$2a + 4a + 3a - 4a + 6a - 7a + a?$$

*Son* : Proceeding as before :

$$\begin{aligned} 2a + 4a + 3a + 6a + a &= 16a, \\ - 7a - 4a &= - 11a, \\ 16a - 11a &= 5a. \end{aligned}$$

*Father* : I will now show you the third case. The rule of addition, when the terms are not all like terms, is,—*Add together the terms which are like terms by the rule in the second case, and put down the other terms,—each preceded by its proper sign.*

The following is an example : add together

$$a + 2a + 3a - 4a + 6b - 7b + b.$$

*Son* : Collecting all the terms containing  $a$  together,

$$a + 2a + 3a - 4a = 6a - 4a = 2a;$$

and dealing similarly with the terms containing  $b$ ,

$$6b + b - 7b = 7b - 7b = 0;$$

and adding the results,

$$2a + 0 = 2a.$$

*Father* : Very good; for if  $7b$  is taken from  $7b$ , nothing remains.

Here is another example.

Add together the following quantities :

$$a + b, b + c, c + d, d + e, a + e, b + d.$$

*Son* : I suppose that if I write them down, with the plus sign between, that I can proceed with them as before ?

*Father* : Yes ; but the best plan in this case is to arrange them as below, so that like terms shall stand in the same column.

$$\begin{array}{rcccc}
 a + & b & & & \\
 & b + & c & & \\
 & & c + & d & \\
 & & & d + & e \\
 & & & & + & e \\
 a & & & & & \\
 & b & & + & d & \\
 \hline
 2a + 3b + 2c + 3d + 2e
 \end{array}$$

I will give you another example.

Add together

$$\begin{array}{l}
 4a + 5b - 7c + 3d, \quad 3a - b + 2c + 5d, \\
 9a - 2b - c - d, \text{ and } -a + 3b + 4c - 3d + e.
 \end{array}$$

*Son* : Arranging them in columns as you showed me before :

$$\begin{array}{r}
 4a + 5b - 7c + 3d \\
 3a - b + 2c + 5d \\
 9a - 2b - c - d \\
 -a + 3b + 4c - 3d + e \\
 \hline
 15a + 5b - 2c + 4d + e
 \end{array}$$

*Father* : By this method of arrangement you have, in each column, all like terms, and it is only necessary for you to take the sum of the positive and negative quantities separately, and deducting one from the other, prefix the sign of the greater : thus in the first column of the example you have  $16a - a$  (that is  $1a$ )  $= 15a$ , in the second  $8b - 3b = 5b$ , in the third  $-8c + 6c = -2c$ , and in the fourth  $8d - 4d = 4d$ .

As it would detain us too long and perplex you too much if I were to go any deeper into addition, I will not show you how to add squares, cubes, etc., now ; but I think you will be able to take up the study from any good book on algebra, should you find it advisable, after awhile, to do so.

*Son :* Will you please instruct me in subtraction ?

*Father :* I will gladly do so, and am well pleased to see that you desire to learn it. You will find that there are one or two things which are difficult to understand ; but I think that with a little patience you will be able to overcome them.

If we have to take  $6 + 4$  from 13, is the result the same if we first take 6 from 13, and then take 4 from the remainder, as if we added the 6 and 4 together and took the result from 13 ?

*Son :* Yes ; for  $13 - 6 = 7$  and  $7 - 4 = 3$ , and again,  $6 + 4 = 10$  and  $13 - 10 = 3$ .

*Father :* Then you can see that  $13 - (6 + 4) = 13 - 6 - 4$  ?

*Son :* I see that ; for if each expression is equal to 3 they must be equal to one another.

*Father :* You will notice that I enclose  $6 + 4$  in brackets ; the reason of this is, we want to take the *whole* of  $6 + 4$  from 13.

*Son :* Can the expression  $a - (b + c + d)$  be written  $a - b - c - d$  ?

*Father :* Yes ; for to take the *whole* of  $b + c + d$  from  $a$  is the same as taking  $b$  from  $a$ ,  $c$  from the remainder, and  $d$  from the result.

*Son :* Will you show me how to do the following :  $13 - (8 - 4)$  ?

*Father :* In this case  $8 - 4$  is to be taken from 13, and if 8 be taken from 13 you see that 4 too much is deducted, because

it is  $8 - 4$  that is to be taken, and therefore if we put it  $13 - 8 + 4$  we express the same as  $13 - (8 - 4)$ .

*Son*: I see; for  $13 - 8 + 4 = 9$  and  $13 - (8 - 4)$  also equals 9.

*Father*: Suppose we have to take  $a - b$  from  $c$ . If we take  $a$  from  $c$  we obtain  $c - a$ ; but, as I showed you with the figures, we take too much from  $c$ , for we have only to take the difference between  $a$  and  $b$ , that is  $a - b$  from  $c$ , and therefore we must increase the result by  $b$ , thus  $c - a + b$ , and this is equal to  $c - (a - b)$ .

*Son*: Then  $c - (b + a - d) = c - b - a + d$ ; because if  $b$  is deducted from  $c$  and then  $a$  from the remainder, too much has been taken by  $d$ , and  $d$  must be added to the result.

*Father*: I will now arrange before you some of the expressions we have been dealing with, and wish you to notice them carefully, and point out a similarity that there is in them all.

$$a - (b + c + d) = a - b - c - d,$$

$$13 - (8 - 4) = 13 - 8 + 4,$$

$$c - (a - b) = c - a + b,$$

$$c - (b + a - d) = c - b - a + d.$$

*Son*: I notice that every term which has been enclosed in a bracket has a different sign when taken out of the bracket.

*Father*: That is just what I wished you to see, for in each of these cases the bracket has a minus sign before it, and you will now be able to understand the rule for subtraction,—viz.,

*Change the signs of all the terms in the expression to be subtracted and then collect the terms as in addition.* I will give you an example to do: From  $4a - 3b + 2c$  subtract  $3a - b + c$ .

*Son*:  $(4a - 3b + 2c) - (3a - b + c)$ . In this example  $3a - b + c$  is the expression to be subtracted, and therefore I change

the signs of all the terms in it thus:  $-3a + b - c$ , and then collecting the terms as in addition I get

$$\begin{array}{r} 4a - 3b + 2c \\ -3a + b - c \\ \hline a - 2b + c \end{array}$$

*Father*: From  $a - b + c$  take  $a - b - c$ .

*Son*:  $a - b - c$  is the expression to be subtracted, and therefore I must change the signs of all the terms in it, thus  $-a + b + c$ , and then proceed as in addition:

$$\begin{array}{r} a - b + c \\ -a + b + c \\ \hline 2c \end{array}$$

*Father*: From  $a + b + (7a - b)$  take  $2a - 3b$ , and from the remainder take  $5a + 6b$ .

*Son*: Changing the signs of the expression to be subtracted it becomes  $-2a + 3b$ , and simplifying the first expression it becomes  $a + b + 7a - b = 8a$ ; to this I add  $-2a + 3b$ , thus:

$$\begin{array}{r} -2a + 3b \\ 8a \\ \hline 6a + 3b \end{array}$$

And changing the signs again in the second case I get  $-5a - 6b$  and add it to the remainder in the first case, thus:

$$\begin{array}{r} 6a + 3b \\ -5a - 6b \\ \hline a - 3b \end{array}$$

*Son*: Will you now kindly show me how to do multiplication?

*Father*: You know that in whatever order you multiply several numbers together the result is the same.

*Son*: Yes;  $3 \times 4 = 12$  and  $4 \times 3 = 12$ . Again,  $2 \times 3 \times 4 \times 5 = 120$ , and the same figures multiplied in different order give the same result, thus  $5 \times 3 \times 4 \times 2 = 120$ .

*Father*: What is true of numbers in arithmetic is true also in this case of letters in algebra, for  $abc = acb = bca = cab$ .

*Son*: Does the rule apply to such expressions as

$$c(a + b) \text{ and } (a + b)(c + d)?$$

*Father*: Yes; for

$$c(a + b) = (a + b)c \text{ and } (a + b)(c + d) = (c + d)(a + b).$$

In dealing with multiplication I will make three cases similar to what I did in addition,—viz.:

I.—The multiplication of simple expressions.

II.—The multiplication of a compound expression by a simple expression.

III.—The multiplication of compound expressions.

*Son*: Will you please show me how to multiply the following two simple expressions,  $2a \times 3b$ ?

*Father*: As I explained before, it does not matter in what order we put them, and therefore we may write the product in full, thus:  $2 \times a \times 3 \times b$ , or  $2 \times 3 \times a \times b$ ; and it is therefore equal to  $6ab$ , for  $2 \times 3 = 6$ , and  $a \times b = ab$ .

You will therefore understand the following rule for multiplying simple expressions: *Multiply together the numerical parts and put the letters after this product.*

*Son*: Then  $6a \times 2bc = 12 abc$ , and  $3a \times 4b \times 2c = 24 abc$ .

*Father* : I will now show you how to multiply  $a + b$  by 3.

I have  $3(a + b)$ , and this equals  $(a + b) + (a + b) + (a + b)$ , that is, three times  $a + b$  ; but if I take away the brackets and collect the letters together I get  $a + b + a + b + a + b = 3a + 3b$ , and in the same way  $8(a + b) = 8a + 8b$ .

*Son* : I see, and I suppose that  $a + b$  multiplied by  $c$ , that is,  $c(a + b)$ , equals  $ca + cb$ ?

*Father* : That is so ; and similarly  $2(a - b) = 2a - 2b$ ,  $5(a - b) = 5a - 5b$ , and  $c(a - b) = ca - cb$  ; and this gives rise to the following rule : *Multiply each term of the compound expression by the simple expression, and put the sign of the term before the result, and collect these results to form the complete product.*

*Son* : I understand. Then  $ab(x + y - z) = abx + aby - abz$ ?

*Father* : Yes. I will now proceed to the third case. Suppose I have to multiply  $c + d$  by  $a + b$ , I can multiply  $c + d$  by  $a$ , and also by  $b$ , and add the two results, thus :

$$(a + b)(c + d) = a(c + d) + b(c + d);$$

$$\text{but } a(c + d) = ac + ad,$$

$$\text{and } b(c + d) = bc + bd;$$

and adding the results I get  $ac + ad + bc + bd$ .

*Son* : I understand this, and I suppose I may deal with the following in the same way,—viz., multiply  $c + d$  by  $a - b$ .

$$(a - b)(c + d) = a(c + d) - b(c + d),$$

$$\text{but } a(c + d) = ac + ad,$$

$$\text{and } b(c + d) = bc + bd;$$

and taking  $bc + bd$  from  $ac + ad$ , by changing the signs, and then adding, I get  $ac + ad - bc - bd$ .

*Father* : You are perfectly right ; and also in multiplying  $c-d$  by  $a-b$  the same principle is to be observed, thus :

$$(a-b)(c-d) = a(c-d) - b(c-d),$$

$$\text{but } a(c-d) = ac - ad,$$

$$\text{and } b(c-d) = bc - bd ;$$

and subtracting  $bc - bd$  from  $ac - ad$ , the result is  $ac - ad - bc + bd$ .

*Son* : What is meant by the rule of signs ?

*Father* : If  $+a$  be multiplied by  $+b$  the result is  $+ab$ , and if  $-a$  be multiplied by  $-b$  the result is also  $ab$  ; but if  $+a$  be multiplied by  $-b$  the result is  $-ab$ , and if  $-a$  be multiplied by  $+b$  the result is  $-ab$ .

This gives rise to the rule of signs, which is—*like signs produce +, and unlike signs —*.

*Son* : Then in the example you gave me a short time since  $(a-b)(c-d)$ , I see that  $(c-d)a = ac - ad$  and  $-b(c-d) = -bc + bd$  ; and, therefore, all I require to do is to add the results together, thus :  $ac - ad - bc + bd$ , and I see this agrees with the result I got before.

*Father* : I will now give you the general rule for multiplying algebraical expressions,—viz., *Multiply each term of the expression to be multiplied by each term of the multiplier ; if the terms have the same sign prefix the sign + to the product, if they have different signs prefix the sign — ; then collect these results to form the complete product.*

*Son* : How can I multiply  $a$  by  $a$  or  $ab$  by  $ab$  ?

*Father* : In arithmetic, if a number be multiplied by itself it is said to be squared, thus  $6 \times 6 = 6^2$  ; and if the square be multiplied by the number it is cubed, or is said to be raised to

the third power, thus  $6^3 \times 6 = 6^4$ , and as many times as a number is multiplied by itself it is said to be raised to that power; and a little figure called the index is written above, and a little to the right of, the number to denote it, thus  $6 \times 6 \times 6 \times 6 \times 6 \times 6 \times 6 = 6^7$  or 6 to the seventh power.

*Son* : And is this also the case with letters in algebra ?

*Father* : Yes ;  $a \times a = a^2$ , that is  $a$  to the second power, and  $ab \times ab = a^2b^2$ , that is  $ab$  to the second power ; and if we suppose  $a$  to be the first power, thus  $a^1$ , you will see that by adding the *indexes* together you can ascertain what power it is raised to ; for instance :

$$\begin{aligned} a^1 \times a^1 \times a^1 \times a^1 &= a^4, \\ a^1b^1 \times a^1b^1 \times a^1b^1 &= a^3b^3, \\ b^2 \times b^2 \times b^2 &= b^6, \\ a^2b^3 \times a^2b^2 &= a^4b^5, \\ a^2 \times a &= a^3, \\ a^3 \times a^2 \times a^1 &= a^6. \end{aligned}$$

I will try you with the following example :

Multiply  $(2a + 3c - 4b)$  by  $3a - 4c$ .

*Son* :

$$\begin{aligned} &3a(2a + 3c - 4b) - 4c(2a + 3c - 4b) \\ &= 6a^2 + 9ac - 12ab - (8ac + 12c^2 - 16bc) \\ &= 6a^2 + 9ac - 12ab - 8ac - 12c^2 + 16bc. \end{aligned}$$

*Father* : You are quite right ; but you may simplify the result, for in it you have  $9ac$  and  $-8ac$ , and deducting one from the other, and prefixing the sign of the greater, you will get  $ac$ , and the result will be

$$6a^2 + ac - 12ab - 12c^2 + 16bc.$$

*Son* : How is  $a + b$  multiplied by  $a + b$ , and  $a + b$  by  $a - b$  ?

*Father :*

$\begin{array}{r} a + b \\ a + b \\ \hline a^2 + ab \\ + ab + b^2 \\ \hline a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} a + b \\ a - b \\ \hline a^2 + ab \\ - ab - b^2 \\ \hline a^2 \quad - b^2 \end{array}$
--	--

*Son :* I think I now understand the part of the rule which says *if they have different signs prefix the sign —*; for in the last example, when you multiply  $a + b$  by  $-b$ , I see you prefix the sign  $-$  to each of the terms in the result, thus,  $-ab - b^2$ .

*Father :* I will now explain to you what is meant by a factor. When one number consists of the product of two or more numbers, each of the latter is called a factor of the product. Thus, for example,  $2 \times 4 = 8$ , and each of the numbers, 2 and 4, is a factor of the product 8.

*Son :* But  $2 \times 2 \times 2 = 8$ . Is each of these numbers a factor of 8?

*Father :* Yes; for instance,  $2 \times 3 \times 7 = 42$ ,  $2 \times 21 = 42$ ,  $3 \times 14 = 42$ , and  $6 \times 7 = 42$ . Therefore 2, 3, 6, 7, 14, 21 are each of them factors of 42; in fact, any number which will divide into another number, without leaving a remainder, is a factor of it.

*Son :* I suppose, then, that 4,  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  are each factors of 4  $abc$ ?

*Father :* Yes.

*Son :* I shall be pleased now to learn something about division.

*Father :* It will be convenient for me to make three cases as before,—viz. :

I.—The division of one simple expression by another.

II.—The division of a compound expression by a simple expression.

III.—The division of one compound expression by another.

You will remember that such expressions as  $\frac{3a}{2b}$  mean that the upper is to be divided by the lower, and the result is called the quotient.

*Son* : Yes ; the example you have given means  $3a \div 2b$ .

*Father* : You will also remember that in arithmetic when a factor occurs in a numerator which also occurs in the denominator, it may be struck out of both without altering the value of the fraction.

*Son* : Yes ; for

$$\frac{2 \times 3}{2 \times 4} = \frac{3}{2}.$$

*Father* : This also applies to algebra ; for example :

$$\frac{2ab}{ac} = \frac{2b}{c}, \text{ and } \frac{3abc}{abc} = \frac{3}{1} = 3.$$

I wish to draw your attention to the *Rule of Signs* which I mentioned before, as it applies also to division.

*Son* : What is the rule for dividing one simple expression by another ?

*Father* : Write the dividend over the divisor with a line between them ; if the expressions have common factors, remove the common factors ; prefix the sign + if the expressions have the same sign, and the sign — if they have different signs.

*Son* : I will try to apply this rule to an example.

Divide  $2ab$  by  $3ab$ .

I first write the dividend over the divisor, thus  $\frac{2ab}{3ab}$ , and remove the common factors, thus  $\frac{2}{3}$ , and as both have the same sign, the sign  $+$  is the proper one to prefix; but I have not prefixed it, as you explained to me that it was understood if there was no sign expressed.

*Father*: You are quite right. I will now give you another part of the same rule,—viz., *One power of any number is divided by another power of the same number, by subtracting the index of the latter power from the index of the former.*

For example:  $b^4$  divided by  $b^2 =$  by the rule  $b^{4-2} = b^2$ .

This you will understand by the following:

$$\frac{b^4}{b^2} = \frac{b \times b \times b \times b}{b \times b} = b \times b = b^2.$$

$$\text{Son: Then } \frac{c^7}{c^4} = \frac{c \times c \times c \times c \times c \times c \times c}{c \times c \times c \times c} = c \times c \times c = c^3;$$

that is,  $c^7 - 4 = c^3$ .

*Father*: You are quite right, and a very good proof of this is to multiply the quotient by the divisor, thus  $c^3 \times c^4 = c^3 + 4 = c^7$ . On referring to what I said to you about multiplication, you will find the process in division is exactly the opposite to what it was in multiplication.

*Son*: How is a compound expression divided by a simple expression?

*Father*: *Divide each term of the dividend by the divisor, by the rule in the first case, and collect the results to form the complete quotient.*

$$\text{For example: } \frac{3a^3 - 2ba + a^2b}{a} = 3a^2 - 2b + ab.$$

*Son*: How is one compound expression divided by another?

*Father* : The process is similar to long division in arithmetic. I will give you the rule and one or two examples ; but it will take us too long to go deeply into it at present.

**RULE.**—*Arrange both dividend and divisor according to ascending powers of some common letter, or both according to descending powers of some common letter. Divide the first term of the dividend by the first term of the divisor, and put the result for the first term of the quotient ; multiply the whole divisor by this term, and subtract the product from the dividend. To the remainder join as many terms of the dividend, taken in order, as may be required, and repeat the whole operation. Continue the process until all the terms of the dividend have been taken down.*

I will give you one or two examples :

$$\begin{array}{r}
 x+y) x^2+2xy+y^2 (x+y \\
 \underline{x^2+xy} \phantom{+y^2} \\
 xy+y^2 \\
 \underline{xy+y^2} \\
 x-y) x^2-y^2 (x+y \\
 \underline{x^2-xy} \\
 xy-y^2 \\
 \underline{xy-y^2}
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{r}
 x+y) x^3-y^3 (x-y \\
 \underline{x^3+xy} \phantom{+y^2} \\
 -xy-y^2 \\
 \underline{-xy-y^2}
 \end{array}$$

*Son* : I thank you for the information that you have given to me on division, and although I cannot at present understand it sufficiently well to do difficult problems, still I think I shall be able to manage easy ones such as I very frequently meet with. I would like you to tell me something about equations now.

*Father* : When two algebraical expressions are connected by the sign of equality the whole is called an equation. Thus  $a+b+c=c+a+b$  is an equation, also  $a+b=9$ .

I wish you to learn the following rule,—viz., *If every term on each side of an equation be multiplied by the same number the results are equal.*

*Son* : Then in the example you gave,  $a + b = 9$ , if I multiply both sides by 3 thus,  $3a + 3b = 9 \times 3 = 27$ , do I not alter the result?

*Father* : No. Suppose we give a value of 5 to  $a$  and a value of 4 to  $b$ , then the question would stand  $5 + 4 = 9$ , and if we multiply each side by 3 thus,  $3(5 + 4) = 3 \times 9$ , the result becomes  $3 \times 9 = 3 \times 9$ , so that the two sides are still equal.

I will now give you another rule to learn: *If every term on each side of an equation be divided by the same number the results are equal.*

*Son* : Then, taking the same example as before,  $\frac{a + b}{3} = \frac{9}{3}$ ?

*Father* : Yes; for  $\frac{a + b}{3} = \frac{5 + 4}{3} = \frac{9}{3}$ .

The principal use of these rules is to clear an equation of fractions; for instance,  $\frac{a}{3} = 2$ ; but if we multiply both sides by 3 it becomes  $a = 6$ .

*Son* : I see; for to take away the denominator of a fraction is equivalent to multiplying the fraction by the number so taken away, and in the example you take away the denominator on the one side and therefore multiply that side by it,—that is, by 3.

*Father* : Do you think you can simplify the following equation:

$$\frac{a}{2} + \frac{a}{3} + \frac{a}{4} = 12?$$

*Son* : I do not think I can.

*Father* : Very well, I will show you how to do it. You know that in vulgar fractions what is called the common denominator

is obtained by multiplying together the denominators of the fractions to be added together?

*Son* : Yes, I remember.

*Father* : Also that the common denominator so obtained is divided by the denominator of each fraction in turn, the result in each case being multiplied by the numerator of the fraction, and then the common denominator put under it?

*Son* : I remember that also.

*Father* : All that is necessary, then, is to apply this knowledge to the above example.

*Son* : The common denominator is  $2 \times 3 \times 4 = 24$ , and dividing this by 2 and multiplying the result by  $a$ , the first term becomes  $\frac{12a}{24}$ , and dealing similarly with each of the others they become  $\frac{8a}{24}$  and  $\frac{6a}{24}$ , and adding these three terms together,  $\frac{12a + 8a + 6a}{24}$ , I get  $\frac{26a}{24} = 12$ .

*Father* : You are quite right, but it can be further simplified; for if you multiply both sides by 24 you get  $26a = 12 \times 24 = 288$ , and dividing both sides by 26, thus,—

$$\frac{26a}{26} = \frac{288}{26}, \text{ you get } a = \frac{144}{13}.$$

*Any term may be transferred from one side of an equation to the other side by changing its sign.*

In the example we took before,  $a + b = 9$ : suppose we take  $a$  to the other side, but change its sign as instructed in the rule, do we make the two sides unequal?

*Son* : No;  $b = 9 - a$ , for if  $a = 5$  and  $b = 4$ , and we put the figures instead of the letters, we get  $4 = 9 - 5$ , and both sides are equal, for  $9 - 5 = 4$ .

*Father* : I will not at present show you any further in algebra, but will explain to you, by means of the rules that we have gone through, "Atkinson's Formulæ on Ventilation in Mines."

*Son* : I shall be very pleased if you will, for I frequently hear young men who are studying to become colliery managers say that they have been unable to thoroughly grasp it, though they have striven for weeks together to do so ; but I have no doubt their difficulty arose from want of a little knowledge of algebra.

*Father* : I will first give you the formulæ as they appear in his book.

Total pressure . . .	$pa = ksv^2$	(1)	Where $p$ = pressure per square foot ; $a$ = square feet of sectional area ; $s$ = the area of rubbing surface exposed to the air ; $v$ = velocity of the air in thousands of feet per minute, 1000 feet per minute being taken as the unit of velocity ; $k$ = the coefficient of friction in the same terms or unit as $p$ is taken in.
Rubbing surface. $s = \frac{pa}{kv^2}$	(2)		
Velocity squared. $v^2 = \frac{pa}{ks}$	(3)		
Coefficient of friction . . . . . $k = \frac{pa}{sv^2}$	(4)		
Pressure per foot. $p = \frac{ksv^2}{a}$	(5)		
Area of section . . $a = \frac{ksv^2}{p}$	(6)		

You will understand that the letters will all have different values according to circumstances ; for instance,  $p$ , the pressure per

square foot, will differ in nearly every case you have to deal with; the same, again, with the sectional area of the air-ways.

*Son* : I understand this, but I suppose the rule is true in all cases ?

*Father* : Yes, that is the value of being able to express it in the form of letters, as we can give the necessary values to the letters as circumstances occur, whereas if the rule was put down in figures there would have to be a different rule for each air-way.

*Son* : I see the advantage.

*Father* : If you get the expression  $pa = ksv^2$  firmly fixed in your mind the rest will be comparatively easy. For example, suppose you want to find  $p$ , you have only to divide both sides of the equation by  $a$ .

*Son* : I understand; for  $\frac{pa}{a} = \frac{ksv^2}{a}$  and  $\frac{pa}{a} = p$  (for  $a$  is a factor in both numerator and denominator), so that  $p = \frac{ksv^2}{a}$ .

*Father* : It is not necessary for you to say  $\frac{pa}{a}$ , for  $pa$  means  $p$  multiplied by  $a$ , and if you take  $a$  away you have really divided the expression by it; thus,—

$$p = \frac{pa}{a}, \quad a = \frac{pa}{p}.$$

*Son* : It is very easy, then, to find the value of any of the letters, for it is only necessary to take away the letters that it is multiplied by and to put them under the other side of the equation.

*Father* : You have now got the key to the whole matter, and I will try you with a few examples, but will not trouble you to work them out by figures.

If you know the pressure per square foot, the sectional area

of the air-way, and the velocity of the air-current, can you find the rubbing surface?

*Son* : Yes :  $p$  = pressure per square foot,

$a$  = sectional area,

$v$  = velocity,

and putting down the formula

$$pa = ksv^2,$$

I see that I have the values of all the letters except  $k$  and  $s$  (for I can get  $v^2$  by squaring the velocity), and  $k$  I know is usually considered as 0.0217 lbs. per square foot of area of section ; I therefore only require to show the value of  $s$  by means of the letters, and I can then substitute figures for them if I wish. This I can do as follows :

$$s = \frac{pa}{kv^2},$$

for if I take  $kv^2$  away from  $ksv^2$  I divide that side of the equation by  $kv^2$ , and therefore must divide the other side also by  $kv^2$ .

*Father* : Can you find the velocity if you know the pressure per square foot, the sectional area, and the length and perimeter of the air-way ?

*Son* :

$$v^2 = \frac{pa}{ks}, \text{ and therefore } v = \sqrt{\frac{pa}{ks}}, \text{ that is, the sq. root of } \frac{pa}{ks}.$$

I know the value of  $k$ , the values of  $p$  and  $a$  are given, and by multiplying the length by the perimeter of the air-way I can get  $s$  ; therefore I can find the value of  $v$  by multiplying  $p$  by  $a$ , dividing the product by  $k$  multiplied by  $s$ , and extracting the square root of the result.

*Father* : That is quite correct. I will not take you any further in algebra at present ; but hope you will think well over our conversation and endeavor to profit by it.

## EXAMPLES.

Add together: *Addition.*

1.  $3b - 2a, 4b - 5a, 7b - 11a, b + 9a.$
2.  $5b + 3a + c, 3b + 3a + 3c, b + 3a + 5c.$
3.  $3a + 2b - c, 2a - 2b + 2c, -a + 2b + 3c.$
4.  $7c - 4a + b, 6c + 3a - 5b, -12c + 4b.$
5.  $a - 4b + c, 3a + 2c, b - a - 5c.$
6.  $d - 2c + 3b - 4a, 3c - 4b + 5a - 2d, 5b - 6a + 3d$   
 $- 4c, 7a - 4d + 5c - 4b.$

*Subtraction.*

1. From  $7b + 14a$  subtract  $4b + 10a.$
2. From  $6c - 2a - b$  subtract  $2c - 2a - 3b.$
3. From  $3c - 2a + 3b$  subtract  $2c - 7a - b - d.$

Multiply: *Multiplication.*

1.  $2a - b$  by  $2b + a.$
2.  $c - a$  by  $c + a.$
3.  $c + a$  by  $c + a.$
4.  $c - a$  by  $c - a.$
5.  $a - 2b$  by  $a - b.$
6.  $a + 2ab - c$  by  $5a - 7b.$

Divide: *Division.*

1.  $6a^2$  by  $3a.$
2.  $12b^4$  by  $-4b^2.$
3.  $8a^2b^2$  by  $4ab.$
4.  $x^2 - 3xy + 2y^2$  by  $x - 2y.$
5.  $x^2 - 3xy + 2y^2$  by  $x - y.$
6.  $5x^3 + 10x^2y - 5xz - 7xy - 14xy^2 + 7yz$  by  $5x - 7y.$

## ANSWERS.

*Addition.*

1.  $15b - 9a.$
2.  $9b + 9a + 9c.$
3.  $4a + 2b + 4c.$
4.  $c - a.$
5.  $3a - 3b - 2b.$
6.  $-2d + 2c + 2a.$

*Subtraction.*

1.  $3b + 4a.$
2.  $4c + 2b.$
3.  $c + 5a + 4b + d.$

*Multiplication.*

1.  $2a^2 + 3ab - 2b^2.$
2.  $c^2 - a^2.$
3.  $c + 2ac + a^2.$
4.  $c^2 - 2ac + a^2.$
5.  $a - 3ab + 2b^2.$
6.  $5a^2 + 10a^2b - 5ac - 7ab - 14ab^2 + 7bc.$

*Division.*

1.  $2a.$
2.  $-3b^2.$
3.  $2ab.$
4.  $x - y.$
5.  $x - 2y.$
6.  $x + 2xy - z.$

## USEFUL TABLES.

---

### Weights and Measures.

The origin of all *Weights and Measures* in England was derived from a grain of wheat, *vide* statutes of 51 Henry III, 31 Edward I., and 12 Henry VII., which enacted that 32 of them, well dried, and gathered from the middle of the ear, were to make 1 pennyweight, 20 pennyweights 1 ounce, and 20 ounces 1 pound.

It was subsequently thought better to divide the *pennyweight* into 24 equal parts, called *grains*.

William the Conqueror introduced into England what was called **TROY WEIGHT**, from Troyes, a town in the province of Champagne, in France (now in the department of Aube), where a celebrated fair was held. The English were dissatisfied with this weight, because the pound did not weigh so much as the pound in use at that time in England; hence arose the term *Avoir du poids*, which was a medium between the French and the ancient English weights.

**AVOIRDUPOIS WEIGHT** was first made legal in the reign of Henry VII., and its particular use was to weigh provisions and coarse, heavy articles. Henry fixed the stone at 14 lbs., which has been confirmed by a recent Act of Parliament.

With respect to **MEASURES OF LENGTH**, it is recorded that the various denominations were constructed from a *corn of barley*, 3 of which, well dried, from the middle of the ear, make an inch. Other terms were taken from portions of the human body, such as the *digit* ( $\frac{1}{4}$  of an inch, or a finger's breadth), a *palm* (3 inches), a *hand* (4 inches), a *span* (9 inches), a *foot* (12 inches), and a *cubit* (18 inches), being the length of the arm or bone from the elbow to the wrist. A *pace* (5 feet), or two ordinary steps; a *fathom* (6 feet), from the extremity of one hand to that of the other,—the arms are oppositely extended. It is stated that Henry I., in 1101, commanded that the ulna,

or ancient ell, which answers to the modern yard, should be made the length of his arm; and that the other measures of length were hence derived, whether *lineal, superficial, or solid*.

ALL MEASURES OF CAPACITY were first taken from troy weight, and several laws were passed in the reign of Henry III., enacting that 8 lbs. troy of wheat, taken from the middle of the ear, and well dried, should make 1 gallon of wine measure, and 8 such gallons make a bushel.

Weights and measures were invented, 869 B.C.; fixed to a standard in England, A.D. 1257; regulated, 1492; equalized, 1826, *agreeable to the Act of Uniformity, which took effect 1st January, 1826*.

The term "Measure" may be distinguished into several kinds,—viz., *length, surface, volume, specific gravity, capacity, space, and time and motion*.

The several denominations of these measures have reference to certain *standards*, which are entirely arbitrary, and consequently vary among different nations. In this kingdom the *standard of*

Length is a *yard*.

Solidity is a *cubic yard*.

Surface is a *square yard*, the  $\frac{1}{484}$  of an acre.

Capacity is a *gallon*.

Weight is a *pound*.

The standards of *angular measure* and of *time* are the same in all European and most other countries.

The *Imperial standard yard* and the *Imperial standard pound troy* having been destroyed in the fire at the Houses of Parliament in 1834, *restored standards of weights and measures* have been legalized by 18 and 19 Vic., cap. 72.

---

### I.—Measures of Length.

The *restored standard* of lineal measure, whose length is called a yard, is a solid, square bar 38 inches long and 1 inch square, in transverse section, the bar being of bronze or gun-metal, at the temperature of 62 degrees of Fahrenheit's thermometer,<sup>a</sup>—marked copper 16 oz., tin 2½ oz., zinc 1 oz.,—and near to each end a cylindrical hole is sunk to the depth of half an inch; the distance between the centres of the two

holes being 3 *feet*, or 36 inches, or one *Imperial standard yard*. The standard *square* and *cubic* measures will therefore depend entirely upon it.

At present we have no means of ascertaining why this particular length was originally fixed upon; but as it is most essential that it should always remain the same, it will be found convenient to refer it to something else which we have no reason to suppose ever undergoes any change.

Now, the length of a *pendulum* vibrating *seconds*, or performing 46,400 oscillations in the interval between the mean time of the sun's leaving the meridian of a place and returning to it again, is always the same at a *fixed* place, and under the *same* circumstances; and if this length be divided into 391,392 equal parts, the yard is *defined* to be equivalent to 360,000 of these parts; also, conversely, since a yard is equal to 36 inches, it follows that the length of the seconds pendulum, expressed in inches, is 39.1392.

The *pendulum* referred to in this country is one vibrating seconds at *Greenwich* or in *London*, at the level of the sea, in a non-resisting medium; and if the *standard yard* be at any time lost or destroyed, it would be easy to have recourse to experiment for its recovery.

The *standard yard* being the general *unit* of lineal measure, it follows that all lengths less than a *yard* will be expressed by fractions; and it is on this account that a lineal *inch*, or *ten thousand* of the aforesaid portions of the *pendulum*, is conveniently adopted as the *unit* of lineal measure when applied to small magnitudes.

Hence also, by the same means, the *standard superficial* and *solid* measures will be accurately ascertained and kept correct.

#### LINEAL MEASURE.

12 inches . . . . .	= 1 foot (ft.).
3 feet . . . . .	= 1 yard (yd.).
5½ yards . . . . .	= 1 rod or pole (p.).
40 poles, or 220 yards . . . . .	= 1 furlong.
8 furlongs, or 1760 yards . . . . .	= 1 mile.

By this measure are computed the lineal dimensions of all magnitudes, with the exception mentioned below.

The *length* of a mile is not the same in every country. The Scotch and Irish miles were formerly about 1½ miles English, but are now the

same as English. A Spanish and Polish mile is about  $3\frac{1}{2}$  miles English. A Swedish, Danish, and Hungarian mile is from 5 to 6 English miles. A Russian mile or verst is about  $\frac{3}{4}$  of an English mile, and the French toise is about 6 feet.

The Dutch mile . . . . .	= 8101 yards.
Roman . . . . .	= 1628 "
Arabian . . . . .	= 2148 "
Persian parasang . . . . .	= 6086 "
$1\frac{1}{2}$ inches . . . . .	= 1 line.
$\frac{1}{2}$ inch . . . . .	= 1 barleycorn.
8 inches . . . . .	= 1 palm.
4 inches . . . . .	= 1 hand.*
$7\frac{1}{2}$ inches . . . . .	= 1 link.
9 inches . . . . .	= 1 span.
18 inches . . . . .	= 1 cubit.
$2\frac{1}{2}$ feet . . . . .	= 1 pace.†
5 feet . . . . .	= 1 geometrical pace.
6 feet . . . . .	= 1 fathom.‡
$5\frac{1}{2}$ yards . . . . .	= 1 rod, pole or perch.
4 poles, or 22 yards . . . .	= 1 chain.
3 miles . . . . .	= 1 league.
60 geographical miles, or $69\frac{1}{2}$ English miles . . . . .	= 1 degree (or °).
360 degrees . . . . .	= The circumference of the globe, or any circle.

## CLOTH MEASURE.

This measure is used for all kinds of cloth, muslin, ribbon, etc.

The *yard* in cloth measure is the same as in long measure, but differs in its divisions and subdivisions.

$2\frac{1}{2}$ inches . . . . .	= 1 nail.
4 nails . . . . .	= 1 quarter.
4 quarters . . . . .	= 1 yard.
3 quarters . . . . .	= 1 Flemish ell.
5 quarters . . . . .	= 1 English ell.
6 quarters . . . . .	= 1 French ell.

\* The *hand* is used for measuring the height of horses.

† The *pace* is a measure taken from the space between the two feet of a man in walking, usually reckoned at  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet, but the *geometrical pace* is 5 feet.

‡ The *fathom* is used in sounding to ascertain depth, etc., and for measuring cordage.

## II.—Measures of Surface.

The *Imperial square yard* contains 9 Imperial square feet, and the *Imperial square foot*, 144 Imperial square inches; the *circular foot* (that is, a circle whose diameter is 1 foot) contains 113.027 square inches; and the *square foot* contains 183.346 circular inches (that is, circles whose diameters are each 1 inch).

### SUPERFICIAL MEASURE.

144 sq. inches . . . . .	= 1 sq. foot.
9 sq. feet . . . . .	= 1 sq. yard.
30 $\frac{1}{4}$ sq. yards . . . . .	= 1 sq. pole.

This measure is used for all kinds of superficial measuring, such as land, paving, flooring, roofing, tiling, slating, plastering, etc., and anything having length and breadth only.

Flooring, roofing, thatching, etc., are measured by the square of 100 feet, and bricklayers' work by the pole of 16 $\frac{1}{2}$  feet, the square of which is 272 $\frac{1}{4}$  feet, though this is partly a cubic measure, as the brickwork is reckoned to be 14 inches, or 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  bricks thick.

### LAND MEASURE.

40 sq. poles . . . . .	= 1 sq. rood.
9 sq. roods, or 4840 sq. yards . . .	= 1 sq. acre.
640 sq. acres . . . . .	= 1 sq. mile.
80 sq. acres . . . . .	= 1 yard of land.
100 sq. acres . . . . .	= 1 hide of land.
40 hides . . . . .	= 1 barony.

The dimensions of land, or of any surface of considerable extent, are taken by means of *Gunter's chain*, which is 4 poles or 22 yards in length, and is divided into 100 equal parts, called *links*.

## III.—Measures of Volume.

The *Imperial cubic* (or solid) *yard* contains 27 Imperial cubic feet, and the *Imperial cubic foot* contains 1728 Imperial cubic inches; the *cylindrical foot* (that is, a cylinder 1 foot long and 1 foot in diameter) contains 1357.17 cubic inches; the *spherical foot* (that is, a sphere 1

foot in diameter) contains 904.78 cubic inches; and a *conical* foot (that is, a cone 1 foot in height and 1 foot in diameter at the base) contains 452.39 cubic inches. The *cubic* foot contains very nearly 2200 cylindrical inches (that is, cylinders 1 inch long and 1 inch in diameter); it contains very nearly 3800 spherical inches (that is, spheres 1 inch in diameter); and it contains very nearly 6600 conical inches (that is, cones 1 inch in height and 1 inch in diameter at the base).

#### SOLID OR CUBIC MEASURE.

A *cube* is a solid body, and contains length, breadth, and thickness, having six equal sides. A *cube number* is produced by multiplying a number twice into itself: thus 64 is a cubic number, and is produced by multiplying the number twice into itself, as  $4 \times 4 \times 4 = 64$ .

1728 cubic inches . . . . .	= 1 cubic foot.
27 cubic feet . . . . .	= 1 cubic yard.
40 cubic feet . . . . .	} = 1 ton or load.
50 cubic feet . . . . .	
42 cubic feet . . . . .	= 1 shipping ton.
108 cubic feet . . . . .	= 1 stack of wood.
128 cubic feet . . . . .	= 1 cord of wood.

#### IV.—Standard of Specific Gravity.

##### WEIGHT AND MEASURE OF WATER AT THE COMMON TEMPERATURE.

1 pint = 34.65 cubic inches, or 1.25 lbs.
1 gal. = 277.274 cubic inches, or 10 lbs.
11.2 gals. = 1 cwt.
224 gals. = 1 ton.
1 cubic inch = 252.45 grs., or .08617 lb.
12 " inches = 484 lbs.
1 " foot = 6.25 gals., or 1000 ozs., or 62.5 lbs.
1.8 " feet = 1 cwt.
35.84 cubic feet = 1 ton.
1 cylindrical inch = .02842 lb.
12 " inches = .341 lb.
1 " foot = 5 gals., or 49.1 lbs.
2.282 " feet = 1 cwt.
45.64 " " = 1 ton.
1 cubic inch of mercury = 3425.25 grs.

The *Imperial pound avoirdupois*, which is the standard unit by means of which all heavy goods of large masses are weighed, is *defined* to be the weight of *one-tenth* part of an Imperial gallon, or 27.7274 cubic inches of distilled water, ascertained at a time when the barometer stands at 30 degrees, and the height of *Fahrenheit's* thermometer is 62 degrees; and this standard may consequently be verified or recovered at any time when it may be necessary to appeal to experiment.

If the weight of a cubic inch of distilled water be divided into 505 equal parts, and each of such parts be defined to be a *half-grain*, it follows that 27.7274 cubic inches contain very nearly 7000 such grains; and it is hence declared by Act of Parliament that 7000 *grains* exactly shall hereafter be considered as the *pound avoirdupois*; and that 10 *grains* shall be equivalent to 1 *scruple*, and 3 *scruples* to 1 *drachm*; but the latter denominations are seldom necessary unless great nicety be required.

This weight receives its name from *avoirs*, the ancient name for *goods and chattels*, and *pois* signifying *weight*, in the ordinary language of the country at the time of the Normans.

The *restored Imperial standard pound avoirdupois* is constructed of platinum, the form being that of a *cylinder* nearly 1.35 inches in height, and 1.15 inches in diameter, marked P.S., 1844, 1 lb.

#### DIVISION I.—AVOIRDUPOIS WEIGHT.

27 $\frac{1}{8}$ grains	= 1 drachm	= 27 $\frac{1}{8}$ grains.
16 drachms	= 1 ounce	= 437 $\frac{1}{2}$ "
16 ounces	= 1 pound (lb.)	= 7000 "
14 pounds	= 1 stone.	
28 pounds	= 1 quarter (qr.).	
4 quarters	= 1 hundred-weight (cwt.).	
20 cwt.	= 1 ton.	

This weight is used in almost all commercial transactions and in all the common dealings of life.

By an Act of Parliament passed the 5th of October, 1831, and which came into effect on the 1st of January, 1832, it is directed that all coals, cinders, and culm, sold from and out of any ship or vessel in the port of London, or at any place within the cities of London and Westminster, or within the distance of 25 miles from the General Post-

Office in the city of London, should be sold by weight and not by measure.

*Coals* sold in any quantity exceeding 500 lbs. are to be delivered to the purchaser in sacks containing either 112 lbs. or 224 lbs. net; 10 such sacks, or 2240 lbs., make a ton, equal to 20 cwt.;  $25\frac{1}{2}$  cwt. are equivalent to 1 chaldron. A barge-load, or keel, is 21 tons, 4 cwt.; and a collier, or ship-load, about 20 such keels, or 424 tons.

By an Act of Parliament, which came into effect on the 29th of September, 1822, bread must be sold by the pound avoirdupois, and bakers are prohibited from selling by the peck-loaf with its subdivisions.

*Flour* is sold nominally by measure, but actually by weight, at 7 lbs. avoirdupois to a gallon, 14 lbs. to a peck, etc.

By a late Act of Parliament, the legal stone is, in all cases, to consist of 14 lbs. avoirdupois; 8 such stone, 1 cwt.; 20 cwt., 1 ton.

---

### V.—Measures of Space.

A *circle* contains 360 degrees; a *degree*, 60 minutes; a *minute*, 60 seconds, etc.; consequently, a *semicircle* contains 180 degrees; a *quadrant*, 90 degrees; a *sextant*, 60 degrees; and an *octant*, 45 degrees; a *right angle* contains, or is measured by, 90 degrees, and two right angles by 180 degrees. The *circumference* of a circle is nearly  $3\frac{1}{2}$  times its diameter, or more accurately 3.1416 times; in other words, this number is the *circumference* of a circle whose *diameter* is unity; consequently, the *diameter* of a circle is nearly  $\frac{2}{\pi}$ , or more accurately .31831 of its circumference. In France the *circle* is frequently divided into 400 degrees, a degree into 100 minutes, and a minute into 100 seconds, etc. The latter is called the *centesimal* system and the former the *sexagesimal*; consequently, 1 centesimal degree contains 54 sexagesimal minutes; 1 centesimal minute, 32.4 sexagesimal seconds; 1 centesimal second, .324 of a sexagesimal second; and also 1 sexagesimal degree contains  $1\frac{1}{4}$  centesimal degree; 1 sexagesimal minute, 1.85185 centesimal minutes; and 1 sexagesimal second, 3.08641 centesimal seconds. A mean *sexagesimal* degree of the terrestrial meridian measures 69.045 Imperial miles.

## ANGULAR MEASURE, OR DIVISIONS OF THE CIRCLE.

60 seconds . . . . .	= 1 minute.
60 minutes . . . . .	= 1 degree.
30 degrees . . . . .	= 1 sign.
90 degrees . . . . .	= 1 quadrant.
4 quadrants . . . . .	= 1 circle.
360 degrees, or 12 signs	= 1 circumference or circle.

---

**VI.—Measures of Time and Motion.**

A *mean solar day* is the mean time between the successive returns of the sun to the same meridian, and is divided into 24 hours, an hour into 60 minutes, and a minute into 60 seconds, etc.; hence the mean daily apparent motion of the sun is 15 degrees per hour, or 1 degree in 4 minutes of time. A *sidereal day* is the real and invariable period of the diurnal rotation, and contains 23 hours, 56 minutes,  $4\frac{1}{10}$  seconds of mean solar time. A *tropical year* is the period of one revolution of the earth in its orbit, and contains 365 days, 5 hours, 48 minutes, 49.19 seconds of mean solar time. The seconds pendulum makes 86,400 vibrations in a mean solar day at the same place on the earth's surface.

## DECIMALS OF A FOOT AND A SHILLING.

1	= .083333
2	= .166666
3	= .25
4	= .333333
5	= .416666
6	= .5
7	= .583333
8	= .666666
9	= .75
10	= .833333
11	= .916666

To find the area of a circle, multiply diameter by itself, and again by .7854.

To find the circumference, multiply 3.1416 by the diameter.

**WEIGHT OF COAL IN TONS PER ACRE, FROM ONE INCH THICK TO  
TWELVE FEET ELEVEN INCHES.**

Inches.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
Pt. Tons.											
1	1519.25	1645.85	1772.45	1899.06	2025.66	2152.27	2278.87	2405.48	2532.08	2658.69	2785.29
2	3038.50	3165.10	3291.70	3418.31	3544.91	3671.52	3798.12	3924.73	4051.33	4177.94	4304.54
3	4557.75	4684.35	4810.95	4937.56	5064.16	5190.77	5317.37	5443.98	5570.58	5697.19	5823.79
4	6077.00	6203.60	6330.20	6456.81	6583.41	6710.02	6836.62	6963.23	7089.83	7216.44	7343.04
5	7596.25	7722.85	7849.45	7976.06	8102.66	8229.27	8355.87	8482.48	8609.08	8735.69	8862.29
6	9115.51	9242.11	9368.71	9495.32	9621.92	9748.53	9875.13	10001.74	10128.34	10254.95	10381.55
7	10634.76	10761.36	10887.96	11014.57	11141.17	11267.78	11394.38	11520.99	11647.59	11774.20	11900.80
8	12154.01	12280.61	12407.21	12533.82	12660.42	12787.03	12913.63	13040.24	13166.84	13293.45	13420.05
9	13673.27	13799.87	13926.47	14053.08	14179.68	14306.29	14432.89	14559.50	14686.10	14812.71	14939.31
10	15192.52	15319.12	15445.72	15572.33	15698.93	15825.54	15952.14	16078.75	16205.35	16331.96	16458.56
11	16711.77	16838.37	16964.97	17091.58	17218.18	17344.79	17471.39	17598.00	17724.60	17851.21	17977.81
12	18231.02	18357.62	18484.22	18610.83	18737.43	18864.04	18990.64	19117.25	19243.85	19370.46	19497.06

CALCULATED FOR A SPECIFIC GRAVITY OF 1.25.

N.B.—Six or seven of the following valuable tables and calculations are by Mr. Fairley, colliery manager :

**WEIGHT OF COAL UNDER DIFFERENT CIRCUMSTANCES.**

Specific Gravity.	Weight of Coal per Acre per Inch Thick in Tons.
1.10 . . . . .	111.411
1.15 . . . . .	116.475
1.20 . . . . .	121.540
1.25 . . . . .	121.604
1.30 . . . . .	131.668
1.35 . . . . .	136.732
1.40 . . . . .	141.796
1.45 . . . . .	146.860
1.50 . . . . .	151.925

**TABLE SHOWING PRICE PER TON, WHEN THE COAL IS RECKONED AT SO MUCH FOOTAGE TO THE ACRE (CHESHIRE MEASURE FROM £20 TO £200 PER FOOT PER ACRE).**

82414.28\*

Per Acre, per Foot. £	Per Ton. d.	Per Acre, per Foot. £	Per Ton. d.
20 . . . . .	1.49	115 . . . . .	8.58
25 . . . . .	1.86	120 . . . . .	8.96
30 . . . . .	2.24	125 . . . . .	9.33
35 . . . . .	2.61	130 . . . . .	9.70
40 . . . . .	2.98	135 . . . . .	10.08
45 . . . . .	3.36	140 . . . . .	10.45
50 . . . . .	3.73	145 . . . . .	10.82
55 . . . . .	4.11	150 . . . . .	11.20
60 . . . . .	4.48	155 . . . . .	11.57
65 . . . . .	4.85	160 . . . . .	11.94
70 . . . . .	5.22	165 . . . . .	12.32
75 . . . . .	5.60	170 . . . . .	12.69
80 . . . . .	5.97	175 . . . . .	13.06
85 . . . . .	6.34	180 . . . . .	13.44
90 . . . . .	6.72	185 . . . . .	13.81
95 . . . . .	7.09	190 . . . . .	14.18
100 . . . . .	7.46	195 . . . . .	14.56
105 . . . . .	7.84	200 . . . . .	14.93
110 . . . . .	8.21	205 . . . . .	15.30

\* The number of tons in a Cheshire acre of coal twelve inches thick.

TABLE SHOWING QUANTITY OF WATER, IN IMPERIAL GALLONS, DELIVERED BY A PUMP AT EACH STROKE OF THE ENGINE.

Dia. of Pump in Inches.	LENGTH OF STROKE.					
	1 ft. 6 in.	2 ft. 0 in.	2 ft. 6 in.	3 ft. 0 in.	3 ft. 6 in.	4 ft. 0 in.
3 . .	0.46 . .	0.61 . .	0.76 . .	0.91 . .	1.06 . .	1.22
4 . .	0.82 . .	1.09 . .	1.36 . .	1.63 . .	1.90 . .	2.17
5 . .	1.27 . .	1.70 . .	2.12 . .	2.55 . .	2.97 . .	3.40
6 . .	1.84 . .	2.44 . .	3.05 . .	3.67 . .	4.28 . .	4.89
7 . .	2.50 . .	3.38 . .	4.16 . .	4.99 . .	5.85 . .	6.66
8 . .	3.26 . .	4.35 . .	5.43 . .	6.52 . .	7.61 . .	8.70
9 . .	4.13 . .	5.50 . .	6.88 . .	8.26 . .	9.63 . .	11.01
10 . .	5.10 . .	6.80 . .	8.50 . .	10.20 . .	11.90 . .	13.60
11 . .	6.17 . .	8.22 . .	10.27 . .	12.33 . .	13.89 . .	16.45
12 . .	7.34 . .	9.79 . .	12.23 . .	14.68 . .	17.13 . .	19.58
13 . .	8.61 . .	11.49 . .	14.36 . .	17.23 . .	20.10 . .	22.98
14 . .	9.99 . .	13.32 . .	16.65 . .	19.98 . .	23.31 . .	26.65
15 . .	11.47 . .	15.29 . .	19.11 . .	22.94 . .	26.76 . .	30.59
16 . .	13.05 . .	17.40 . .	21.76 . .	26.11 . .	30.46 . .	34.81
17 . .	14.73 . .	19.65 . .	24.56 . .	29.47 . .	34.38 . .	39.30
18 . .	16.52 . .	22.02 . .	27.53 . .	33.04 . .	38.54 . .	44.35
19 . .	18.40 . .	24.54 . .	30.67 . .	36.81 . .	42.94 . .	49.08
20 . .	20.39 . .	27.19 . .	33.99 . .	40.79 . .	47.59 . .	54.39
21 . .	22.48 . .	29.98 . .	37.47 . .	44.97 . .	52.46 . .	59.96
22 . .	24.68 . .	32.90 . .	41.13 . .	49.36 . .	57.59 . .	65.81
23 . .	26.97 . .	35.96 . .	44.95 . .	53.94 . .	62.93 . .	71.93
24 . .	29.37 . .	39.16 . .	48.95 . .	58.74 . .	68.53 . .	78.32
25 . .	31.87 . .	42.49 . .	53.11 . .	63.73 . .	74.85 . .	84.98
26 . .	34.47 . .	45.96 . .	57.45 . .	68.94 . .	80.43 . .	91.92
27 . .	37.17 . .	49.56 . .	61.95 . .	74.34 . .	86.73 . .	99.13
28 . .	39.97 . .	53.30 . .	66.62 . .	79.95 . .	93.28 . .	106.61
29 . .	42.88 . .	57.18 . .	71.47 . .	85.77 . .	100.06 . .	114.36
30 . .	45.89 . .	61.19 . .	76.48 . .	91.78 . .	107.01 . .	122.38
31 . .	49.00 . .	65.33 . .	81.66 . .	98.00 . .	114.33 . .	130.67
32 . .	52.21 . .	69.62 . .	87.02 . .	104.43 . .	121.83 . .	139.24
33 . .	55.53 . .	74.04 . .	92.55 . .	111.06 . .	129.57 . .	148.08
34 . .	58.94 . .	78.59 . .	98.24 . .	117.89 . .	137.64 . .	157.19
35 . .	62.46 . .	83.28 . .	104.10 . .	124.98 . .	145.75 . .	166.57
36 . .	66.08 . .	88.11 . .	110.10 . .	132.16 . .	154.19 . .	176.22

TABLE SHOWING QUANTITY OF WATER, IN IMPERIAL  
GALLONS, DELIVERED BY A PUMP AT EACH STROKE  
OF THE ENGINE—CONTINUED.

Dia. of Pump in Inches.	LENGTH OF STROKE.					
	4 ft. 6 in.	5 ft. 0 in.	5 ft. 6 in.	6 ft. 0 in.	6 ft. 3 in.	7 ft. 0 in.
3 . .	1.37 . .	1.62 . .	1.68 . .	1.83 . .	1.97 . .	2.13
4 . .	2.44 . .	2.72 . .	2.99 . .	3.26 . .	3.53 . .	3.80
5 . .	3.82 . .	4.25 . .	4.67 . .	5.10 . .	5.52 . .	5.95
6 . .	5.50 . .	6.11 . .	6.73 . .	7.34 . .	7.95 . .	8.56
7 . .	7.49 . .	8.32 . .	9.16 . .	9.99 . .	10.81 . .	11.65
8 . .	9.78 . .	10.87 . .	11.96 . .	13.05 . .	14.13 . .	15.22
9 . .	12.38 . .	13.76 . .	15.14 . .	16.52 . .	17.89 . .	19.27
10 . .	15.30 . .	17.00 . .	18.70 . .	20.40 . .	22.10 . .	23.80
11 . .	18.50 . .	20.55 . .	22.62 . .	24.67 . .	26.72 . .	28.78
12 . .	22.02 . .	24.47 . .	26.92 . .	29.37 . .	31.81 . .	34.26
13 . .	25.85 . .	28.72 . .	31.59 . .	34.47 . .	37.33 . .	40.21
14 . .	29.97 . .	33.30 . .	36.64 . .	39.97 . .	43.29 . .	46.63
15 . .	34.41 . .	38.23 . .	42.06 . .	45.89 . .	49.70 . .	53.53
16 . .	39.16 . .	43.51 . .	47.86 . .	52.22 . .	56.57 . .	60.92
17 . .	44.21 . .	49.12 . .	54.08 . .	58.95 . .	63.85 . .	68.77
18 . .	49.55 . .	55.06 . .	60.57 . .	66.08 . .	71.85 . .	77.09
19 . .	55.21 . .	61.35 . .	67.48 . .	73.62 . .	79.75 . .	85.89
20 . .	61.18 . .	67.98 . .	74.78 . .	81.68 . .	88.38 . .	95.18
21 . .	67.45 . .	74.95 . .	82.44 . .	89.94 . .	97.43 . .	104.93
22 . .	74.03 . .	82.26 . .	90.49 . .	98.72 . .	106.95 . .	115.17
23 . .	80.91 . .	89.90 . .	98.90 . .	107.89 . .	116.87 . .	125.87
24 . .	88.11 . .	97.90 . .	107.69 . .	117.48 . .	127.27 . .	137.06
25 . .	95.60 . .	106.22 . .	116.85 . .	127.47 . .	138.08 . .	148.71
26 . .	103.41 . .	114.90 . .	126.39 . .	137.88 . .	149.37 . .	160.86
27 . .	111.51 . .	123.90 . .	136.30 . .	148.69 . .	161.07 . .	173.47
28 . .	119.93 . .	133.25 . .	146.58 . .	159.91 . .	173.23 . .	186.56
29 . .	128.65 . .	142.95 . .	157.24 . .	171.64 . .	185.83 . .	200.13
30 . .	137.67 . .	152.97 . .	168.27 . .	183.57 . .	198.86 . .	214.16
31 . .	147.00 . .	163.33 . .	179.67 . .	196.01 . .	212.33 . .	228.67
32 . .	156.64 . .	174.05 . .	191.45 . .	208.86 . .	226.26 . .	243.67
33 . .	166.59 . .	185.10 . .	208.61 . .	222.12 . .	240.63 . .	259.14
34 . .	176.83 . .	196.48 . .	216.13 . .	235.79 . .	255.43 . .	275.08
35 . .	187.39 . .	208.21 . .	229.03 . .	249.86 . .	270.68 . .	291.50
36 . .	198.24 . .	220.27 . .	242.30 . .	264.33 . .	286.35 . .	308.38

TABLE SHOWING QUANTITY OF WATER, IN IMPERIAL GALLONS, DELIVERED BY A PUMP AT EACH STROKE OF THE ENGINE—CONTINUED.

Dia. of Pump in Inches.	LENGTH OF STROKE.					
	7 ft. 6 in.	8 ft. 0 in.	8 ft. 6 in.	9 ft. 0 in.	9 ft. 6 in.	10 ft. 0 in.
3 . .	2.28 . .	2.45 . .	2.59 . .	2.74 . .	2.89 . .	2.06
4 . .	4.07 . .	4.35 . .	4.61 . .	4.89 . .	5.16 . .	5.44
5 . .	6.87 . .	6.80 . .	7.22 . .	7.65 . .	8.07 . .	8.50
6 . .	9.17 . .	9.79 . .	10.39 . .	11.00 . .	11.61 . .	12.23
7 . .	12.48 . .	13.32 . .	14.15 . .	14.98 . .	15.81 . .	16.65
8 . .	16.94 . .	17.40 . .	18.48 . .	19.57 . .	20.65 . .	21.75
9 . .	20.64 . .	22.03 . .	23.39 . .	24.77 . .	26.14 . .	27.53
10 . .	25.50 . .	27.20 . .	28.90 . .	30.60 . .	32.30 . .	34.00
11 . .	30.84 . .	32.90 . .	34.95 . .	37.00 . .	39.05 . .	41.12
12 . .	36.71 . .	39.16 . .	41.60 . .	44.05 . .	46.49 . .	48.95
13 . .	43.03 . .	45.76 . .	48.83 . .	51.70 . .	54.57 . .	57.45
14 . .	49.96 . .	53.30 . .	56.62 . .	59.95 . .	63.27 . .	66.62
15 . .	57.35 . .	61.19 . .	65.00 . .	68.82 . .	72.64 . .	76.48
16 . .	65.27 . .	69.62 . .	73.97 . .	78.32 . .	82.67 . .	87.02
17 . .	73.68 . .	78.60 . .	83.51 . .	88.42 . .	93.33 . .	98.25
18 . .	82.59 . .	88.11 . .	93.60 . .	99.11 . .	104.61 . .	110.18
19 . .	92.02 . .	98.17 . .	104.29 . .	110.43 . .	116.56 . .	122.71
20 . .	101.98 . .	108.78 . .	115.57 . .	122.37 . .	129.16 . .	135.97
21 . .	112.42 . .	119.93 . .	127.41 . .	134.91 . .	142.40 . .	149.91
22 . .	123.40 . .	131.68 . .	139.84 . .	148.07 . .	156.29 . .	164.53
23 . .	134.86 . .	143.86 . .	152.84 . .	161.83 . .	170.81 . .	179.82
24 . .	146.85 . .	156.65 . .	166.43 . .	176.22 . .	186.01 . .	195.8
25 . .	159.33 . .	169.97 . .	180.58 . .	191.22 . .	201.82 . .	212.46
26 . .	172.35 . .	183.85 . .	195.33 . .	206.82 . .	218.31 . .	229.81
27 . .	185.86 . .	198.26 . .	210.64 . .	223.03 . .	235.41 . .	247.82
28 . .	199.89 . .	213.22 . .	226.54 . .	239.86 . .	253.18 . .	266.52
29 . .	214.42 . .	228.72 . .	243.01 . .	257.31 . .	271.16 . .	285.90
30 . .	229.46 . .	244.76 . .	260.05 . .	275.35 . .	290.64 . .	305.95
31 . .	245.00 . .	261.35 . .	277.67 . .	294.00 . .	310.33 . .	326.68
32 . .	261.07 . .	278.48 . .	295.88 . .	313.29 . .	330.69 . .	348.10
33 . .	277.65 . .	296.16 . .	314.67 . .	333.18 . .	351.69 . .	370.20
34 . .	294.73 . .	314.39 . .	334.02 . .	353.67 . .	373.31 . .	392.98
35 . .	312.32 . .	333.15 . .	353.96 . .	374.78 . .	395.60 . .	416.43
36 . .	330.41 . .	352.44 . .	374.46 . .	396.49 . .	418.51 . .	440.55

# TABLE OF INCLINED MEASURE.

Showing the comparative lengths of the three legs of a right-angled triangle, likewise the gravity due to incline, and the number of square yards in an acre, etc., for every degree of the quadrant, for various practical uses, as per explanations following.

No. of Degrees.	Inclination per Yard in Inches.	One Inch.	Horizontal Measure, Hypothenuse being 1.	Vertical Measure, Hypothenuse being 1.	Deduct Links per Chain.	Gravity due to Incline per Ton in Lbs.	Square Yards per Acre.	No. of Degrees.
1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.
1	0.63	57.59	.99985	.01745	0.01	39.08	4840.72	1
2	1.26	28.63	.99939	.03490	0.06	78.18	4842.95	2
3	1.88	19.09	.99863	.05234	0.14	117.24	4846.63	3
4	2.51	14.29	.99756	.06976	0.24	156.26	4851.83	4
5	3.15	11.42	.99619	.08716	0.38	195.62	4858.51	5
6	3.78	9.51	.99452	.10453	0.55	234.14	4866.66	6
7	4.42	8.14	.99255	.12187	0.74	272.98	4876.32	7
8	5.06	7.11	.99027	.13917	0.97	311.74	4887.55	8
9	5.70	6.31	.98769	.15643	1.23	350.40	4900.32	9
10	6.34	5.67	.98481	.17365	1.52	388.97	4914.65	10
11	6.99	5.14	.98163	.19081	1.84	427.41	4930.57	11
12	7.65	4.70	.97815	.20791	2.19	465.71	4948.11	12
13	8.31	4.33	.97437	.22495	2.56	503.88	4967.31	13
14	8.97	4.01	.97030	.24192	2.97	541.90	4988.14	14
15	9.64	3.73	.96593	.25882	3.40	579.75	5010.71	15
16	10.32	3.48	.96126	.27564	3.87	617.43	5035.05	16
17	11.00	3.27	.95630	.29237	4.37	654.90	5061.17	17
18	11.69	3.07	.95106	.30902	4.89	692.20	5089.05	18
19	12.39	2.90	.94552	.32557	5.45	729.27	5118.87	19
20	13.10	2.74	.93969	.34202	6.03	766.12	5150.63	20
21	13.82	2.60	.93358	.35837	6.64	802.74	5184.34	21
22	14.54	2.47	.92718	.37461	7.28	839.12	5220.12	22
23	15.27	2.35	.92050	.39073	7.95	875.23	5258.01	23
24	16.02	2.24	.91355	.40674	8.65	911.09	5298.01	24
25	16.78	2.14	.90631	.42262	9.37	946.66	5340.33	25
26	17.56	2.05	.89879	.43837	10.12	981.94	5385.01	26
27	18.34	1.96	.89101	.45399	10.90	1016.93	5432.03	27
28	19.14	1.88	.88295	.46947	11.71	1051.61	5481.62	28
29	19.95	1.80	.87462	.48481	12.54	1085.97	5533.83	29
30	20.78	1.73	.86602	.5	13.40	1120.00	5588.78	30
31	21.62	1.66	.85717	.51504	14.28	1153.68	5646.48	31
32	22.49	1.60	.84805	.52992	15.19	1187.02	5707.21	32
33	23.37	1.54	.83867	.54464	16.13	1219.99	5771.04	33
34	24.28	1.48	.82904	.55919	17.10	1252.58	5838.07	34
35	25.20	1.42	.81915	.57358	18.08	1284.81	5908.56	35
36	26.15	1.37	.80902	.58768	19.10	1316.62	5982.54	36
37	27.12	1.32	.79864	.60181	20.14	1348.05	6060.30	37
38	28.12	1.28	.78801	.61566	21.20	1379.07	6142.05	38
39	29.14	1.23	.77715	.62932	22.28	1409.67	6228.01	39
40	30.21	1.19	.76604	.64279	23.40	1439.84	6318.20	40
41	31.29	1.15	.75471	.65606	24.53	1469.57	6413.05	41
42	32.41	1.11	.74314	.66913	25.69	1498.85	6512.90	42
43	33.56	1.07	.73135	.68200	26.86	1527.68	6617.89	43

TABLE OF INCLINED MEASURE—CONTINUED.

No. of Degrees.	Inclina- tion per Yard in Inches.	One Inch.	Horizontal Measure, Hypothe- nuse being 1.	Vertical Measure, Hypothe- nuse being 1.	Deduct Links per Chain.	Gravity due to Incline per Ton in Lbs.	Square Yards per Acre.	No. of Degrees.
1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.
44	34.76	1.03	.71934	.69466	28.07	1556.03	6728.38	44
45	36.00	1.00	.70711	.79711	29.29	1583.92	6844.76	45
46	37.27	.96	.69466	.71934	30.53	1611.32	6967.43	46
47	38.60	.93	.68200	.73135	31.80	1638.22	7096.77	47
48	39.98	.90	.66913	.74314	33.09	1664.63	7233.27	48
49	41.41	.87	.65606	.75471	34.39	1690.55	7377.37	49
50	42.90	.84	.64279	.76604	35.72	1715.92	7529.67	50
51	44.46	.81	.62932	.77715	37.07	1740.81		51
52	46.07	.75	.61566	.78801	38.43	1765.14		52
53	47.77	.73	.60181	.79864	39.82	1788.95		53
54	49.54	.70	.58778	.80902	41.22	1812.20		54
55	51.41	.67	.57358	.81915	42.64	1834.89		55
56	53.36	.65	.55919	.82904	44.08	1857.04		56
57	55.44	.62	.54464	.83867	45.54	1878.62		57
58	57.61	.62	.52992	.84805	47.01	1899.63		58
59	59.92	.60	.51504	.85717	48.50	1920.06		59
60	62.35	.58	.5	.86602	50.00	1939.88		60
61	64.94	.55	.48481	.87462	51.52	1959.14		61
62	67.69	.53	.46947	.88295	53.05	1977.80		62
63	70.65	.51	.45399	.89101	54.60	1995.86		63
64	73.80	.49	.43837	.89879	56.16	2013.28		64
65	77.20	.47	.42262	.90631	57.74	2030.13		65
66	80.86	.45	.40674	.91355	59.33	2046.35		66
67	84.81	.42	.39073	.92050	60.93	2061.92		67
68	89.10	.40	.37461	.92718	62.54	2076.88		68
69	93.77	.38	.35837	.93358	64.16	2091.21		69
70	98.91	.36	.34202	.93959	65.80	2104.90		70
71	104.53	.34	.32557	.94552	67.44	2117.96		71
72	110.80	.32	.30902	.95106	69.10	2130.37		72
73	117.73	.31	.29237	.95630	70.76	2140.11		73
74	125.56	.29	.27564	.96126	72.44	2153.22		74
75	134.37	.27	.25882	.96593	74.12	2163.68		75
76	144.40	.25	.24192	.97030	75.81	2173.47		76
77	155.90	.23	.22495	.97437	77.50	2182.58		77
78	169.36	.21	.20791	.97815	79.21	2191.05		78
79	185.20	.19	.19081	.98163	80.92	2198.85		79
80	204.10	.18	.17365	.98481	82.63	2205.97		80
81	227.34	.16	.15643	.98769	84.36	2212.42		81
82	256.11	.14	.13917	.99027	86.08	2218.20		82
83	293.13	.12	.12187	.99253	87.81	2223.26		83
84	342.60	.10	.10453	.99452	89.55	2227.72		84
85	411.27	.09	.08716	.99619	91.28	2231.46		85
86	514.52	.07	.06976	.99756	93.02	2234.53		86
87			.05234	.99863	94.77	2236.93		87
88			.03490	.99939	96.51	2238.63		88
89			.01745	.99985	98.25	2239.66		89

It is obviously unnecessary to give this above (about) 80 degrees.

REMARKS ON THE CONSTRUCTION AND APPLICATION OF THE  
FOREGOING TABLE.

**COLUMN 1.**—This is the amount of the angle which inclined planes make with the horizon, and is found sometimes with the compass cover and a small plummet, more correctly with a quadrant attached to the compass for the purpose, but more accurately by a theodolite.

**COLUMN 2** gives the expression of the amount of elevation in phraseology more familiar to many colliery agents than "degrees," for, when speaking of the amount of the rise of underground roads, they generally say they rise so much per yard.

**COLUMN 3.**—This is only another way of expressing the amount of the gradient, and is obtained by dividing the horizontal measure by the vertical rise.

**COLUMN 4.**—The figures given in this column show the length of the cosine, radius being unity; or, in other words, the length of the base of a right-angled triangle, the hypotenuse being one. Therefore, in order to obtain the length of the horizontal measure, when the hypotenuse and angle have been obtained, say—

As 1 : cosine :: hypotenuse : base; or multiply the hypotenusal measure by the figures in this column, and the result will be the horizontal measure.

**EXAMPLE.**—I took a sight up an incline rising 35 deg., and the distance on the slant was 870 links: what is the horizontal measure? What is the proper distance to be plotted?

Opposite 35 in the fourth column I find .81915; this multiplied by  $870 = 712.66$ , or  $712\frac{3}{4}$  links nearly.

The same result may be obtained by deducting the proper number of links per chain as given in Column 6.

**COLUMN 5.**—The figures in this column show the length of the sine, radius being one, or the length of the perpendicular of a right-angled triangle, hypotenuse being unity. Therefore, to ascertain the amount of rise on an incline, the elevation and slant distance being given, say,—

As 1 : sine :: hypotenuse : perpendicular; or multiply the slant measure by the figures in this column opposite the number of degrees.

**EXAMPLE.**—What is the vertical rise of an incline whose angle is 36 deg., and slant distance 400 links?

$$400 \times .58778 = 235.112 \text{ links,}$$

$$\text{or, } 235.112 \times 7.92 = 155 \text{ ft. 2 in.}$$

For an explanation of the manner of forming a table of natural sines, cosines, etc., see any treatise on plane trigonometry.

It may be asked why we have extended the table beyond 45 deg., when it is so well understood that the cosines of 46 deg., 47 deg., 48 deg., etc., are always the same as the sines of 44 deg., 43 deg., 42 deg., etc., respectively. We think that by doing so we simplify matters, and besides, it is necessary for showing the figures in Columns 2, 3, 6, 7, and 8.

**COLUMN 6.**—The number of links to be deducted in a chain, given in this column, has been found thus:

$$100 \frac{\text{Cosine} \times 100}{1};$$

the reason will be apparent from what has already been said.

**COLUMN 7.**—A body on an inclined plane will be supported by a weight which bears the same proportion to it that the height does to the length of the plane. Thus, at an angle of 28 deg., we have the length and height of the plane in the proportion of 1 to .46947; therefore the weight that would support, say 2240 lbs. at this angle would be—

$$\text{As } 1 : .46947 :: 2240 : 1051.61.$$

This is what we have called the “gravity due to incline” in the table. The weight shown has been obtained by multiplying the number of pounds in a ton by the sine of the different angles. These figures will be found of some use in the case of slants, where, for instance, coal is pulled up an inclined plane by means of a stationary engine and rope.

**EXAMPLE.**—The weight of the tubs, coal, rope, etc., which is pulled up a slant whose angle is 26 deg. amounts to 70 cwt.: to how much weight is this equivalent pulled up vertically, or what is the working load of the rope, independent of friction?

70 cwt. = 7840 lbs.

Opposite angle 26 deg., in Column 7, we find 981.94.

Then as 2240 : 981.94 : : 7840 : 3437 lbs., or 30 cwt., 2 qrs., 21 lbs. Then by referring to the "Table of the Weight and Strength of Ropes," we shall ascertain the size of rope required for this work according to the makers' rule. (Due allowance must be made for friction, etc.)

COLUMN 8.—Everybody knows that there are 4840 square yards in a statute acre; but in the case of property lying obliquely, which is not infrequently so with coal seams, there is plainly an increase of superficial measure under a given area in proportion to the angle of elevation, so that the number of square yards in an acre of coal depends on the declivity.

The figures in this column show the ratio of increase from 1 to 50 deg., and are obtained by the following formula :

$$\frac{1 \times 4840}{\cosine}.$$

APPLICATION.—A colliery proprietor desires to know how many cubic yards of coal there are under twelve acres of land in a seam 6 feet thick, measured at right angles to the line of dip, the amount of which is uniformly 30 deg., which is supposed to be lying evenly and uninterruptedly throughout, and the whole of which will be won by a level at the lowest boundary.

The number of square yards in an acre per the table is 5588.78; thickness of seams two yards.

Then  $5588.78 \times 2 = 11177.56$  cubic contents in yards per acre and  $11177.56 \times 12 = 134130.72$  total contents.

This result, we are aware, may be arrived at otherwise,—namely, by measuring the thickness of the seam vertically.

This would be  $\frac{6}{.86602} = 6.9282$  ft., and  $\frac{4840 \times 6.9282}{8} = 11177.50$  yards per acre, same as above very nearly.

TABLE SHOWING THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN TRUE  
AND APPARENT LEVELS, IN FEET, CALCULATED  
BY THE FOLLOWING FORMULA:

$$\frac{\text{Distance}^2}{\text{Diameter of earth.}}$$

The diameter of the earth, 7912 miles; one-seventh deducted for  
refraction.

Distance in Chains.	Difference for Curvature.	Corrected for Refraction.	Distance in Miles.	Difference for Curvature.	Corrected for Refraction.
1	.000104	.000089	0 $\frac{1}{4}$	0.042	0.086
2	.000417	.000358	0 $\frac{1}{2}$	0.167	0.142
3	.000938	.000804	0 $\frac{3}{4}$	0.375	0.322
4	.001668	.001430	1	0.667	0.571
5	.002605	.002238	2	2.667	2.285
6	.003752	.003216	3	6.000	5.150
7	.005107	.004378	4	10.675	9.150
8	.006670	.005717	5	16.675	14.292
9	.008442	.007236	6	24.008	20.578
10	.010422	.008933	7	32.688	28.014
11	.012610	.010809	8	42.692	36.593
12	.015007	.012863	9	54.025	46.307
13	.017613	.015097	10	66.700	57.171
14	.020427	.017509	11	80.708	69.178
15	.023450	.020100	12	96.050	82.329
16	.026780	.022869	13	112.717	96.615
17	.030120	.025817	14	130.733	112.057
18	.033623	.028943	15	150.075	128.638
19	.037567	.032248	16	170.750	146.357
20	.041687	.035732	17	192.767	165.229
21	.045960	.038394	18	216.108	185.235
22	.050442	.043236	19	240.783	206.385
23	.055132	.047259	20	266.800	228.686
24	.060031	.051455	Feet.		
25	.065137	.055832	500	0.00598	0.00513
26	.070452	.060388	1000	0.02398	0.02050
27	.075575	.065121	2000	0.09570	0.08206
28	.081708	.070036	3000	0.21533	0.18457
29	.087648	.075127	4000	0.38281	0.32812
30	.093798	.080399	5000	0.59815	0.51269

TABLE OF RAILWAY GRADIENTS, OR INCLINED  
PLANES, REDUCED TO ONE IN TEN.

Feet per Mile.	Inclination.	Inches per Chain of 66 Feet.	Feet per Mile.	Inclination.	Inches per Chain of 66 Feet.
1 . . .	1 in 5280 . . .	0.15	42 . . .	1 in 125.7 . . .	6.30
2 . . .	1 in 2640 . . .	0.30	43 . . .	1 in 122.8 . . .	6.45
3 . . .	1 in 1760 . . .	0.45	44 . . .	1 in 120 . . .	6.60
4 . . .	1 in 1320 . . .	0.60	45 . . .	1 in 117.3 . . .	6.75
5 . . .	1 in 1056 . . .	0.75	46 . . .	1 in 114.8 . . .	6.90
6 . . .	1 in 880 . . .	0.90	47 . . .	1 in 112.3 . . .	7.05
7 . . .	1 in 754.2 . . .	1.05	48 . . .	1 in 110 . . .	7.28
8 . . .	1 in 660 . . .	1.20	49 . . .	1 in 107.7 . . .	7.35
9 . . .	1 in 588.6 . . .	1.35	50 . . .	1 in 105.6 . . .	7.50
10 . . .	1 in 528 . . .	1.50	51 . . .	1 in 103.5 . . .	7.65
11 . . .	1 in 480 . . .	1.65	52 . . .	1 in 101.5 . . .	7.80
12 . . .	1 in 440 . . .	1.80	53 . . .	1 in 99.6 . . .	7.95
13 . . .	1 in 406.1 . . .	1.95	54 . . .	1 in 97.8 . . .	8.10
14 . . .	1 in 377.1 . . .	2.10	55 . . .	1 in 96 . . .	8.25
15 . . .	1 in 352 . . .	2.25	56 . . .	1 in 94.3 . . .	8.40
16 . . .	1 in 330 . . .	2.40	57 . . .	1 in 92.6 . . .	8.55
17 . . .	1 in 310.6 . . .	2.55	58 . . .	1 in 91 . . .	8.70
18 . . .	1 in 293.3 . . .	2.70	59 . . .	1 in 89.5 . . .	8.85
19 . . .	1 in 277.9 . . .	2.85	60 . . .	1 in 88 . . .	9.00
20 . . .	1 in 264 . . .	3.00	61 . . .	1 in 86.5 . . .	9.15
21 . . .	1 in 251.4 . . .	3.15	62 . . .	1 in 85.1 . . .	9.35
22 . . .	1 in 240.4 . . .	3.30	63 . . .	1 in 83.8 . . .	9.40
23 . . .	1 in 229.5 . . .	3.45	64 . . .	1 in 82.5 . . .	9.65
24 . . .	1 in 220 . . .	3.60	65 . . .	1 in 81.2 . . .	9.70
25 . . .	1 in 211.2 . . .	3.75	66 . . .	1 in 80 . . .	9.90
26 . . .	1 in 203.1 . . .	3.99	67 . . .	1 in 78.8 . . .	10.5
27 . . .	1 in 195.5 . . .	4.05	68 . . .	1 in 77.6 . . .	10.20
28 . . .	1 in 188.6 . . .	4.20	69 . . .	1 in 76.5 . . .	10.35
29 . . .	1 in 182.1 . . .	4.35	70 . . .	1 in 75.4 . . .	10.50
30 . . .	1 in 176 . . .	4.50	71 . . .	1 in 74.3 . . .	10.65
31 . . .	1 in 170.8 . . .	4.65	72 . . .	1 in 73.3 . . .	10.80
32 . . .	1 in 165 . . .	4.80	73 . . .	1 in 72.3 . . .	10.95
33 . . .	1 in 160 . . .	4.95	74 . . .	1 in 71.3 . . .	11.10
34 . . .	1 in 155.3 . . .	5.10	75 . . .	1 in 70.4 . . .	11.25
35 . . .	1 in 150.8 . . .	5.25	76 . . .	1 in 69.4 . . .	11.41
36 . . .	1 in 146.6 . . .	5.40	77 . . .	1 in 68.5 . . .	11.66
37 . . .	1 in 142.7 . . .	5.55	78 . . .	1 in 67.7 . . .	11.70
38 . . .	1 in 138.9 . . .	5.70	79 . . .	1 in 66.8 . . .	11.85
39 . . .	1 in 135.4 . . .	5.85	80 . . .	1 in 66 . . .	12
40 . . .	1 in 132 . . .	6.00	81 . . .	1 in 65.1 . . .	12.16
41 . . .	1 in 128 . . .	6.15	82 . . .	1 in 64.4 . . .	12.30

TABLE OF RAILWAY GRADIENTS, OR INCLINED  
PLANES—CONTINUED.

Feet per Mile.	Inclination.	Inches per Chain of 66 Feet.	Feet per Mile.	Inclination.	Inches per Chain of 66 Feet.
83	1 in 63.6	12.45	240	1 in 22	36
84	1 in 62.8	12.60	250	1 in 21.12	37.5
85	1 in 62.1	12.75	260	1 in 20.3	39
86	1 in 61.4	12.90	270	1 in 19.55	40.5
87	1 in 60.6	13.5	280	1 in 18.85	42
88	1 in 60	13.20	290	1 in 18	43.5
89	1 in 59.3	13.35	300	1 in 17.6	45
90	1 in 58.6	13.50	310	1 in 17.3	46.5
91	1 in 58	13.65	320	1 in 16.5	48
92	1 in 57.4	13.80	330	1 in 16	49.5
93	1 in 56.7	13.95	340	1 in 15.52	51
94	1 in 56.1	14.10	350	1 in 15	52.5
95	1 in 55.5	14.26	360	1 in 14.66	54
96	1 in 55	14.4	370	1 in 14.27	55.5
97	1 in 54.4	14.55	380	1 in 13.89	57
98	1 in 53.8	14.7	390	1 in 13.53	58.5
99	1 in 53.3	14.85	400	1 in 13.2	60
100	1 in 52.8	15	410	1 in 12.87	61.5
110	1 in 48	16.5	420	1 in 12.59	63
120	1 in 44	18	430	1 in 12.27	64.5
130	1 in 40.61	19.5	440	1 in 12	66
140	1 in 37.7	21	450	1 in 11.75	67.5
150	1 in 35.2	22.5	460	1 in 11.47	69
160	1 in 33	24	470	1 in 11.23	70.5
170	1 in 31.05	25.5	480	1 in 11	72
180	1 in 29.33	27	490	1 in 10.77	73.5
190	1 in 27.78	28.5	500	1 in 10.56	75
200	1 in 26.4	30	510	1 in 10.35	76.5
210	1 in 25.14	31.5	520	1 in 10.15	78
220	1 in 24	33	528	1 in 10	79.2
230	1 in 22.95	33.5			

TABLE SHOWING THE TENACITY OF WROUGHT IRON  
AND STEEL.

Materials.	Tenacity in Lbs. per Square Inch.		Authority.
	Lengthwise.	Crosswise.	
Wire, very strong, charcoal	114,000		Morin.
Wire, average	86,000		Telford.
Wire, weak	71,000		Morin.

TABLE SHOWING THE TENACITY OF WROUGHT IRON  
AND STEEL—CONTINUED.

Materials.	Tenacity in Lbs. per Square Inch.		Authority.
	Lengthwise.	Crosswise.	
Yorkshire (Low Moor) . . . . .	64,200	52,490	Fairbairn.
Yorkshire (Low Moor) . . . from	66,390	} . . . }	Kirkaldy.
Yorkshire (Low Moor) . . . to	60,075		
Yorkshire (Lower Moor) and Staf-			
fordshire rivet iron . . . . .	59,750	. . .	Fairbairn.
Charcoal bar . . . . .	63,620	. . .	"
Staffordshire bar . . . . . from	62,231	} . . . }	Kirkaldy.
to	56,715		
Yorkshire bridge iron . . . . .	49,930	43,940	Fairbairn.
Staffordshire bridge iron . . . . .	47,600	44,385	"
Lanarkshire bar . . . . . from	64,795	} . . . }	Kirkaldy.
to	51,327		
Lancashire bar . . . . . from	60,110	} . . . }	"
to	53,773		
Swedish bar . . . . . from	48,933	} . . . }	"
to	41,251		
Russian bar . . . . . from	59,096	} . . . }	"
to	49,564		
Bushelled iron from turnings . . . . .	55,878	. . .	"
Hammered scrap . . . . .	53,420	. . .	"
Angle iron from various districts—		. . .	
from	61,250	} . . . }	"
to	50,056		
Bessemer's iron, cast ingot . . . . .	41,242	. . .	Wilmot.
Bessemer's iron, hammered or rolled	72,643	. . .	"
Bessemer's iron, boiler plate . . . . .	68,819	. . .	"
Yorkshire plates . . . . . from	58,487	55,033	} Kirkaldy.
to	52,000	46,221	
Staffordshire plates . . . . . from	56,996	52,251	} "
to	46,404	44,764	
Staffordshire plates, best-best char-			
coal . . . . .	45,010	41,420	Fairbairn.
Staffordshire plates, best-best . . . from	59,820	54,820	} "
to	49,945	46,470	
Staffordshire plates, best . . . . .	61,280	53,820	"
Staffordshire plates, common . . . . .	50,820	52,825	"

TABLE SHOWING THE TENACITY OF WROUGHT IRON  
AND STEEL—CONTINUED.

Materials.	Tenacity in Lbs. per Square Inch.		Authority.
	Lengthwise.	Crosswise.	
Lancashire plates . . . . .	48,865	45,015	Fairbairn.
Lanarkshire plates . . . . . from	53,849	48,848	Kirkaldy.
to	3,433	39,544	
Durham plates . . . . .	51,245	46,712	"
Cast steel bars, rolled and forged			
from	132,909	} . . . }	"
to	92,015		
Cast steel bars, rolled and forged . .	130,000	. . .	Rennie.
Blistered steel bars, rolled and forged	104,290	. . .	Kirkaldy.
Shear steel bars, rolled and forged .	118,468	. . .	"
Bessemer's steel bars, rolled and forged	111,460	. . .	"
Bessemer's steel bars, cast ingots . .	63,024	. . .	Wilmot.
Bessemer's steel bars, hammered or			
rolled . . . . .	152,912	. . .	"
Spring steel bars, hammered or rolled	72,529	. . .	Kirkaldy.
Homogeneous metal bars, rolled . .	90,647	. . .	"
Homogeneous metal bars, rolled . .	93,000	. . .	Fairbairn.
Homogeneous metal bars, forged . .	89,724	. . .	Kirkaldy.
Puddled steel bars, rolled and forged			
from	71,484	} . . . }	"
to	62,768		
Puddled steel bars, rolled and forged	90,000	. . .	Fairbairn.
Puddled steel bars, rolled and forged	94,752	. . .	Mallet.
Mushet's gun metal . . . . .	108,400	. . .	Fairbairn.
Cast steel plates . . . . . from	96,289	} 97,308 }	Kirkaldy.
to	75,594		
Cast steel plates . . . . . hard	102,900	} . . . }	Fairbairn.
soft	85,400		
Homogeneous metal plates, first			
quality . . . . .	96,280	97,150	Kirkaldy.
Homogeneous metal plates, second			
quality . . . . .	72,408	73,580	"
Puddled steel plates . . . . . from	102,593	} 85,365 }	"
to	71,532		
Puddled steel plates . . . . .	93,600	. . .	Fairbairn.

TABLE OF THE RESISTANCE OF MATERIALS TO SHEARING AND DISTORTION, IN POUNDS AVOIRDUPOIS, PER SQUARE INCH.—(*Rankine.*)

Materials.	Resistance to Shearing.	Transverse Elasticity, or Resistance to Distortion.
Brass, wire-drawn . . . . .	. . .	5,380,000
Copper . . . . .	. . .	6,200,000
Iron, cast . . . . .	27,700	2,850,000
“ wrought . . . . .	50,000 {	8,500,000
		to 9,500,000
Fir: red pine . . . . .	500 to 800 {	62,000
“ spruce . . . . .	600	116,080
“ larch . . . . .	970 to 1,700	. . .
Oak . . . . .	2,300	82,000
Ash and elm . . . . .	1,400	76,000

TABLE OF THE RESISTANCE OF MATERIALS TO STRETCHING AND TEARING BY A DIRECT PULL, IN POUNDS AVOIRDUPOIS, PER SQUARE INCH.—(*Rankine.*)

Materials.	Tenacity, or Resistance to Tearing.	Modulus of Elasticity, or Resistance to Stretching.
Brass, cast . . . . .	18,000	9,170,000
“ wire . . . . .	49,000	14,230,000
Copper, cast . . . . .	19,000	
“ sheet . . . . .	30,000	
“ bolts . . . . .	36,000	
“ wire . . . . .	60,000	
Iron, cast, various qualities . . . . .	{ to 13,400	14,000,000
“ average . . . . .	16,500	22,900,000
Iron, wrought, plates . . . . .	51,000	17,000,000
“ joints, double riveted . . . . .	35,700	
“ “ single riveted . . . . .	28,600	
“ bars and bolts . . . . .	{ to 60,000	29,000,000
“ hoop, best-best . . . . .	70,000	
“ wire . . . . .	{ to 64,000	
“ wire ropes . . . . .	70,000	25,300,000
	{ to 100,000	15,000,000
	90,000	29,000,000
Steel bars . . . . .	{ to 100,000	42,000,000
Steel plates, average . . . . .	80,000	

RESILIENCE OF IRON AND STEEL.—(*Rankine.*)

Metal under Tension.	Ultimate Tenacity.	Working Tenacity.	Modulus of Elasticity.	Modulus of Resilience.
Cast iron, weak . . . . .	13,400	4,467	14,000,000	1.425
“ average . . . . .	16,500	5,500	17,000,000	1.78
“ strong . . . . .	29,000	9,667	22,900,000	4.08
Bar iron, good average . . . . .	60,000	20,000	29,000,000	18.79
Plate iron “ . . . . .	50,000	16,667	24,000,000 ?	11.57 ?
Iron wire “ . . . . .	90,000	30,000	25,300,000	85.55
Steel, soft . . . . .	90,000	30,000	29,000,000	81.08
“ hard . . . . .	132,000	44,000	42,000,000	46.10

NOTE.—In the above table of resilience, the working tenacity is for a “dead” or steady load. The modulus of resilience is calculated by dividing the square of that working tenacity by the modulus of elasticity.

TABLE OF THE RESISTANCE OF MATERIALS TO BREAKING ACROSS, IN POUNDS AVOIRDUPOIS, PER SQUARE INCH.—(*Rankine.*)

NOTE.—The modulus of rupture is eighteen times the load which is required to break a bar of one inch square, supported at two points one foot apart, and loaded in the middle between the points of support.

Materials.	Resistance to Breaking, or Modulus of Rupture.
Sandstone . . . . .	1,100 to 2,860
Slate . . . . .	5,000
Iron, cast, open-work beams, average . . . . .	17,500
“ solid rectangular bars, various qualities . . . . .	33,000 to 43,500
“ “ “ “ “ “ average . . . . .	40,000
Iron, wrought, plate beams . . . . .	42,000
Ash . . . . .	12,000 to 14,000
Beech . . . . .	9,000 to 12,000
Birch . . . . .	11,700
Elm . . . . .	6,000 to 9,700
Fir: red pine . . . . .	7,100 to 9,540
“ spruce . . . . .	9,900 to 12,300
“ larch . . . . .	5,000 to 10,000
Lancewood . . . . .	17,350
Lignum-vitæ . . . . .	12,000
Oak, British and Russian . . . . .	10,000 to 13,600
“ Dantzic . . . . .	8,700
“ American red . . . . .	10,600
Sycamore . . . . .	9,600
Teak, Indian . . . . .	12,000 to 19,000

TABLE OF THE RESISTANCE OF MATERIALS TO CRUSHING BY A DIRECT THRUST, IN POUNDS AVOIRDUPOIS, PER SQUARE INCH.—(*Rankine.*)

Materials.	Resistance to Crushing.
Brick, weak red . . . . .	550 to 800
“ strong red . . . . .	1,100
“ fire . . . . .	1,700
Chalk . . . . .	380
Granite . . . . .	5,500 to 11,000
Limestone, marble . . . . .	5,500
“ granular . . . . .	4,000 to 4,500
Sandstone, strong . . . . .	5,500
“ ordinary . . . . .	3,300 to 4,400
“ weak . . . . .	2,200
(Rubble masonry, about four-tenths of cut stone.)	
Brass, cast . . . . .	10,800
Iron, cast, various qualities . . . . .	82,000 to 145,000
“ “ average . . . . .	112,000
“ wrought . . . . .	about 86,000 to 40,000
Ash, crushed along the grain . . . . .	9,000
Beech, “ “ . . . . .	9,860
Birch, “ “ . . . . .	6,400
Box, “ “ . . . . .	10,800
Elm, “ “ . . . . .	10,800
Fir: red pine, “ “ . . . . .	5,375 to 6,200
“ American yellow pine, “ “ . . . . .	5,400
“ larch, “ “ . . . . .	5,750
Lignum-vitæ, “ “ . . . . .	9,900
Mahogany, “ “ . . . . .	8,200
Oak, British, “ “ . . . . .	10,000
“ Dantzic, “ “ . . . . .	7,700
“ American red, “ “ . . . . .	6,000
Teak, Indian, “ “ . . . . .	12,000

NOTE.—The resistances stated are for *dry* timber. Green timber is much weaker, having sometimes only half the strength of dry timber against crushing.

#### EFFECTS OF REHEATING AND ROLLING (*according to Clay*).

Puddled bar . . . . .	43,904	} Tenacity in pounds per square inch lengthwise.
The same iron five times piled, reheated, and rolled . . . . .	61,824	
The same iron eleven times piled, reheated, and rolled . . . . .	48,904	

## CHEMICAL MEMORANDA.

A simple or elementary substance is a body that cannot be resolved or separated into any simpler substance,—as oxygen, carbon, iron.

A compound substance is one consisting of two or more constituents,—as water, carbonic acid gas, olefant gas.

The equivalent number or atomic weight expresses the relation that subsists between the different proportions by weight in which substances unite chemically with each other.

The equivalent of a compound is the sum of the equivalents of its constituents.

Specific gravity expresses the difference that subsists between the weights of equal volumes of bodies.

So far as chemists have been able to discover, there are about sixty-five elementary or simple substances.

No compound body contains all the elementary substances. Most compounds are composed of two, three, or four elements.

TABLE OF ELEMENTARY SUBSTANCES.

Names of Elements.	Symbol.	Atomic Weight.	Names of Elements.	Symbol.	Atomic Weight.
Aluminium	Al	27.4	Nickel	Ni	58.8
Antimony	Sb	122	Niobium	Nb	95
Arsenic	As	75	Nitrogen	N	14
Barium	Ba	137	Osmium	Os	199
Beryllium	Be	9.4	Oxygen	O	16
Bismuth	Bi	210	Palladium	Pd	106.7
Boron	B	11	Phosphorus	P	31
Bromine	Br	80	Platinum	Pt	197.4
Cadmium	Cd	112	Potassium	K	39.1
Calcium	Ca	40	Rhodium	R	104
Carbon	C	12	Rubidium	Rb	85
Cerium	Ce	92	Ruthenium	Ru	104
Chlorine	Cl	35.5	Selenium	Se	79
Chromium	Cr	52.2	Silicium or Silicon	Si	28
Cobalt	Co	58.8	Silver	Ag	108
Copper	Cu	63.4	Sodium	Na	23
Fluorine	F	19	Strontium	Sr	87.6
Gold	Au	197	Sulphur	S	32
Hydrogen	H	1	Tantalum	Ta	182
Indium	In	74	Tellurium	Te	128
Iodine	I	127	Thallium	Tl	204
Iridium	Ir	198	Thorium	Th	231.5
Iron	Fe	56	Tin	Sn	113
Lanthanum	Ln	93	Titanium	Ti	50
Lead	Pb	207	Tungsten	W	184
Lithium	Li	7	Uranium	U	120
Magnesium	Mg	24	Vanadium	V	51.2
Manganese	Mn	55	Yttrium	Y	61.7
Mercury	Hg	200	Zinc	Zn	65
Molybdenum	Mo	96	Zirconium	Zr	89.6

## NOMENCLATURE.

The compounds of the non-metallic elements with the metals and with each other have names ending in "ide" or "uret," as FeS sulphide or sulphuret of iron.

When two or more equivalents of the non-metallic elements enter into combination, the number of equivalents is expressed by prefixes.

Bi means 2 eq., as  $\text{NO}_2$  binoxide of nitrogen.

Ter " 3 eq., as  $\text{Sb}_2\text{S}_3$  tersulphide of antimony.

Penta " 5 eq.

Sesqui "  $1\frac{1}{2}$  eq. (= 2 to 3), as  $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$  sesquioxide of iron.

Proto " first, or 1 to 1, as FeO protoxide of iron.

Sub " under, as  $\text{Cu}_2\text{O}$  suboxide of copper.

Per " the highest, as  $\text{ClO}_4$  peroxide of chlorine.

Alkalies neutralize acids, forming salts.

The terminations "ic" and "ous" are used for acids, the former representing a higher state of oxidation than the latter.

When the substance forms more than two acid compounds, the prefixes "hypo," *under*, and "hyper," *above*, are used.

A base is a compound which will chemically combine with an acid.

A salt is a compound of an acid and a base.

When water is in combination with acids or bases, they are said to be hydrated.

## LIST OF SOME BINARY COMPOUNDS.

Names of Compounds.	Symbols.
Ammonia . . . . .	$\text{NH}_3$
Bisulphide of carbon . . . . .	$\text{CS}_2$
Carbonic acid gas . . . . .	$\text{CO}_2$
Carbonic oxide . . . . .	$\text{CO}$
Cyanogen . . . . .	$\text{NC}$
Hydrochloric acid . . . . .	$\text{HCl}$
Light carburetted hydrogen . . . . .	$\text{CH}_4$
Nitric acid . . . . .	$\text{NO}_5$
Olefant gas . . . . .	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_4$
Peroxide of iron . . . . .	$\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$
Protoxide of iron . . . . .	$\text{FeO}$
Sulphurous acid gas . . . . .	$\text{SO}_2$
Sulphuric acid . . . . .	$\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$
Sulphuretted hydrogen . . . . .	$\text{H}_2\text{S}$
Water . . . . .	$\text{H}_2\text{O}$

## COMMON NAMES OF CERTAIN CHEMICAL SUBSTANCES.

Aqua-fortis . . . . .	Nitric acid.
Bluestone, or blue vitriol . . . . .	Sulphate of copper.
Calomel . . . . .	Chloride of mercury.
Chloroform . . . . .	Chloride of formyle.
Common salt . . . . .	Chloride of sodium.
Copperas, or green vitriol . . . . .	Sulphate of iron.
Corrosive sublimate . . . . .	Bichloride of mercury.
Dry alum . . . . .	Sulphate of alumina and potash.
Epsom salt . . . . .	Sulphate of magnesia.
Ethiops mineral . . . . .	Black sulphide of mercury.
Galenta . . . . .	Sulphide of lead.
Glauber's salt . . . . .	Sulphide of soda.
Iron pyrites . . . . .	Bisulphide of tin.
Jeweller's putty . . . . .	Oxide of tin.
King's yellow . . . . .	Sulphide of arsenic.
Laughing gas . . . . .	Protoxide of nitrogen.
Lime . . . . .	Oxide of calcium.
Lunar caustic . . . . .	Nitrate of silver.
Mosaic gold . . . . .	Bisulphide of tin.
Nitre, or saltpetre . . . . .	Nitrate of potash.
Oil of vitriol . . . . .	Sulphuric acid.
Realgar . . . . .	Sulphide of arsenic.
Red lead . . . . .	Oxide of lead.
Rust of iron . . . . .	Oxide of iron.
Soda . . . . .	Oxide of sodium.
Spirits of hartshorn . . . . .	Ammonia.
Spirit of salt . . . . .	Hydrochloric acid.
Stucco, or plaster of Paris . . . . .	Sulphate of lime.
Sugar of lead . . . . .	Acetate of lead.
Vermilion . . . . .	Sulphide of mercury.
Vinegar . . . . .	Acetic acid.
Volatile alkali . . . . .	Ammonia.
Water . . . . .	Oxide of hydrogen.
White vitriol . . . . .	Sulphate of zinc.

TABLE OF THE RELATIVE POWER OF METALS FOR  
CONDUCTING HEAT.

Gold . . . . .	1000	Iron . . . . .	374.8
Silver . . . . .	973	Zinc . . . . .	363
Copper . . . . .	898.2	Tin . . . . .	303.9
Platinum . . . . .	881	Lead . . . . .	179.6

TABLE SHOWING THE NUMBER OF VOLUMES OF VARIOUS GASES WHICH ONE HUNDRED VOLUMES OF WATER, AT SIXTY DEGREES FAHRENHEIT AND THIRTY INCHES BAROMETRIC MEASURE, CAN ABSORB.—(*Dr. Frankland.*)

Ammonia . . . . .	7800 volumes.
Sulphurous acid . . . . .	8300 "
Sulphuretted hydrogen . . . . .	253 "
Carbonic acid . . . . .	100 "
Olefiant gas . . . . .	12.5 "
Illuminating hydrocarbons . . . . .	{ Not determined, but probably more soluble than olefiant gas.
Oxygen . . . . .	3.7 volumes.
Carbonic acid . . . . .	1.56 "
Nitrogen . . . . .	1.56 "
Hydrogen . . . . .	1.56 "
Light carburetted hydrogen . . . . .	1.60 "

When water has been saturated with one gas and is exposed to the influence of a second, it usually allows a portion of the first to escape whilst it absorbs an equivalent quantity of the second. In this way a small portion of a not easily soluble gas can expel a large volume of an easily soluble one.

	Spec. Grav.
Atmospheric air . . . . .	1.000
Oxygen gas . . . . .	1.106
Nitrogen gas . . . . .	0.972
Carbonic acid gas . . . . .	1.524

TABLE OF THE LINEAL EXPANSION OF METALS PRODUCED BY RAISING THEIR TEMPERATURE FROM THIRTY-TWO DEGREES TO TWO HUNDRED AND TWELVE DEGREES FAHRENHEIT.

Zinc . . . . .	1 part in 322	Gold . . . . .	1 part in 682
Platinum . . . . .	" 351	Bismuth . . . . .	" 719
Tin (pure) . . . . .	" 403	Iron . . . . .	" 812
Tin (impure) . . . . .	" 500	Antimony . . . . .	" 923
Silver . . . . .	" 524	Palladium . . . . .	" 1000
Copper . . . . .	" 581	Platinum . . . . .	" 1100
Brass . . . . .	" 584	Flint Glass . . . . .	" 1248

EXPANSION OF LIQUIDS IN VOLUME FROM THIRTY-  
TWO DEGREES TO TWO HUNDRED AND TWELVE  
DEGREES FAHRENHEIT.

1000 parts of water . . . . .	become	1046
“ “ oil . . . . .	“	1080
“ “ mercury . . . . .	“	1018
“ “ spirits of wine . . . . .	“	1110
“ “ air . . . . .	“	1373

THE AUTHOR'S EXPERIENCE  
DURING  
FIFTY-FIVE YEARS SPENT IN COAL-MINES,  
INCLUDING  
SOME REMARKABLE OR PROVIDENTIAL  
INCIDENTS IN LIFE.

---

My father was a coal-miner, and his ancestors were the same for generations. He was a member and class leader in the Wesleyan connection, and we had family prayer at home morning and evening; I also have been a member of the Wesleyan and primitive Methodist bodies from fourteen years of age; at present I am a class leader and a local preacher.

I commenced work in mines at seven years of age, and have passed through every stage of mining. I was born November 25, 1823, at a small village named Carlton, situated about half way between Leeds and Wakefield, and am now in the sixty-third year of my age. I have had charge of men and mines for the last forty years, and I hope now to spend the remainder of my days above ground, and to obtain a livelihood by other means.

When I was a boy of eight I accompanied my father to the pit; I stayed with him all night. After supper we laid down to rest for the remainder of the hour which was then allowed. My father laid on his back, with his face looking up to the roof, and

he said, "William, rise instantly, for this roof does not appear safe;" and the moment we moved down came a big stone some tons in weight, and fell on the place in which we had been lying. Had it fallen upon us we should both have been killed instantly.

A short time afterwards I was with him again all night. In the morning he sent me home, because he intended to remain at work all day. I went to the pit shaft, and the men neglecting to give a proper signal that some one was coming up, the engine-man ran me against the pulley in the head-gear, and was so frightened that he allowed me to remain in that position for thirty minutes before he had courage enough to let me down. It was considered almost a miracle that I was not killed.

At the age of nine I was on the pit bank when three men were lowering a person down the pit with a horse-gin. I allowed the ascending rope to slide through my hands, the pulley over which the rope passed being within reachable distance of my hands; I did not think of the pulley being so near, and I got my hands fast between the rope and the pulley, and was lifted off my feet, drawn up into the head-gear, and suspended over the pit's mouth. This took the weight from off the three men, and caused them to look what was the cause, when they saw me suspended over the pit's mouth, and had it not been for their presence of mind in not pulling back the gin until they took hold of me, I certainly should have fallen down the pit.

At thirteen years of age my father and brother James were making a furnace place in the pit; they commenced twenty yards from the pit shaft to blow down the roof towards the shaft. The way into the furnace place was by a circuitous route, but every day's work brought them nearer to the pit. One day after the shot was lit, thinking that it might be very near the shaft, my

father said to my brother, " We must run and inform William to keep out of the way." However, before they arrived, off went the shot; it sent bricks and stone thirty yards behind me, and broke them into powder; every inch of the roof, floor, and sides of the mine was covered with brick-bat marks. When the shot was fired I was giving the signal to the men on the pit bank; I was only three yards from the shot, and every one was surprised how I escaped being killed.

---

#### A PIT ON FIRE.

One of the pits under my brother John took fire and continued to burn nine months. To extinguish the fire was a work of great danger, because the mine discharged much explosive gas. One day it was considered that the fire was extinguished, but when the men were down it suddenly filled with smoke, but where it came from no one knew. My brother ordered every person out with all speed. As I was coming towards the shaft, behind the rest, when about twenty yards from the shaft, I saw a light through an opening, and the coal blazing. I instantly gave the alarm to the men, and every one gave himself up as lost, expecting an immediate explosion. All gave a shout of fear which was heard on the pit bank, and the engineman, supposing some awful danger to be present, put the engine on at full speed. As many as could do so leaped into the cage, but there was not room for all. The engineman reversed the engine as soon as the cage came down, and off it went again at full speed, not waiting for any signals. We all jumped out the moment we came to the surface, and the engineman sent the cage down again without waiting for a signal. At the instant he brought

up the last two men the pit fired and sent materials out of the pit into the head-gear. Had the engineman waited for the signal, and not put on full speed, all of us would have been lost. The pit was closed up again several weeks, and when reopened the work of extinguishing the fire went on satisfactorily. My brother sent a request one night for me to attend with five others. We had to put water on the fire and take the ashes away in boxes. We descended the pit at six o'clock in the evening to work until six o'clock in the morning; no other person was allowed in the mine that night. Immediately after commencing work we came upon a large quantity of red-hot fire, from which the heat was almost unbearable. No air was allowed to come near the fire, because it would blow it up; consequently the place was filled with explosive gas which any moment might have exploded. One after the other threw water upon the fire, and the heat and steam appeared as if it almost roasted and boiled us; yet we were compelled to continue. At the expiration of the first hour's work the fire appeared to have gained upon us. We can never continue at this work, said we, eleven hours more without assistance. To rest for one moment is out of the question. The coal will blaze immediately we cease to throw water upon the fire, and there will be an explosion. Again, if we attempt to escape to the surface, probably an explosion will occur ere we arrive there, and it will mean death to every one of us; nor can we allow one to leave the ranks to go for help, because the work requires all six to keep the fire down. What must we do? We cannot continue, said we, until six in the morning. We thought each one of us would be lost; despair was seen on every brow; not one appeared to have strength to continue. Suddenly and unexpectedly, yea, and before we saw

them, six strong, powerful men called out, "How are you, men?" Those words went through each of us like an electric shock; every man seemed at once to forget his danger and weakness. "Sit down! sit down!" said one of our company to the six who had just arrived; "sit down. I thought myself altogether finished before you came to our rescue; the sight of you men makes me strong, like Samson." The expression of this man was the experience of the other five. The fire had been burning in the pit for nine months, but it was extinguished that night.

---

THE SUDDEN DEATH OF A MOTHER WAS THE CAUSE OF  
THE CONVERSION OF ALL HER FAMILY IN ONE NIGHT.

About thirty-five years ago I was the leader of a Methodist class. One of the members of this class was a pious and godly woman, though very poor, named Mary Turner. She had a large family, and her husband and children were very wicked. For many years she prayed for their conversion, yet saw no result to her prayers. One Sunday evening, however, after the preaching service was over, as was her usual custom, she remained for the prayer-meeting. Her husband and some of the family also remained this night. Once more she prayed for their conversion. In her prayer she said, "Lord, save my husband and children; I have prayed for them thousands of times, but have seen no fruit to my prayers: what more can I do? Lord, I have done all that I can do," she repeated, "and can do no more." She repeated these words several times, then fell insensible. We carried her home and placed her upon the bed,

but in about an hour she passed away ; her spirit had taken its flight to be with Christ, which is far better. In a few minutes after her death the eldest son, named Joseph, turning to us, said, while the tears ran down his cheeks, " Friends, you see there" (pointing) " the dead body of my dear mother ; she was a good mother. Yes," said he, " I loved her heart's blood ; she has prayed for me, my father, and all the family thousands of times, yet she never had the pleasure of hearing any of us pray, and now she has left us to pray for ourselves. I was in the chapel when my mother prayed for us for the last time. Oh, how she prayed for her husband and children ! The Lord knew she was ready for death, so He took her. Had He taken me I should have been lost ; but now that He has spared me who was living in sin, and taken my mother who was a Christian, and prepared for the other world, I will take my mother's place." So kneeling he said, " Friends, kneel down, please, and pray for me, and I will not rise again until my peace is made with God." We all knelt and prayed with him, and, praise God ! in about an hour he was led to rejoice from the blessed assurance " that he was justified by faith, having peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ." The eldest daughter then cried, " Lord have mercy on me and save my soul !" She also trusted in Christ as her Saviour. The father then broke out with " God be merciful to me a sinner !" and he too obtained forgiveness. After him another daughter, and then another, until every member of the family had found Christ to be their all-sufficient Saviour. About one hour elapsed between the conversion of each person ; so that all that night was spent in prayer and praise to God, while the dead body of the dear mother lay upon the bed as we had brought her in from the chapel.

## THE DEATH OF MY FATHER.

My father was killed by an explosion of fire-damp at the Victoria Pit, Rothwell Haigh Colliery, near Leeds, on January 24, 1840. The pit was named Victoria to commemorate the coronation of Her Most Gracious Majesty, Queen Victoria. At the time of the death of my father I was sixteen years of age. I shall never forget the day on which he was killed. Providence prepared me for what was about to take place; for I had the impression, as if a voice had spoken to me, that my father, brother Joseph, or myself would be killed on that day.

When the day's work was finished, and my brother and I had landed safely out of the pit, I said to myself, "I hope father may be in the house when we arrive;" and I hoped the impression I had experienced might have been a delusion. The instant I opened the door, therefore, I looked to see if my father was in his arm-chair; but it was empty. I had only just got in the house when a female friend came to inquire if Tommy (referring to my father) had come home, and on my replying, "No," she went out.

Shortly she returned and inquired again, "Has Tommy come home?"

"No," said my mother, "I wish he would, for I am very much troubled;" and the friend went out again.

A third time this friend came and inquired if Tommy had come home.

"No," said mother; "why do you ask so often?"

"Because," said she, "they say there has been an explosion at the Sand Pit."

"But Tommy works at the Victoria Pit," said my mother.

The mention of the Sand Pit was only to put mother off, and when she had gone into the other room the friend said, "Say nothing to her, but there is an explosion at the Victoria Pit."

Seven men and boys lost their lives at the explosion, my dear father being one; and the body of one man has not been found to this day.

---

When I was twenty-one years of age, a few months previous to my taking charge of men and mines, the winding engine broke at the pit I worked at, entombing all of us in the mine, from which there was no way of escape except by sliding down the pit rope to another seam, much deeper down. This was a dangerous undertaking to men unaccustomed to such a task. However, we all agreed to risk the danger rather than remain there; but we had a lad with us, only eight years of age, and for one so young to slide the rope was impossible, and none appeared willing to remain behind with him. I said, "Men, we must not leave the lad here; tie a rope round his body and round the pit rope, and I will take him down on my shoulders. If I keep on the rope he will be safe, because he cannot fall past me." In this way I descended down the pit into the lower seam with my living burden, and we landed safely at the bottom.

---

**A STRANGE IMPRESSION WHICH TOOK PLACE ON THE DAY MY BROTHER JOHN WAS KILLED BY THE BREAKING OF THE PIT ROPE.**

Five or six years after the death of my father I had a colliery under my charge; but the event I am about to relate took place eleven years after his death. My brother John was the manager

at the colliery of which I had charge, and also another colliery, belonging to the same firm, four miles off. I visited my brother at the end of each week, to talk over mine matters, and did so on Saturday, September 27, 1851, when we had a long conversation together. I went down two of his pits, and then returned to the colliery under my own charge.

Shortly after my return I became very unsettled, feeling a desire to go back to my brother; but why I was not able to say. I thought, "Have I forgot to name anything, or have I left something there I should not have done?" But not remembering any cause why I should return, I endeavored to cast the impression off. Again it came with increased force. "Why have I the impression to go back?" thought I. "There is nothing to go for." And again I endeavored to cast off the impression; but every time I did, it came with increased force, until it became painful to bear. At last I considered Providence intended me to return; and I shall never forget how relieved I felt when I decided to go back. When six o'clock came, I wended my way through the fields as it was growing dark, and arrived opposite one of the pits under my brother's charge just as Leeds old church clock was striking seven. At the same instant some one in the pit gave the signal to ascend, and as they were winding up I stood there counting the hour whilst the clock was striking. When the occupants had ascended some distance up the shaft, suddenly the rope broke and down they fell to the bottom. I ran immediately to the pit bank, and the first person I met was my brother's son, who was the engineman. I asked,—

"Is your father down this pit?"

"Yes, uncle," was the reply.

"Then," I said, "I fear he is killed."

---

I fastened the broken end of the rope to the drum, and when the cage belonging to the other rope was wound up, I went down. I shall never forget the sight when I arrived at the bottom. There my brother lay,—not dead but dying. I spoke to him; but he was only able to shake his head. He was sensible of what had taken place.

I said, "John, there is no time to be lost; soon thou wilt be in the spirit world."

My brother had been a good Christian man from his youth; but eighteen months previous to this accident he had fallen from grace and committed sin. It was evident, then, that Providence had sent me as a messenger of mercy to my own brother. I requested him to look to Christ, the only hope of salvation for lost sinners; and if I ever prayed in my life it was in that horrible pit.

For the space of one hour I pleaded and wrestled with God, as old Jacob wrestled all night with the angel. During this time two men who had been repairing the broken conductors said that all was ready to take them up. I then said,—

"John, we are ready now to take you up the pit; there will be a vast number of people on the surface and doctors in attendance;" and, seeing he was sinking, I said, "Soon thou wilt be in the spirit world. I shall never have a chance to speak to thee more. I wish to know if thou art fully satisfied that thy peace is made with God, and confident thou art ready to be with Christ. Thou art not able to inform me by word, yet if fully satisfied thy acceptance is clear, I wish to know; therefore let me know by a wave of thy hand."

No sooner had I spoken than he waved his hand at once to and fro in token of victory as he lay on the floor, and I said,—

"It is enough, John; by the help of God I will meet thee in the better land."

Nearly thirty-five years have passed since then, and I have yet the same hope to meet him as I had when I took him up the pit shaft. He was placed on the cabin door; four men carried him home; and one hour and twenty minutes after he arrived there he passed away to God.

---

William A—— worked at the colliery under my charge. A—— was a strong, big, powerful, bony man; a gambler, a man-fighter, a dog-fighter, and a cock-fighter. I spoke to him on the importance of a change of life, and he became a changed man. He had a large number of cock spurs, which are used when fighting cocks, and wanted to destroy them, but feared that some person might find them. He named the matter to me, and I told him that if he would let me have the spurs I would put them where no person could find them. Accordingly, next morning, he gave me the spurs, with a request that no person should know their whereabouts. I took them down the pit into a working place where the coal had been got out for several yards, and the roof had not fallen. I threw the spurs far into the goaf, and then took a hammer, knocked out a number of props, and then prayed that God would bury the spurs.

A stone broke off from the roof of such a size as I had never seen before. It came down as if let down with big blocks, and I said, "Good Lord, what a gravestone!" It was, to my knowledge, seven yards in width, and I was able to see some ten yards in length; but how much longer it was I could not tell. The

thickness of it I cannot say ; but I saw two and a half yards. When I gave the man A—— a description of the stone, he said, " If the devil, then, wants the spurs he cannot have them ;" and I said, " He would have a job."

---

#### A LAUGHABLE INCIDENT.

James D——, another collier, worked at the same pit. I spoke to him also in reference to a life of sin and wickedness. He became so much troubled on account of his wickedness that when he got into his working place one morning he fell on his knees and called out, at the top of his voice, " Lord save me ! Lord save me !"

Just at the moment another man was passing D——'s tram-gate, and hearing him cry out so loud, thought a big stone had fallen upon him ; he therefore shouted, " Jim, art thou fast ?" but D—— gave no reply. Off the man ran with all speed, calling out, " Jim, art thou fast ?" but he received no reply until he ran into D——'s working place, and found him on his knees. The man addressed him, " Oh, I thought thou wert fast."

" Yes," said D——, " I am fast, and trying to get loose."

He got loose and became a changed man, and was so much delighted with his change that he must tell every person he met. About a fortnight after his conversion, D—— became ill, and the doctor was sent for. The doctor was an infidel. D——, accordingly, must tell him of his conversion, and with tears of joy running down his cheeks, said, " Oh, doctor, doctor, you little know how happy I am ! so happy and warm, with God's love about my heart, that I cannot make you believe."

"Warm at your heart?" said the doctor.

"Yes, warm at my heart," said D——, "with God's love."

"It is an inflammation of the heart," said the doctor, "and unless it is stopped it will be a serious case for you."

"It is not an inflammation of the heart; it is God's loving, warming spirit I feel."

"I tell you," said the doctor, "it is an inflammation of the heart."

"I am fully satisfied, doctor, that it is not; but to convince you, if you prepare a bottle of medicine to stop the inflammation of the heart, I will take it."

The medicine was prepared and taken, but it had no effect whatever on the doctor's so-called "inflammation." D—— got well and as strong as ever, but the so-called inflammation continued.

I was passing his working place one day after, and he called me to him; tears of joy were running down his cheeks, and he said, "I was just thinking the doctor had not cured my inflammation yet; I have it stronger than ever this morning."

---

On February 19, 1857, an explosion of fire-damp took place at the Lund-hill Colliery, by which one hundred and eighty-nine miners lost their lives. The ventilation at this colliery was so bad that I took upon myself to publish the plan of ventilation and expose the system; this caused a discussion, which continued for sixteen weeks, in the mining papers, between myself and the late John Wales, Esq.; after which I received several letters from Nicholas Wood, Esq., president of the Mining Institute,

---

held at Newcastle-on-Tyne, requesting me to become a member of the institute, and offering to pay my yearly contributions. I declined the offer, with thanks; my reason was that I feared I should be required to frequently attend the meetings at Newcastle, which my means would not allow. Mr. Nicholas Wood wrote me a second time, stating that he would pay my yearly contributions to become a member. It would have been to my advantage, no doubt, had I accepted his kind offer.

---

#### A RACE FOR LIFE.

When I came to St. Helens, nearly thirty years ago, to take charge of the mines at Cropper's Hill Colliery, belonging to Mr. James Radley, I found that the Queen Pit gave off a large quantity of explosive gas; it came out occasionally from the workings into the tram-roads (a long distance) and filled the safety-lamps with flame. No safety-lamps were then locked at this colliery; indeed, many lamps had no locks upon them, though the mine gave off so much explosive gas, and some men, indeed, often took their lamp-tops off. I summonsed one person for so doing.

One day I was in the mine with the fireman, when the explosive gas suddenly came upon us and filled all the safety-lamps in the tram-roads for a long distance. I said, "Be quick; run, fireman, for the sake of every person's life; go into Platt's district, for should any one there have his lamp-top off, and the gas explode at it before you arrive, not a man in the mine will be left alive." He ran with all speed for about eight hundred yards, when he found one man had his lamp-top off. Almost exhausted, he

screamed out with fear, saying, "Put the lamp-top on instantly!" It was put on, and immediately the gas exploded inside the gauze. Shortly after this miraculous escape from death I changed the ventilation; the account of which is given on pages 85 and 91.

---

#### A WONDERFUL DREAM AND A MERCIFUL DELIVERANCE.

Twenty years ago, before I left home one morning for the colliery, my wife said, "William, take care that to-day you go not into any danger; I have dreamt that you were killed, or nearly so." I think little of dreams; but as she pressed me again and again to take care, and would not allow me to leave unless I promised her to do so, I gave her the promise. Before I descended the pit I examined the rope, chains, drum, cage, etc., to satisfy myself that all was safe. I held my light near the roof as I walked along the mine from one working place to another, so as not to go under any dangerous part of the roof; however, I returned safely to the pit shaft. The signal was given below to the men on the pit bank for me to ascend; they signalled back that all was right. I got into the tub, and was wound up; but I had not ascended more than half way, when I found that I was being wound up at a great speed, and I said to myself, "This is it: the engineman is about to run me into the head-gear." "It is life or death," thought I, "in a few seconds;" the hair on my head blew back with the speed; I must save myself, if possible, and I made ready for a desperate leap. The pit was as dark as midnight with the smoke from the furnace fire below. I knew by this time that I must be near the top of the shaft; I must leap the instant the light from the surface

appeared. It came ; I leaped ; the tub went bang into the head-gear, and I found myself in the arms of the man in charge of the pit bank, with heels up and my head hanging down the pit. In leaping I caught at one of the iron conductors, but was sent heels upward and head downward. Providence—I say Providence, for it was nothing else—placed the man at the very spot where I caught the conductor, and he was ready at that instant to throw his arms round my body, or I should have fallen down the pit.

---

#### ANOTHER SIMILAR CASE.

Six months after this, in the same pit, a similar thing happened again. This time I was able to see things in the shaft, there being no smoke. I thought, "If I get as near the surface as I did last time before I leap, the distance between the top of the pit and the head-gear being so short, I may not be so fortunate as before ; I had better leap whilst I am in the pit shaft." The speed increased every yard. Can I save myself as before ? I leaped out of the tub down into the pit, clutching at the conductors. I had an awful struggle for life ; my clothes were almost torn from my body as I was tossed to and fro against the conductors. I gripped one conductor after another as though I should tear them in two. I lost one grip after another from the force with which I was thrown, but all the time I kept my consciousness and remained as composed as possible. At last I held one of the conductors fast, and remained hanging down the pit and holding the conductor until the tub was lowered for me to get into it, and I was drawn up.

## FALL OF AN IRON CONDUCTOR.

Some years ago, when I was inspecting one of the pit shafts, many yards down the pit, one of the iron conductors broke off from the head-gear and fell close past me, but I received no injury.

---

## RENDERED INSENSIBLE.

A slight explosion of fire-damp took place in one of the pits. All the men left the workings. I visited the seat of the explosion soon afterwards. I found the coal had become ignited. I endeavored to put the fire out myself, but found the gas was affecting me. I knew that if I became insensible, and there was no one to remove me from the place, death would be certain; I therefore gave up the contest, but returned again with a young man shortly afterwards. Soon after my second visit I fell insensible, and when I recovered consciousness, found myself in my own house. (For an account of this see page 7.)

---

## A GOLD WATCH AND CHAIN.

In the year 1866 I took charge of the St. Helens Colliery, belonging to Messrs. Pilkington Brothers. The ventilation of the colliery was very bad. Only 19,000 feet of air per minute passed through the workings, and the mine gave off much explosive gas. The lamps in several parts were unsafe to work with, and the inspector found it necessary to stop some part of the mine. Gas came out of the workings now and then and filled the safety-lamps hundreds of yards along the main pony roads. As soon as possi-

---

ble, however, I changed the up-cast shaft and split the ventilating current into parts; this increased the air from 19,000 to 40,000 feet per minute. The men then found themselves more safe, and when I left the colliery over five hundred miners presented me with a gold watch, chain, etc. (For an account of this see page 93.)

---

#### TWO HUNDRED AND SEVENTY-FIVE POUNDS GIVEN.

Some years ago the late Mr. Herman, M.P. for Preston, gave two hundred and seventy-five pounds for the best suggestions for the prevention of catastrophes in mines. Three hundred competitors contested for the prize. I was awarded the second prize, and was the only successful practical man who had worked his way through every stage of mining. The other successful ones were men of theory only. Theory and practice combined is best.

---

#### AN EXPLOSION OF FIRE-DAMP; FIFTY-NINE LIVES LOST.

In July, 1869, an explosion of fire-damp took place at the Haydock Colliery, by which fifty-nine lives were lost. I went to render all the assistance possible. Mr. Billenge, the manager, appointed about twenty men and one fireman under my charge to explore the workings for the living and dead. He gave orders to the fireman to show me the way into the workings; the fireman and myself went first and the other men followed. As we wended our way into the workings, we came upon one dead body after another; I placed my hand upon each breast, but found life to be extinct. I said, "Come on, men, let the dead remain at present;

our duty is to save the living." Onward we went, passing more dead bodies ; and as we went I had to examine the state of the mine and the quantity and quality of gases. We came at last to a number of working places.

I said, " Let us not tarry here, men, for it is not safe to remain long in these workings. Half of us must return to the shaft, collecting the dead in boxes as we go ; the fireman, myself, and the remainder of the men will make our way into another district of the mine." We had not gone far into the other district, when I perceived gas was plentiful and becoming more so as we advanced. I said, " Men, we shall not go far this way ; there is no living soul beyond this place."

The fireman said, " Come on, men, there is no gas here."

It was evident he intended to break through rule and order. How many lives have been lost from the want of a proper knowledge of mine gases !

I said, " Do not be foolish, men ; I tell you there is gas, and no soul can live in this district."

We continued a short distance farther, and I then made a stand, requesting them to turn back.

The fireman again said, " Come on, men, there is no gas here."

I stood in the way to prevent them going farther ; however, five men went with the fireman, the others returned with me.

When we had got back to a safe place, I said, " Perhaps the men who have just left will see their folly and return ; let us wait here, so that we may render them assistance if they fall whilst returning."

Soon we heard them returning very slowly ; they came nearer and nearer. " While they continue to come," said I, " we will remain here, but if they fall in the way, then we will run to

assist them." However, they came at last, holding each other by the hand to prevent themselves from falling and to drag those along who might fall. They all trembled much, and were scarcely able to stand, and also all were in darkness, for every light had been extinguished by the gases. I had no cause to remind them of their folly; not one uttered a word when I informed them of the rash act committed.

Many days and nights have I spent in the study of the laws of nature, and when I came to understand why it was that the atmospheric changes affected the discharge of gases in mines, my greatest desire was to impart that knowledge to every miner, and, if possible, to save life and property. But how must I give the information simple and clear enough for them to understand? That was my greatest difficulty. Suddenly it occurred to me to give it in the form of a conversation between a father and son: the son can ask, and the father explain, so that all may understand. I sent my views on mining to the public press, and week after week articles appeared for twenty-four weeks. I had no intention to publish a book on the subject until the Wigan miners sent their agent (Mr. Pickard) to request me to publish my views in book form. I took the manuscript to Abel Heywood, Esq., who at first advised me not to publish a book, because, as a rule, miners were no readers, and I should probably lose my time and money. I returned home to think the matter over; but in a fortnight eleven hundred orders for books came in. The miners' agent had informed the miners that the "Conversation on Mines between a Father and Son," which had appeared in the newspapers, was about to come out in book form. The first edition was printed at once, and every copy was sold before it came from the printer. The second and third editions were sold

in a few months, and now the book is in its eighth edition, having found its way into every mining district in the British Empire and the United States of America.

In my forty years in charge of mines I have had a few slight explosions of fire-damp, but I never had more than one death at once from any of them; this I attribute to the system of ventilation advocated in my book. Space will not allow me to write all I have seen during fifty-five years spent in mines: men have been killed on every side of me; others have had legs, arms, and backs broken; yet I am still spared alive.

---

It was at the Jane Pit, Rothwell Haigh Colliery, near Leeds, where I was run by the engineman up against the head-gear and allowed to remain there nearly thirty minutes. In connection with this pit is an incident in the life of Sammy Hicks, the village blacksmith (his name is very familiar among all Methodists). Sammy had a strong impression one morning that he must go to some pit, and he could not shake it off. He told his wife, Mattie, but she wished to dissuade him from going by saying, "We've plenty of slack, and we've no orders for coal." Still he felt the impression urging him on. He yoked his Galloway, or pony Jack, and started from Micklefield. On the journey he endeavored to pull up at the pits on the road nearer home, but Jack, the pony, refused to stop. At last Sammy gave it the full reins, and it made its way to the Jane Pit, Rothwell Haigh Colliery. Just as Sammy arrived at the pit they brought up a young man named Isaac Walton, who lodged with my uncle, George Hopton; he had just met with a fearful accident. A sheeting board had fallen from the side of the pit and

---

penetrated into his body. They took Walton into the cabin to extricate the board, but Sammy forbade them doing so until he had prayed with him. He found pardon and forgiveness, and also gave signs of Divine acceptance, before he closed his eyes in death. (See book on Sammy's life.) Sammy was a Wesleyan local preacher, and when he came to Rothwell he often narrated the circumstance in his own peculiar but powerful way. I remember, when very young, hearing Sammy when he came to Rothwell Chapel.

I have written these few incidents in connection with my life at the request of many readers of my book.

---

#### MANAGERS' CERTIFICATES.

In Mr. Herman's prize essay of two hundred and seventy-five pounds, given for the best suggestions for the prevention of catastrophes in mines (in which I was awarded the second prize), I said there should be three kinds of certificates of competency in the management of mines,—viz., a first-class certificate of competency for the position of manager; a second-class certificate for that of under-manager or underlooker; and a third-class certificate for that of fireman.

After the essay was published the government granted only one certificate for the position of manager; but in the new bill now being prepared for the regulation of coal-mines, I observe there are to be two classes of certificates,—a first-class certificate for manager and a second-class certificate for under-manager. Possibly a third-class certificate may be granted for fireman; however, if not in the present bill, it must and will be granted at some future period. Every person who understands mining

knows well that the responsibilities of a fireman are great, and that no man should be put in such a position without having a good knowledge of his duty and passing a thoroughly searching examination.

The duty of a fireman is to inspect every part of the mine where workmen are to work or pass during each shift, and ascertain its condition so far as ventilation, roof, sides, and general safety are concerned. He must examine all safety-lamps and all working places before shots are fired, and ascertain whether, in his judgment, the place is safe or not. He must see that working places are clear of gas and dust within a radius of twenty yards before shots are fired. He must have a knowledge of the nature and strength of the roof, and not allow men to work where the roof is not good. He must specify by report where noxious or inflammable gas, if any, was found present, and what defect or other source of danger, if any, was observed; this he must record without delay in a book to be kept at the mine. Considering that hundreds of lives depend upon the judgment of the fireman, I think there should be a third-class certificate for the position of fireman.

The book gives all the information on mining that is necessary to prepare young men to take any official capacity in mining.

I am faithfully yours,

WILLIAM HOPTON.

ST. HELENS, April, 1887.

THE END.

# Chauvenet's Series of Mathematics.

BY

WILLIAM CHAUVENET,

*Late Professor of Mathematics and Astronomy in Washington  
University, St. Louis.*

---

## CHAUVENET'S GEOMETRY.

A Treatise on Elementary Geometry, with Appendices containing a Copious Collection of Exercises for the Student and an Introduction to Modern Geometry.

Crown 8vo. Cloth. \$1.40.

---

## CHAUVENET'S PLANE AND SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY.

New and Revised Edition. 8vo. Cloth. \$1.28.

---

## CHAUVENET'S METHOD OF LEAST SQUARES.

Or, the Application of the Theory of Probabilities in the Combination of Observations. From the author's Manual of Spherical and Practical Astronomy.

8vo. Cloth. \$1.60.

---

## CHAUVENET'S SPHERICAL AND PRACTICAL ASTRONOMY.

Embracing the general problems of Spherical Astronomy, its special applications to Nautical Astronomy, and the Theory and Use of Fixed and Portable Astronomical Instruments. With an Appendix on the Method of Least Squares. Amply Illustrated with Engravings on Wood and Steel.

Two vols. Medium 8vo. Cloth. \$7.00.

Chauvenet's Series of Mathematics need no commendation further than a brief mention of their success. They have been the standard in the leading colleges of the country since their publication. Chauvenet's Geometry is used at Harvard, Yale, West Point, and Annapolis. It has been copied by nearly every author who has written a geometry since its appearance.

*\*\*\* For sale by all Booksellers, or will be sent, post-paid, on receipt of the price.*

J. B. LIPPINCOTT COMPANY,

PUBLISHERS,

715-717 MARKET STREET, PHILADELPHIA, PA.

# THE CHEMICAL ANALYSIS OF IRON.

**A Complete Account of all the Best-Known Methods  
for the Analysis of Iron, Steel, Pig-Iron,  
Iron Ore, Limestone, Slag, Clay, Sand, Coal, Coke,  
Furnace and Producer Gases.**

BY

**ANDREW ALEXANDER BLAIR,**

*Chief Chemist United States Board, appointed to test Iron, Steel, and other  
Metals, 1875; Chief Chemist United States Geological Survey  
and Tenth Census, 1880.*

**Octavo. Handsomely Illustrated. Extra cloth. \$4.00.**

"It is a hand-book which will be found invaluable by the metallist, and  
may be considered the best book of the sort in the market."—*Boston Courier.*

"A technical work that has cost a good deal of study, and it ought to find  
ready sale among iron-masters and analytical chemists."—*The Wisconsin,  
Milwaukee.*

---

# A TREATISE ON MINE-SURVEYING.

**FOR THE USE OF MANAGERS OF MINES  
AND COLLIERIES.**

BY

**BENNETT H. BROUGH,**

*Associate and Demonstrator of Mine-Surveying at the Royal School of  
Mines, London, England.*

**WITH NUMEROUS ILLUSTRATIONS.**

**300 pages. Crown 8vo. Cloth. \$2.50.**

---

# ELEMENTS OF METALLURGY.

**A Practical Treatise on the Art of Extracting  
Metals from their Ores.**

BY

**J. ARTHUR PHILLIPS, F.R.S., M. Inst., C.E., F.C.S., F.G.S., etc.**

*Ancien Élève de l'École des Mines, Paris. New Edition. Re-  
vised and Enlarged by the Author and H. BAUERMAN, F.G.S.  
With 232 Illustrations, drawn to Scale and reduced in many  
instances from Working Drawings.*

**One volume. Royal 8vo. 848 pages. Extra cloth. \$9.00.**

*\*\* For sale by all Booksellers, or will be sent, post-paid, on receipt of  
the price.*

**J. B. LIPPINCOTT COMPANY,**

**PUBLISHERS,**

**715-717 MARKET STREET, PHILADELPHIA, PA.**

**A book for every Mechanic and Engineer.**

NEW EDITION, ENLARGED AND IMPROVED,



OF THE  
**POCKET-BOOK**  
OF  
**MECHANICS**  
AND  
**ENGINEERING,**

*Containing a Memorandum of Facts and  
Connection of*

**PRACTICE AND THEORY.**

BY

**JOHN W. NYSTROM, C.E.**

*EIGHTEENTH EDITION, REVISED, and GREATLY ENLARGED  
WITH ORIGINAL MATTER.*

**Neatly bound in leather, pocket-book form. Price, \$3.50.**

"This invaluable *vade-mecum* is, in effect, a pocket cyclopædia of mechanics and engineering, filled not only with valuable reference tables and formulæ of various kinds, but containing in addition so much practical information of the kind often needed but seldom ready to hand, as to render it of great value to every engineer, using the term in its widest sense as applying not only to the planning, constructing, and running of machinery of all kinds, but including also the work of the architect, the bridge-builder, the mill-wright, the ship-builder, etc."—*Industrial Review, Philadelphia.*

"The amount of information it contains upon the subject to which it is devoted is simply wonderful."—*Pittsburg American Manufacturer.*

"In its revised and completed form Nystrom's 'Mechanics' is a book of the greatest value to every engineer and machinist. It combines in the smallest possible space the greatest amount of matter."—*St. Louis Age of Steel.*

"The present edition contains much new and valuable matter, and is issued in pocket-book form, the leather binding being equally handsome and serviceable."—*Popular Science News.*

\*.\* If not obtainable at your bookseller's, send direct to the Publishers, who will forward the book, post-paid, on receipt of the price.

**J. B. LIPPINCOTT COMPANY,**

*PUBLISHERS,*

**715-717 MARKET STREET, PHILADELPHIA, PA.**

# MARKS ON THE STEAM-ENGINE.

THIRD EDITION,  
REVISED, ENLARGED, AND INTERLEAVED.

## A COURSE OF LECTURES ON THE STEAM-ENGINE,

DELIVERED TO THE STUDENTS OF DYNAMICAL ENGINEERING,  
IN THE UNIVERSITY OF PENNSYLVANIA.

By WM. D. MARKS.

With numerous illustrations. 12mo. Extra Cloth, \$3.00.

"A work of inestimable value to every mechanic, containing as it does rules, tables, and directions in regard to the steam-engine which come into use in every-day practical life of the engineer."—*San Francisco Wood and Iron.*

# ELEMENTS OF MODERN CHEMISTRY.

BY

ADOLPHE WURTZ,

*Senator, Professor of Chemistry of the Faculty of Medicine of Paris, etc.*

TRANSLATED AND EDITED BY

DR. WM. H. GREENE,

*Professor of Chemistry in the Philadelphia Central High-School, etc.*

NEW EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED.

12mo. Cloth, \$2.50. Sheep, \$3.00.

This book has been introduced into several of our leading colleges and universities, and has everywhere been received with favor.

"A valuable work as a class-book, and a most interesting and instructive volume for the general reader."—*New York School Journal.*

\*.\* If not obtainable at your Bookseller's, send direct to the Publishers, who will forward the books, free of postage, promptly on receipt of the price.

J. B. LIPPINCOTT COMPANY,

PUBLISHERS,

715-717 MARKET STREET, PHILADELPHIA, PA.

# FIRST STEPS IN SCIENTIFIC KNOWLEDGE.

BY PAUL BERT

*Ex-Minister of Education in France, and Professor at La Faculté des Sciences de Paris.*

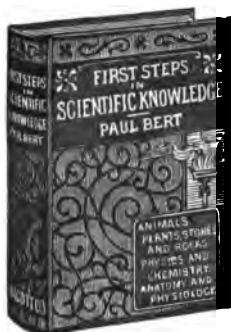
ADAPTED AND ARRANGED FOR AMERICAN SCHOOLS BY

W. H. GREENE, M.D.,

*Professor of Chemistry in the Philadelphia Central High-School,  
author of "Greene's Chemistry."*

Complete in one volume. 375 pages. 570 illustrations.

The attention of educators is earnestly invited to this work, which has been written for the purpose of giving Elementary Instruction in Natural Science. Its sale in France, in less than three years, reached 500,000. There is scarcely a school, even in the smallest village, that does not use it.



## INTRODUCTION PRICE.

Book 1. Animals, Plants, Stones,  
and Soils . . . 30 cents.  
Book 2. Physics, Chemistry, Animal  
Physiology, and Vegetable  
Physiology . . . 36 cents.  
Complete in one volume . . . 66 cents.

In the American Edition such changes and additions have been made as were needed to adapt the work to American schools. The additions include *all common and important American species of Animals and Plants. The type, plates, and illustrations are new; the latter follow the original in size, number, and arrangement.* The cuts of Animals were drawn from life by Faber.

## TESTIMONIALS.

"Paul Bert's book is very good. If properly used, it will arouse a great interest in science. The lower grades need just such a book. I will try it."—*Col. Francis W. Parker, Principal of Cook County Normal School, Normal Park, Ill.*

"I have examined the 'First Steps in Scientific Knowledge' with some care, and I find it very interesting. Many things that are well known, and many more that are unknown to children, are set forth so clearly that they cannot fail to stimulate inquiry, and thus be far more useful in what they lead to than they are even in what they so well explain. I think such a book should be placed in every school."—*A. P. Marble, City Superintendent of Public Schools, Worcester, Mass.*

"We most heartily welcome it as one of our most valuable school-books, —valuable alike to teacher and pupil,—and one which will, we trust, awaken a wider interest in what has been happily called 'the science of observation.'"—*Pennsylvania School Journal.*

"This work will be cordially welcomed by American teachers and students who are seeking for aids in elementary instruction in the natural sciences. The subjects are well chosen, and the simplicity of the experiments and aptness of the illustrations combine to make the book one of great helpfulness in teaching the sciences in the lower grades of the public schools."—*New England Journal of Education.*

"So admirable a little book as this might well be made the subject of a discourse on the teaching of natural knowledge, as it is one of the most remarkable books ever written for children."—*New York School Journal.*

\*\*\* For sale by all Booksellers, or will be sent by the Publishers, free of expense, on receipt of the price.

J. B. LIPPINCOTT COMPANY,

715-717 MARKET STREET,

— . . . . PHILADELPHIA, PA. . . . .

ENTIRELY NEW EDITION.

# CHAMBERS'S ENCYCLOPÆDIA.

REVISED AND REWRITTEN.

A DICTIONARY OF UNIVERSAL KNOWLEDGE.

Edited and published under the auspices of W. and R. Chambers,  
Edinburgh, and J. B. Lippincott Company, Philadelphia.

To be completed in 10 volumes. Price per volume: cloth, \$3.00;  
sheep, \$4.00; half morocco, \$4.50.

In the preparation of this entirely new and handsome edition the old articles have been rewritten so as to incorporate the latest information, and many new ones have been introduced on the subjects of art, science, literature, history, biography, etc. The text is reset throughout in clear, distinct type, and embellished with many new and excellent illustrations. It is concise, simple, clear, accurate, and easy of reference,—in a word, "*A Dictionary of Universal Knowledge*." The work has been prepared conjointly by American and English editors, thus imparting to it an international character, the chief articles on American topics having been written by the best authorities in this country. Excellent maps of all countries on the globe are included, while the American edition contains a map of each State and Territory in the Union.

"It must be pronounced without a peer among the cheaper encyclopædias."—*New York Examiner*.

"Chambers's was always a favorite and trustworthy encyclopædia. The new edition is handsomer than ever."—*Philadelphia Evening Bulletin*.

"In typography, arrangement, and illustration this new edition is a model."—*New York Christian Union*.

"This work, the cheapest of the larger encyclopædias, is being reissued in handsome style."—*New York Herald*.

"Indispensable in almost any library, while its wonderful cheapness is a large point in its favor."—*Boston Congregationalist*.

---

\*.\* For sale by all Booksellers, or will be sent by the Publishers, post-paid,  
on receipt of the price.

J. B. LIPPINCOTT COMPANY,

715-717 MARKET STREET, PHILADELPHIA, PA.

# READER'S REFERENCE LIBRARY.

9 vols. 12mo. Half morocco, gilt top, in box. Per set, \$22.50.

"A most valuable addition to the library of the student, and to the clergy it ought to be specially useful."—*New York Herald*.

EACH VOLUME SOLD SEPARATELY, AS FOLLOWS:

## THE WRITER'S HANDBOOK.

A General Guide to the Art of Composition and Style. \$2.50.

## BREWER'S READER'S HANDBOOK

Of Facts, Characters, Plots, and References. \$3.50.

## BREWER'S DICTIONARY OF PHRASE AND FABLE.

Giving the Derivation, Source, and Origin of about 20,000 Common Phrases, Illusions, and Words that have a Tale to Tell. New edition (*Seventeenth*). Revised and corrected. \$2.50.

## BREWER'S DICTIONARY OF MIRACLES.

Imitative, realistic, and dogmatic. *With Illustrations.* \$2.50.

## EDWARDS'S WORDS, FACTS, AND PHRASES.

A Dictionary of Curious, Quaint, and Out-of-the-Way Matters. \$2.50.

## WORCESTER'S COMPREHENSIVE DICTIONARY.

Revised, enlarged, and profusely illustrated. \$2.50.

## ROGET'S THESAURUS.

A Treasury of English Words. Classified and arranged so as to facilitate the expression of ideas and assist in literary composition. \$2.50.

## ANCIENT AND MODERN FAMILIAR QUOTATIONS.

From the Greek, Latin, and Modern Languages. \$2.50.

## SOULE'S ENGLISH SYNONYMES.

A Dictionary of Synonymes and Synonymous or Parallel Expressions. \$2.50.

\*.\* For sale by all Booksellers, or will be sent by the Publishers, post-paid, on receipt of the price.

J. B. LIPPINCOTT COMPANY,

715-717 MARKET STREET,

- - - - PHILADELPHIA, PA. - - - -

# Worcester's Dictionary

## THE STANDARD

IN SPELLING, PRONUNCIATION, AND DEFINITION.



*New Edition.* The largest and most complete Quarto Dictionary of the English Language. 2126 pages. Contains thousands of words not to be found in any other Quarto Dictionary. Enlarged by the addition of a BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY of nearly 12,000 personages, and a GAZETTEER OF THE WORLD, noting and *locating* over 20,000 places. Containing also over 12,500 new words, recently added, together with a table of 5000 words in general use, with synonyms. Illustrated with wood-cuts and full-page plates. With or without Denison's Patent Index.

## SCHOOL DICTIONARIES.

### WORCESTER'S PRIMARY DICTIONARY.

Profusely Illustrated. 384 pages. 16mo. Half roan.

### WORCESTER'S NEW SCHOOL DICTIONARY.

With numerous Illustrations. 390 pages. Half roan.

### WORCESTER'S COMPREHENSIVE DICTIONARY.

Profusely Illustrated. 688 pages. 12mo. Half roan.

### WORCESTER'S NEW ACADEMIC DICTIONARY.

688 pages. 12mo. Half roan.

WORCESTER'S are the latest school dictionaries published; they give the correct usage in *pronunciation*; they contain a much larger number of words than any other school dictionary; they give the correct usage in *spelling*; the *definitions* are complete, concise, and accurate.

FOR SALE BY ALL BOOKSELLERS.

J. B. LIPPINCOTT COMPANY,  
PUBLISHERS,

715-717 MARKET STREET, PHILADELPHIA, PA.

LIPPINCOTT'S  
PRONOUNCING  
DICTIONARY  
OF BIOGRAPHY AND MYTHOLOGY,

CONTAINING MEMOIRS OF THE EMINENT PERSONS OF ALL AGES AND COUNTRIES,  
AND ACCOUNTS OF THE VARIOUS SUBJECTS OF THE NORSE, HINDOO, AND  
CLASSIC MYTHOLOGIES, WITH THE PRONUNCIATION OF THEIR NAMES  
IN THE DIFFERENT LANGUAGES IN WHICH THEY OCCUR.

---

By Joseph Thomas, M.D., LL.D., Author of Thomas's  
"Pronouncing Medical Dictionary," etc. New edition,  
revised and enlarged. Complete in one volume of  
2550 pages. Price: Sheep, \$12.00; half Turkey, \$15.00;  
half Russia, \$15.00.

---

"'Lippincott's Biographical Dictionary' is invaluable as a part of the smallest permanent working library. It is a treasure-house of information; a text-book of necessity, embracing many subjects besides biography. Members of the C. L. S. C. should include it in the formation or building up of a standard library."—J. H. VINCENT, *Chancellor Chautauqua University*.

"There are few noted men and women, past or present, the important facts of whose lives you cannot learn from this work in a few words. Mechanically the book is strongly and finely made, and is well adapted to constant and hard usage, as becomes a book of reference. The directions for pronunciation are especially valuable. We should add the work without hesitation to the list of indispensables for every private library; all public libraries will have it, of course."—*The Literary World* (Boston).

"We must declare it the best as well as the most comprehensive book of its description, emanating from the pen of one writer,—in any language,—which has come under our notice. . . . What the comprehensive scholarship, perseverance, energy, and critical accuracy of one man may fairly be expected to do in this field, our author has amply done."—*The N. Y. Nation*.

---

\*.\* For sale by all Booksellers, or will be sent by the Publishers, post-paid,  
on receipt of the price.

J. B. LIPPINCOTT COMPANY,

715-717 MARKET STREET,

- - - - PHILADELPHIA, PA. - - - -

# LIPPINCOTT'S GAZETTEER OF THE WORLD.

A COMPLETE PRONOUNCING GAZETTEER OR GEOGRAPHICAL  
DICTIONARY OF THE WORLD.

---

One volume. Imperial Octavo. Embracing 2680 pages.  
Price: Library sheep, \$12.00; half Turkey, \$15.00;  
half Russia, \$15.00.

---

New edition. Thoroughly revised, entirely reconstructed, and greatly enlarged. Containing notices of over 125,000 places, and giving the most recent and authentic information respecting the Countries, Islands, Rivers, Mountains, Cities, Towns, etc., in every portion of the globe, together with a Series of Supplementary Tables of Population, embodying the most recent Census Returns. It is a large octavo volume of 2680 pages, and contains the correct spelling and pronunciation of geographical names.

---

"It is the standard of standards."—*Boston Evening Traveller*.

"It is the best work of its kind extant, and is a necessary supplement to any encyclopædia."—*Chicago Tribune*.

"It covers more ground, and covers it better, than any work of whose existence we are aware."—*Cincinnati Gazette*.

"An absolute necessity to every well-appointed library and office. . . . For needful reference it is simply invaluable."—*Presbyterian Banner*.

"The costly and painstaking reconstruction of the work gives to the public in effect a new and valuable book of reference."—*New York Evening Post*.

"No other work rivals this in accuracy and thoroughness. It is indispensable for public and private libraries, for students, and for all who desire authentic information concerning their own and other countries."—*Boston Journal*.

---

\* \* For sale by all Booksellers, or will be sent by the Publishers, post-paid,  
on receipt of the price.

J. B. LIPPINCOTT COMPANY,

715-717 MARKET STREET,

- - - - PHILADELPHIA, PA. - - - -



1000

1000

1000

1000

1000



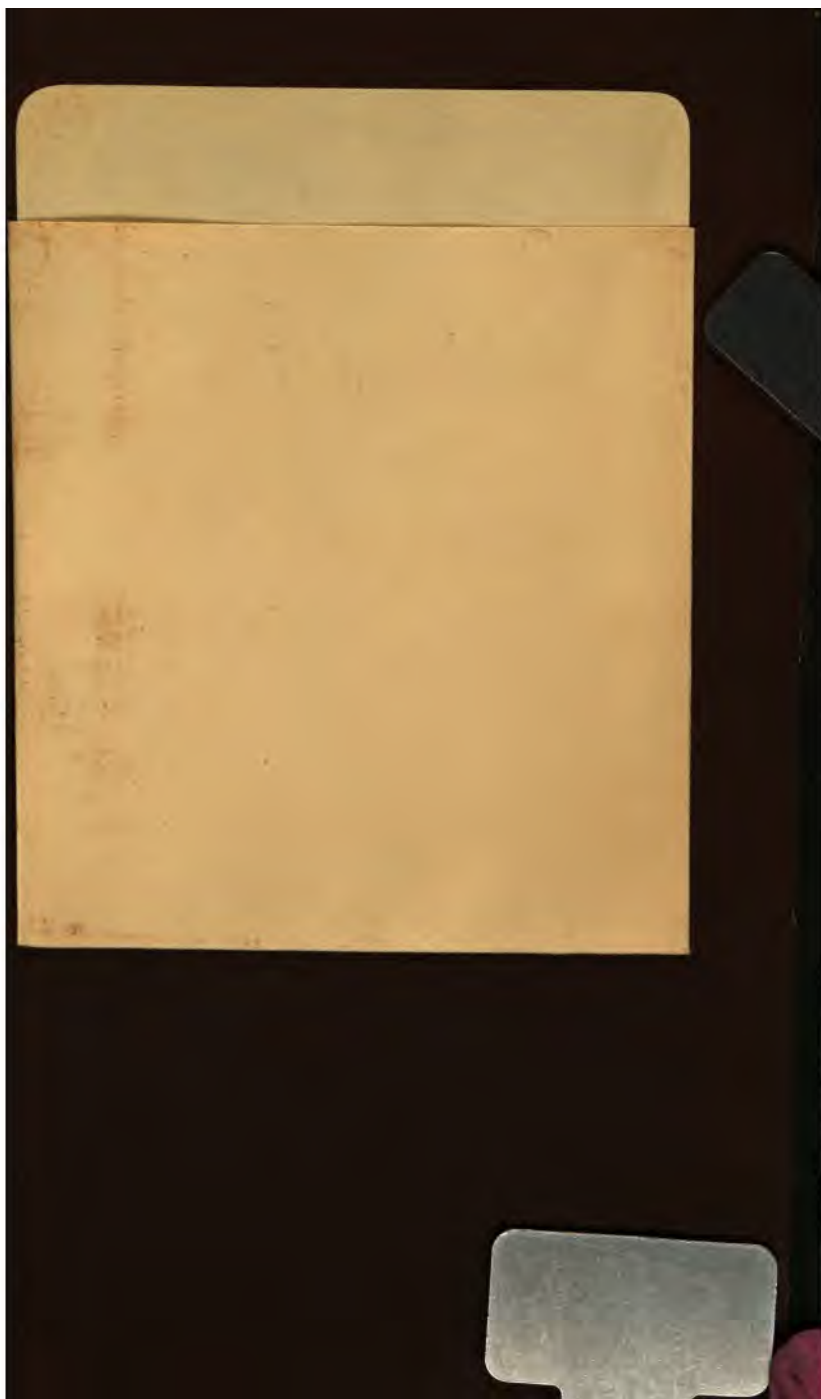
—

—

89083899161



B89083899161A



89083899161



b89083899161a